Fourth Edition (July 2006)

This edition applies to AIX 5L Version 5.3 and to all subsequent releases of this product until otherwise indicated in new editions.

A reader's comment form is provided at the back of this publication. If the form has been removed, address comments to Information Development, Department 04XA-905-6C006, 11501 Burnet Road, Austin, Texas 78758-3493. To send comments electronically, use this commercial Internet address: aix6kpub@austin.ibm.com. Any information that you supply may be used without incurring any obligation to you.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1997, 2006. All rights reserved.

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.
Contents

About This Book ........................................... ix
Highlighting .................................................. ix
Case-Sensitivity in AIX ..................................... ix
ISO 9000 ....................................................... ix
32-Bit and 64-Bit Support for the Single UNIX Specification .............. x
Related Publications ....................................... x

Chapter 1. Data Link Controls ........................................ 1
dlcclose Entry Point of the GDLC Device Manager ...................... 1
dlcconfig Entry Point of the GDLC Device Manager ................... 2
dlcioctl Entry Point of the GDLC Device Manager ..................... 3
dlcmpx Entry Point of the GDLC Device Manager ..................... 4
dlcopen Entry Point of the GDLC Device Manager .................... 5
dlcread Entry Point of the GDLC Device Manager .................... 7
dlcselct Entry Point of the GDLC Device Manager .................... 8
dlcwrite Entry Point of the GDLC Device Manager ................... 10
close Subroutine Interface for Data Link Control (DLC) Devices ...... 11
ioctl Subroutine Interface for Data Link Control (DLC) Devices ...... 12
open Subroutine Interface for Data Link Control (DLC) Devices ...... 13
readx Subroutine Interface for Data Link Control (DLC) Devices ...... 15
select Subroutine Interface for Data Link Control (DLC) Devices ...... 16
writex Subroutine Interface for Data Link Control (DLC) Devices ...... 17
open Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC ....................... 19
read Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC ....................... 20
write Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC ...................... 22
Datagram Data Received Routine for DLC .......................... 24
Exception Condition Routine for DLC ............................. 25
I-Frame Data Received Routine for DLC ............................ 25
Network Data Received Routine for DLC ............................ 26
XID Data Received Routine for DLC ................................ 27
ioctl Operations (op) for DLC .................................. 28
Parameter Blocks by ioctl Operation for DLC ......................... 30
DLC_ADD_FUNC_ADDR ioctl Operation for DLC ..................... 30
DLC_ADD_GRP ioctl Operation for DLC .......................... 31
DLC_ALTER ioctl Operation for DLC ............................. 31
DLC_CONTACT ioctl Operation for DLC ........................... 35
DLC_DEL_FUNC_ADDR ioctl Operation for DLC ..................... 35
DLC_DEL_GRP ioctl Operation for DLC ........................... 35
DLC_DISABLE_SAP ioctl Operation for DLC ......................... 36
DLC_ENABLE_SAP ioctl Operation for DLC ......................... 36
DLC_ENTER_LBUSY ioctl Operation for DLC ....................... 40
DLC_ENTER_SHOLD ioctl Operation for DLC ....................... 40
DLC_EXIT_LBUSY ioctl Operation for DLC ......................... 40
DLC_EXIT_SHOLD ioctl Operation for DLC ......................... 41
DLC_GET_EXCEP ioctl Operation for DLC ........................ 41
DLC_HALT_LS ioctl Operation for DLC ............................ 46
DLC_QUERY_LS ioctl Operation for DLC ............................ 46
DLC_QUERY_SAP ioctl Operation for DLC .......................... 49
DLC_START_LS ioctl Operation for DLC ............................ 50
DLC_TEST ioctl Operation for DLC ................................ 52
DLC_TRACE ioctl Operation for DLC ................................ 53
IOCINFO ioctl Operation for DLC ................................ 53

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1997, 2006
Chapter 2. Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI).

DL_ATTACH_REQ Primitive ........................................ 55
DL_BIND_ACK Primitive ........................................ 56
DL_BIND_REQ Primitive ......................................... 57
DL_CONNECT_CON Primitive ..................................... 60
DL_CONNECT_IND Primitive ..................................... 61
DL_CONNECT_REQ Primitive ................................. 62
DL_DATA_IND Primitive ....................................... 66
DL_DATA_REQ Primitive ...................................... 66
DL_DETACH_REQ Primitive ................................... 67
DL_DISABMULTI_REQ Primitive .............................. 68
DL_DISCONNECT_IND Primitive ............................. 69
DL_DISCONNECT_REQ Primitive ......................... 71
DL_ENABMULTI_REQ Primitive .............................. 72
DL_ERROR_ACK Primitive .................................. 73
DL_GET_STATISTICS_ACK Primitive ..................... 74
DL_GET_STATISTICS_REQ ................................... 75
DL_INFO_ACK Primitive .................................... 76
DL_INFO_REQ Primitive .................................... 77
DL_OK_ACK Primitive ......................................... 79
DL_PHYS_ADDR_ACK Primitive .............................. 80
DL_PHYS_ADDR_REQ Primitive ............................... 81
DL_PROMISCOFF_REQ Primitive ........................... 82
DL_PROMISCON_REQ Primitive ............................. 83
DL_RESET_CON Primitive .................................... 86
DL_RESET_IND Primitive .................................... 86
DL_RESET_REQ Primitive .................................... 87
DL_RESET_RES Primitive .................................... 88
DL_SUBS_BIND_ACK Primitive ............................... 89
DL_SUBS_BIND_REQ Primitive ............................... 90
DL_SUBS_UNBIND_REQ Primitive ......................... 91
DL_TEST_CON Primitive ...................................... 93
DL_TEST_IND Primitive ...................................... 94
DL_TEST_REQ Primitive ...................................... 95
DL_TEST_RES Primitive ...................................... 96
DL_TOKEN_ACK Primitive .................................... 97
DL_TOKEN_REQ Primitive .................................... 98
DL_UDERROR_IND Primitive ................................ 99
DL_UNBIND_REQ Primitive ................................ 100
DL_UNITDATA_IND Primitive ................................ 101
DL_UNITDATA_REQ Primitive .............................. 102
DL_XID_CON Primitive ....................................... 103
DL_XID_IND Primitive ....................................... 104
DL_XID_REQ Primitive ....................................... 105
DL_XID_RES Primitive ....................................... 107

Chapter 3. eXternal Data Representation

xdr_accepted_reply Subroutine ................................. 109
xdr_array Subroutine .......................................... 109
xdr_bool Subroutine .......................................... 110
xdr_bytes Subroutine ......................................... 111
xdr_callhdr Subroutine ...................................... 112
xdr_callmsg Subroutine ..................................... 112
xdr_char Subroutine .......................................... 113
xdr_destroy Macro ............................................. 114
AIX 3270 Host Connection Program (HCON).

xdr_enum Subroutine .................................................. 114
xdr_float Subroutine .................................................. 115
xdr_free Subroutine ................................................... 115
xdr_getpos Macro .......................................................... 116
xdr_inline Macro .......................................................... 117
xdr_int Subroutine ...................................................... 117
xdr_long Subroutine ..................................................... 118
xdr_opaque Subroutine .................................................. 119
xdr_opaque_auth Subroutine ........................................... 119
xdr_pmap Subroutine .................................................... 120
xdr_pmaplist Subroutine ................................................ 121
xdr_pointer Subroutine ................................................ 121
xdr_rejected_reply Subroutine ....................................... 123
xdr_replymsg Subroutine ............................................... 124
xdr_setpos Macro ........................................................ 124
xdr_short Subroutine ................................................... 125
xdr_string Subroutine .................................................. 126
xdr_u_char Subroutine .................................................. 126
xdr_u_int Subroutine .................................................... 127
xdr_u_long Subroutine .................................................. 128
xdr_u_short Subroutine ................................................ 128
xdr_union Subroutine ................................................... 129
xdr_vector Subroutine .................................................. 130
xdr_void Subroutine .................................................... 131
xdr_wrapstring Subroutine .......................................... 132
xdr_authunix_parms Subroutine ..................................... 133
xdr_double Subroutine ................................................ 133
xdrmem_create Subroutine ............................................. 134
xdrrec_create Subroutine ............................................. 134
xdrrec_endofrecord Subroutine .................................... 135
xdrrec_eof Subroutine ................................................ 135
xdrrec_skiprecord Subroutine ....................................... 136
xrstdio_create Subroutine ........................................... 137

Chapter 4. AIX 3270 Host Connection Program (HCON). ................. 139
cfxfer Function ......................................................... 139
fxfer Function ............................................................ 141
g32_alloc Function ...................................................... 144
g32_close Function ...................................................... 147
g32_dealloc Function ................................................... 148
g32_fxfer Function ...................................................... 150
g32_get_cursor Function ............................................... 157
g32_get_data Function .................................................. 159
g32_get_status Function ............................................... 161
g32_notify Function ..................................................... 163
g32_open Function ....................................................... 166
g32_opnex Function ..................................................... 169
g32_read Function ....................................................... 175
g32_search Function ..................................................... 177
g32_send_keys Function ............................................... 180
g32_write Function ..................................................... 182
G32ALLOC Function ..................................................... 184
G32DLLOC Function ..................................................... 185
G32READ Function ..................................................... 186
G32WRITE Function ..................................................... 187
Chapter 5. Network Computing System (NCS) ........................................... 189
lb_lookup_interface Library Routine (NCS) ........................................... 189
lb_lookup_object Library Routine (NCS) .............................................. 190
lb_lookup_object_local Library Routine ............................................. 191
lb_lookup_range Library Routine ......................................................... 193
lb_register Library Routine ............................................................... 194
pfm_cleanup Library Routine ............................................................ 197
pfm_enable Library Routine ............................................................... 199
pfm_enable_faults Library Routine ...................................................... 199
pfm_inhibit Library Routine ............................................................... 200
pfm_inhibit_faults Library Routine ..................................................... 200
pfm_init Library Routine ................................................................. 201
pfm_reset_cleanup Library Routine .................................................. 202
pfm_rls_cleanup Library Routine ....................................................... 203
rpc_alloc_handle Library Routine .................................................... 204
rpc_bind Library Routine ................................................................. 205
rpc_clear_binding Library Routine .................................................... 206
rpc_clear_server_binding Library Routine ....................................... 207
rpc_dup_handle Library Routine ....................................................... 208
rpc_free_handle Library Routine ..................................................... 209
rpc_inq_binding Library Routine (NCS) ........................................... 210
rpc_inq_object Library Routine (NCS) ............................................ 211
rpc_listen Library Routine ............................................................. 211
rpc_register Library Routine .......................................................... 212
rpc_set_binding Library Routine ..................................................... 213
rpc_sockaddr_to_name Library Routine .......................................... 214
rpc_unregister Library Routine ....................................................... 215
rpc_use_family Library Routine ...................................................... 216
rpc_use_family_wk Library Routine ................................................ 217
uuid_decode Library Routine (NCS) .................................................. 218
uuid_encode Library Routine (NCS) .................................................. 219
uuid_gen Library Routine (NCS) ....................................................... 220
uuid_sgen Library Routine (NCS) ...................................................... 221

Chapter 6. Network Information Services (NIS) and Network Information Services+ (NIS+) ...... 223
nis_add_entry (NIS+ API) ............................................................... 223
nis_first_entry (NIS+ API) ............................................................. 226
nis_list (NIS+ API) ................................................................. 230
nis_local_directory (NIS+ API) .................................................... 235
nis_lookup (NIS+ API) ............................................................... 236
nis_modify_entry (NIS+ API) ....................................................... 240
nis_next_entry (NIS+ API) ........................................................... 244
nis_perror (NIS+ API) ............................................................... 247
nis_remove_entry (NIS+ API) ....................................................... 248
nis_sperror (NIS+ API) ............................................................. 252
yp_all Subroutine ................................................................. 253
yp_bind Subroutine ................................................................. 254
yp_first Subroutine ................................................................. 255
yp_get_default_domain Subroutine ........................................... 256
yp_master Subroutine .............................................................. 257
yp_match Subroutine ............................................................... 258
yp_next Subroutine ................................................................. 259
yp_order Subroutine ............................................................... 260
Chapter 7. New Database Manager (NDBM)

dbm_close Subroutine .................................................. 265
dbm_delete Subroutine ................................................. 265
dbm_fetch Subroutine .................................................. 266
dbm_firstkey Subroutine ............................................... 267
dbm_nextkey Subroutine ............................................... 267
dbm_open Subroutine ................................................... 268
dbm_store Subroutine .................................................. 269
dbm_close Subroutine .................................................. 269
delete Subroutine ....................................................... 270
dbminit Subroutine ..................................................... 270
fetch Subroutine ....................................................... 271
firstkey Subroutine ..................................................... 271
nextkey Subroutine ..................................................... 272
store Subroutine ....................................................... 273

Chapter 8. Remote Procedure Calls (RPC)

auth_destroy Macro ..................................................... 275
authdes_create Subroutine .......................................... 275
authdes_getucred Subroutine ....................................... 276
authnone_create Subroutine ......................................... 277
authunix_create Subroutine ......................................... 278
authunix_create_default Subroutine ............................... 279
callrpc Subroutine ..................................................... 279
cbc_crypt, des_setparity, or ecb_crypt Subroutine .............. 280
clnt_broadcast Subroutine ........................................... 282
clnt_call Macro .......................................................... 283
clnt_control Macro ..................................................... 284
clnt_create Subroutine ............................................... 285
clnt_destroy Macro ..................................................... 286
clnt_freeres Macro ..................................................... 286
clnt_geterr Macro ....................................................... 287
clnt_pcreateerror Subroutine ....................................... 287
clnt_permo Subroutine ................................................ 288
clnt_perror Subroutine ............................................... 289
clnt_pcreateerror Subroutine ....................................... 290
clnt_permo Subroutine ................................................ 290
clnt_perror Subroutine ............................................... 291
clntraw_create Subroutine .......................................... 292
clnttcp_create Subroutine .......................................... 293
clntudp_create Subroutine .......................................... 294
get_myaddress Subroutine ........................................... 295
getnetname Subroutine ............................................... 296
host2netname Subroutine ............................................. 296
key_decryptsession Subroutine .................................... 297
key_encryptsession Subroutine .................................... 298
key_gendes Subroutine ............................................... 299
key_setsecret Subroutine ............................................ 300
netname2host Subroutine ............................................. 300
netname2user Subroutine ............................................. 301
pmap_getmaps Subroutine ............................................ 302
About This Book

This book provides experienced C programmers with complete detailed information about data link controls, the Data Link Provider Interface, eXternal Data Representation, the AIX® 3270 Host Connection Program, the Network Computing System, Network Information Services and Network Information Services+, the New Database Manager, and remote procedure calls for the AIX operating system. To use the book effectively, you should be familiar with commands, system calls, subroutines, file formats, and special files. This publication is also available on the documentation CD that is shipped with the operating system.

This book is part of the six-volume technical reference set, AIX 5L Version 5.3 Technical Reference, that provides information on system calls, kernel extension calls, and subroutines in the following volumes:

- **AIX 5L Version 5.3 Technical Reference: Base Operating System and Extensions Volume 1** and **AIX 5L Version 5.3 Technical Reference: Base Operating System and Extensions Volume 2** provide information on system calls, subroutines, functions, macros, and statements associated with base operating system runtime services.

- **AIX 5L Version 5.3 Technical Reference: Communications Volume 1** and **AIX 5L Version 5.3 Technical Reference: Communications Volume 2** provide information on entry points, functions, system calls, subroutines, and operations related to communications services.

- **AIX 5L Version 5.3 Technical Reference: Kernel and Subsystems Volume 1** and **AIX 5L Version 5.3 Technical Reference: Kernel and Subsystems Volume 2** provide information about kernel services, device driver operations, file system operations, subroutines, the configuration subsystem, the communications subsystem, the low function terminal (LFT) subsystem, the logical volume subsystem, the M-audio capture and playback adapter subsystem, the printer subsystem, the SCSI subsystem, and the serial DASD subsystem.

Highlighting

The following highlighting conventions are used in this book:

**Bold**

Identifies commands, subroutines, keywords, files, structures, directories, and other items whose names are predefined by the system. Also identifies graphical objects such as buttons, labels, and icons that the user selects.

**Italics**

Identifies parameters whose actual names or values are to be supplied by the user.

**Monospace**

Identifies examples of specific data values, examples of text similar to what you might see displayed, examples of portions of program code similar to what you might write as a programmer, messages from the system, or information you should actually type.

Case-Sensitivity in AIX

Everything in the AIX operating system is case-sensitive, which means that it distinguishes between uppercase and lowercase letters. For example, you can use the `ls` command to list files. If you type `LS`, the system responds that the command is “not found.” Likewise, `FILEA`, `FiLea`, and `filea` are three distinct file names, even if they reside in the same directory. To avoid causing undesirable actions to be performed, always ensure that you use the correct case.

ISO 9000

ISO 9000 registered quality systems were used in the development and manufacturing of this product.
32-Bit and 64-Bit Support for the Single UNIX Specification

Beginning with Version 5.2, the operating system is designed to support The Open Group’s Single UNIX Specification Version 3 (UNIX 03) for portability of UNIX-based operating systems. Many new interfaces, and some current ones, have been added or enhanced to meet this specification, making Version 5.2 even more open and portable for applications, while remaining compatible with previous releases of AIX. To determine the proper way to develop a UNIX 03-portable application, you may need to refer to The Open Group’s UNIX 03 specification, which can be accessed online or downloaded from http://www.unix.org/.

Related Publications

The following books contain information about or related to application programming interfaces:

- Operating system and device management
- Networks and communication management
- AIX 5L Version 5.3 General Programming Concepts: Writing and Debugging Programs
- AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts
- AIX 5L Version 5.3 Kernel Extensions and Device Support Programming Concepts
- AIX 5L Version 5.3 Files Reference
Chapter 1. Data Link Controls

dlcclose Entry Point of the GDLC Device Manager

Purpose
Closes a generic data link control (GDLC) channel.

Syntax
#include <sys/device.h>

int dlcclose (devno, chan)

Note: The dlc prefix is replaced with the three-digit prefix for the specific GDLC device manager being closed.

Description
Each GDLC supports the dlcclose entry point as its switch table entry for the close subroutine. The file system calls this entry point from the process environment only. The dlcclose entry point is called when a user's application program invokes the close subroutine or when a kernel user calls the fp_close kernel service. This routine disables a GDLC channel for the user. If this is the last channel to close on the port, the GDLC device manager issues a close to the network device handler and deletes the kernel process that serviced device handler events on behalf of the user.

Parameters

devno Indicates major and minor device numbers. This is a dev_t device number that specifies both the major and minor device numbers of the GDLC device manager. There is one dev_t device number for each type of GDLC, such as Ethernet, Token-Ring, or SDLC.

chan Specifies the channel ID assigned by GDLC in the dlcmpx routine at open time.

Return Values

0 Indicates a successful operation.

EBADF Indicates a bad file number. This value is defined in the /usr/include/sys/errno.h file.

Related Information
The close subroutine.
The ddclose device entry point.
The dlcmpx entry point of the GDLC device manager, dicopen entry point of the GDLC device manager.
The fp_close kernel service.

Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
**dlcconfig Entry Point of the GDLC Device Manager**

**Purpose**
Configures the generic data link control (GDLC) device manager.

**Syntax**
```c
#include <sys/uio.h>
#include <sys/device.h>

int dlcconfig (devno, op, uio)
```

**Note:** The `dlc` prefix is replaced with the three-digit prefix for the specific GDLC device manager being configured.

**Description**
The `dlcconfig` entry point is called during the kernel startup procedures to initialize the GDLC device manager with its device information. The operating system also calls this routine when the GDLC is being terminated or queried for vital product data.

Each GDLC supports the `dlcconfig` entry point as its switch table entry for the `sysconfig` subroutine. The file system calls this entry point from the process environment only.

**Parameters**
- **devno** Indicates major and minor device numbers. This is a `dev_t` device number that specifies both the major and minor device numbers of the GDLC device manager. One `dev_t` device number exists for each type of GDLC, such as Ethernet, Token-Ring, or SDLC.
- **op** Specifies the operation code that indicates the function to be performed:
  - `CFG_INIT` Initializes the GDLC device manager.
  - `CFG_TERM` Terminates the GDLC device manager.
  - `CFG_QVPD` Queries GDLC vital product data. This operation code is optional.
- **uio** Points to the `uio` structure specifying the location and length of the caller’s data area for the `CFG_INIT` and `CFG_QVPD` operation codes. No data areas are specifically defined for GDLC, but DLCs can define the data areas for a particular network.

**Return Values**
The following return values are defined in the `/usr/include/sys/errno.h` file:
- **0** Indicates a successful operation.
- **EINVAL** Indicates an invalid value.
- **ENODEV** Indicates that no such device handler is present.
- **EFAULT** Indicates that a kernel service, such as the `uiomove` or `devswadd` kernel service, has failed.

**Related Information**
The `ddconfig` device entry point.
The `uiomove` kernel service.
dlcioctl Entry Point of the GDLC Device Manager

Purpose
Issues specific commands to generic data link control (GDLC).

Syntax
#include <sys/device.h>
#include <sys/gdlextcb.h>
int dlcioctl (devno, op, arg, devflag, chan, ext)

Note: The dlc prefix is replaced with the three-digit prefix for the specific GDLC device manager being controlled.

Description
The dlcioctl entry point is called when an application program invokes the ioctl subroutine or when a kernel user calls the fp_ioctl kernel service. The dlcioctl routine decodes commands for special functions in the GDLC.

Each GDLC supports the dlcioctl entry point as its switch table entry for the ioctl subroutine. The file system calls this entry point from the process environment only.

Parameters

devno Indicates major and minor device numbers. This is a dev_t device number that specifies both the major and minor device numbers of the GDLC device manager. One dev_t device number exists for each type of GDLC, such as Ethernet, Token-Ring, or SDLC.

op Specifies the parameter from the subroutine that specifies the operation to be performed. See "ioctl Operations (op) for DLC" for a list of all possible operators.

arg Indicates the parameter from the subroutine that specifies the address of a parameter block. See "Parameter Blocks by ioctl Operation for DLC" for a list of all possible arguments.

devflag Specifies the flag word with the following flags defined:

DKERNEL Entry point called by kernel routine using the fp_open kernel service. This indicates that the arg parameter points to kernel space.

DREAD Open for reading. This flag is ignored.

DWRITE Open for writing. This flag is ignored.

DAPPEND Open for appending. This flag is ignored.

DNDELAY Device open in nonblocking mode. This flag is ignored.

chan Specifies the channel ID assigned by GDLC in the dlcmpx routine at open time.

ext Specifies the extended subroutine parameter. This parameter is ignored by GDLC.
Return Values

The following return values are defined in the /usr/include/sys/errno.h file.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Indicates a successful operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBADF</td>
<td>Indicates a bad file number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EINVAL</td>
<td>Indicates an invalid value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENOMEM</td>
<td>Indicates insufficient resources to satisfy the ioctl subroutine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Information

The ioctl subroutine.

The ddioctl device driver entry point.

The dlcmpx entry point of the GDLC device manager.

ioctl Operations (op) for DLC

The fp_ioctl kernel service, fp_open kernel service.

Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

dlcmpx Entry Point of the GDLC Device Manager

Purpose

Decodes the device handler’s special file name appended to the open call.

Syntax

```
#include <sys/device.h>

int dlcmpx (devno, chanp, channame)
```

Note: The dlc prefix is replaced with the three-digit prefix for the specific GDLC device manager being opened.

Description

The operating system calls the dlcmpx entry point when a generic data link control (GDLC) channel is allocated. This routine decodes the name of the device handler appended to the end of the GDLC special file name at open time. GDLC allocates the channel and returns the value in the chanp parameter.

This routine is also called following a close subroutine to deallocate the channel. In this case the chanp parameter is passed to GDLC to identify the channel being deallocated. Since GDLC allocates a new channel for each open subroutine, a dlcmpx routine follows each call to the dlcclose routine.

Each GDLC supports the dlcmpx entry point as its switch table entry for the open and close subroutines. The file system calls this entry point from the process environment only.
Parameters

**devno**  Indicates major and minor device numbers. This is a **dev_t** device number that specifies both the major and minor device numbers of the GDLC device manager. There is one **dev_t** device number for each type of GDLC, such as Ethernet, Token-Ring, or SDLC.

**chanp**  Specifies the channel ID returned if a valid path name exists for the device handler, and the **openflag** is set. If no channel ID is allocated, this parameter is set to a value of -1 by GDLC.

**channname**  Points to the appended path name (path name extension) of the device handler that is used by GDLC to attach to the network. If this is null, the channel is deallocated.

Return Values

The following return values are defined in the /usr/include/sys/errno.h file:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Indicates a successful operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBADF</td>
<td>Indicates a bad file number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EINVAL</td>
<td>Indicates an invalid value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Information

The **close** subroutine, **open** subroutine.

The **ddmpx** device entry point.

The **dlcclose** entry point for the GDLC device manager, **dlcopen** entry point for the GDLC device manager.

**Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview** in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

dlcopen Entry Point of the GDLC Device Manager

**Purpose**

Opens a generic data link control (GDLC) channel.

**Syntax**

```c
#include <sys/device.h>
#include <sys/gdlextcb.h>

int dlcopen( devno, devflag, chan, ext)
```

**Note:** The dlc prefix is replaced with the three-digit prefix for the specific GDLC device manager being opened.

**Description**

The **dlcopen** entry point is called when a user's application program invokes the **open** or **openx** subroutine, or when a kernel user calls the **fp_open** kernel service. The GDLC device manager opens the specified communications device handler and creates a kernel process to catch posted events from that port. Additional opens to the same port share both the device handler open and the GDLC kernel process created on the original open.

Each GDLC supports the **dlcopen** entry point as its switch table entry for the **open** and **openx** subroutines. The file system calls this entry point from the process environment only.
Note: It may be more advantageous to handle the actual device handler open and kernel process creation in the `dlcmpx` routine. This is left as a specific DLC’s option.

Parameters

`devno` Indicates major and minor device numbers. This is a `dev_t` device number that specifies both the major and minor device numbers of the GDLC device manager. One `dev_t` device number exists for each type of GDLC, such as Ethernet, Token-Ring, or SDLC.

`devflag` Specifies the flag word with the following flags defined:

- **DKERNEL**: Entry point called by kernel routine using the `fp_open` kernel service. All command extensions and `ioctl` arguments are in kernel space.
- **DREAD**: Open for reading. This flag is ignored.
- **DWRITE**: Open for writing. This flag is ignored.
- **DAPPEND**: Open for appending. This flag is ignored.
- **DNDELAY**: Device open in nonblocking mode. This flag is ignored.

`chan` Specifies the channel ID assigned by GDLC in the `dlcmpx` routine.

`ext` Specifies the extended subroutine parameter. This is a pointer to the `dlc_open_ext` extended I/O structure for the `open` subroutine.

Return Values

The following return values are defined in the `/usr/include/sys/errno.h` file.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Indicates a successful operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECHILD</td>
<td>Indicates that the device manager cannot create a kernel process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EINVAL</td>
<td>Indicates an invalid value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENODEV</td>
<td>Indicates that no such device handler is present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENOOMEM</td>
<td>Indicates insufficient resources to satisfy the <code>open</code> subroutine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFAULT</td>
<td>Indicates that a kernel service, such as the <code>copyin</code> or <code>initp</code> kernel service was unsuccessful.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Information

The `open` or `openx` subroutine.

The `ddopen` device entry point.

The `dlicclose` entry point of the GDLC device manager, `dlcmpx` entry point of the GDLC device manager.

The `fp_open` kernel service, `copyin` kernel service, `initp` kernel service.

Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
dlcread Entry Point of the GDLC Device Manager

Purpose
Reads receive data from generic data link control (GDLC).

Syntax
#include <sys/device.h>
#include <sys/gdlextcb.h>
int dlcread (devno, uiop, chan, ext)

Note: The dlc prefix is replaced with the three-digit prefix for the specific GDLC device manager being read.

Description
The dlcread entry point is called when a user application program invokes the readx subroutine. Kernel users do not call an fp_read kernel service. All receive data is returned to the user in the same order as received. The type of data that was read is indicated, as well as the service access point (SAP) and link station (LS) identifiers.

The following fields in the uio and iov structures are used to control the read-data transfer operation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>uio_iov</td>
<td>Points to an iovec structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uio_iovcnt</td>
<td>Indicates the number of elements in the iovec structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This must be set to a value of 1. Vectored read operations are not supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uio_offset</td>
<td>Indicates the file offset established by a previous fp_lseek kernel service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is ignored by GDLC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uio_segflag</td>
<td>Indicates whether the data area is in application or kernel space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is set to the UIO_USERSPACE value by the file I/O subsystem to indicate application space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uio_fmode</td>
<td>Contains the value of the file mode set with the open applications subroutine to GDLC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uio_resid</td>
<td>Specifies initially the total byte count of the receive data area. GDLC decrements this count for each packet byte received using the uiomove kernel service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iovec structure</td>
<td>Contains the starting address and length of the received data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iov_base</td>
<td>Specifies where GDLC writes the address of the received data. This field is a variable in the iovec structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iov_len</td>
<td>Contains the byte length of the data. This field is a variable in the iovec structure.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each GDLC supports the dlcread entry point as its switch table entry for the readx subroutine. The file system calls this entry point from the process environment only.

Parameters

devno
Indicates major and minor device numbers. This is a dev_t device number that specifies both the major and minor device numbers of the GDLC device manager. One dev_t device number exists for each type of GDLC, such as Ethernet, Token-Ring, or SDLC.

uiop
Points to the uio structure containing the read parameters.

chan
Specifies the channel ID assigned by GDLC in the dlcmpx routine at open time.

ext
Specifies the extended subroutine parameter. This is a pointer to the extended I/O structure. The argument to this parameter must always be in the application space. See the "read Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC" for more information on this parameter.
Return Values

Successful read operations and those truncated due to limited user data space each return a value of 0 (zero). If more data is received from the media than will fit into the application data area, the DLC_OFLO value indicator is set in the command extension area (dlc_io_ext) to indicate that the read is truncated. All excess data is lost.

The following return values are defined in the /usr/include/sys/errno.h file:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EBADF</td>
<td>Indicates a bad file number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EINTR</td>
<td>Indicates that a signal interrupted the routine before it received data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EINVAL</td>
<td>Indicates an invalid value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENOMEM</td>
<td>Indicates insufficient resources to satisfy the read operation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Information

The open subroutine, readx subroutine.

The ddread device entry point.

The dlcmpx entry point of the GDLC device manager, dlcwrite entry point of the GDLC device manager.

The fp_lseek kernel service, fp_read kernel service, uiomove kernel service.

read Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC

Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

dlcselect Entry Point of the GDLC Device Manager

Purpose

Selects for asynchronous criteria from generic data link control (GDLC), such as receive data completion and exception conditions.

Syntax

```
#include <sys/device.h>
#include <sys/poll.h>
#include <sys/gdlextcb.h>

int dlcselect (devno, events, reventp, chan)
```

Note: The dlc prefix is replaced with the three-digit prefix for the specific GDLC device manager being selected.

Description

The dlcselect entry point is called when a user application program invokes a select or poll subroutine. This allows the user to select receive data or exception conditions. The POLLOUT write-availability criteria is not supported. If no results are available at the time of a select subroutine, the user process is put to sleep until an event occurs.

If one or more events specified in the events parameter are true, the dlcselect routine updates the reventp (returned events) parameter (passed by reference) by setting the corresponding event bits that indicate which events are currently true.
If none of the requested events are true, the dlcselect routine sets the returned events parameter to a value of 0 (passed by reference using the reventp parameter) and checks the POLLSYNC flag in the events parameter. If this flag is true, the routine returns because the event request was a synchronous request. If the POLLSYNC flag is false, an internal flag is set for each event requested in the events parameter.

When one or more of the requested events become true, GDLC issues the selnotify kernel service to notify the kernel that a requested event or events have become true. The internal flag indicating that the event was requested is then reset to prevent renotification of the event.

If the port in use is in a closed state, implying that the requested event or events can never be satisfied, GDLC sets the returned events flags to a value of 1 for each event that can never be satisfied. This is done so that the select or poll subroutine does not wait indefinitely.

Kernel users do not call an fp_select kernel service since their receive data and exception notification functions are called directly by GDLC. open Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC details how these function handlers are specified.

Each GDLC supports the dlcselect entry point as its switch table entry for the select or poll subroutines. The file system calls this entry point from the process environment only.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>devno</td>
<td>Indicates major and minor device numbers. This is a dev_t device number that specifies both the major and minor device numbers of the GDLC device manager. One dev_t device number exists for each type of GDLC, such as Ethernet, Token-Ring, or SDLC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>events</td>
<td>Identifies the events to check. The following events are: POLLIN \nRead selection. \nPOLLOUT Write selection. This is not supported by GDLC. \nPOLLPRI Exception selection. \nPOLLSYNC This request is a synchronous request only. The routine should not perform a selnotify kernel service routine due to this request if the events occur later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reventp</td>
<td>Identifies a returned events pointer. This is a parameter passed by reference to indicate which of the selected events are true at the time of the call. See the preceding events parameter for possible values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chan</td>
<td>Specifies the channel ID assigned by GDLC in the dlcmpx routine at open time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Return Values

The following return values are defined in the /usr/include/sys/errno.h file:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Indicates a successful operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBADF</td>
<td>Indicates a bad file number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EINTR</td>
<td>Indicates that a signal interrupted the subroutine before it found any of the selected events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EINVAL</td>
<td>Indicates that the specified POLLOUT write selection is not supported.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Related Information
The `select` subroutine, `poll` subroutine.
The `ddselect` device entry point, `dlcmpx` entry point.
The `fp_select` kernel service.

**open Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC**

**Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview** in *AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.*

---

**dlcwrite Entry Point of the GDLC Device Manager**

**Purpose**
Writes transmit data to generic data link control (GDLC).

**Syntax**
```c
#include <sys/uio.h>
#include <sys/device.h>
#include <sys/gdlextcb.h>
int dlcwrite(devno, uiop, chan, ext)
```

**Note:** The `dlc` prefix is replaced with the three-digit prefix for the specific GDLC device manager being written.

**Description**
The `dlcwrite` entry point is called when a user application program invokes a `writex` subroutine or when a kernel user calls the `fp_write` kernel service. An extended write is used in order to specify the type of data being sent, as well as the service access point (SAP) and link station (LS) identifiers.

The following fields in the `uio` and `iov` structures are used to control the write data transfer operation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Field</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>uio_iov</code></td>
<td>Points to an <code>iovec</code> structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>uio_iovcnt</code></td>
<td>Indicates the number of elements in the <code>iovec</code> structure. This must be set to a value of 1 for the kernel user, indicating that there is a single communications memory buffer (<code>mbuf</code>) chain associated with the <code>write</code> subroutine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>uio_offset</code></td>
<td>Specifies the file offset established by a previous <code>fp_lseek</code> kernel service. This field is ignored by GDLC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>uio_segflag</code></td>
<td>Indicates whether the data area is in application or kernel space. This field is set to the <code>UIO_USERSPACE</code> value by the file I/O subsystem if the data area is in application space. The field must be set to the <code>UIO_SYSSPACE</code> value by the kernel user to indicate kernel space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>uio_fmode</code></td>
<td>Contains the value of the file mode set during an application <code>open</code> subroutine to GDLC or can be set directly during a <code>fp_open</code> kernel service to GDLC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>uio_resid</code></td>
<td>Contains the total byte count of the transmit data area for application users. For kernel users, GDLC ignores this field since the communications memory buffer (<code>mbuf</code>) also carries this information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>iovec</code> structure</td>
<td>Contains the starting address and length of the transmit. (See the <code>iov_base</code> and <code>iov_len</code> fields.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>iov_base</code></td>
<td>Specifies a variable in the <code>iovec</code> structure where GDLC gets the address of the application user’s transmit data area or the address of the kernel user’s transmit <code>mbuf</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Field | Description
--- | ---
iov_len | Specifies a variable in the iovec structure that contains the byte length of the application user’s transmit data area. This variable is ignored by GDLC for kernel users, since the transmit mbuf contains a length field.

Each GDLC supports the dlcwrite entry point as its switch table entry for the writex subroutine. The file system calls this entry point from the process environment only.

**Parameters**

- **devno**: Indicates major and minor device numbers. This is a dev_t device number that specifies both the major and minor device numbers of the GDLC device manager. One dev_t device number exists for each type of GDLC, such as Ethernet, Token-Ring, or SDLC.
- **uiop**: Points to the uio structure containing the write parameters.
- **chan**: Specifies the channel ID assigned by GDLC in the dlcmpx routine at open time.
- **ext**: Specifies the extended subroutine parameter. This is a pointer to the extended I/O structure. This data must be in the application space if the uio_fmode field indicates an application subroutine or in the kernel space if the uio_fmode field indicates a kernel subroutine. See the "write Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC" for more information on this parameter.

**Return Values**
The following return values are defined in the /usr/include/sys/errno.h file:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Indicates a successful operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EAGAIN</td>
<td>Indicates that transmit is temporarily blocked and a sleep cannot be issued.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBADF</td>
<td>Indicates a bad file number (application).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EINTR</td>
<td>Indicates that a signal interrupted the routine before it could complete successfully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EINVAL</td>
<td>Indicates an invalid value, such as too much data for a single packet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENOMEM</td>
<td>Indicates insufficient resources to satisfy the write subroutine, such as a lack of communications memory buffers (mbufs).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENXIO</td>
<td>Indicates an invalid file pointer (kernel).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Information**
The open subroutine, writex subroutine.

The dlcmpx entry point of the GDLC device manager, dlcread entry point of the GDLC device manager, ddwrite device entry point.

The fp_lseek kernel service, fp_open kernel service, fp_write kernel service.

Write Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC

Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

**close Subroutine Interface for Data Link Control (DLC) Devices**

**Purpose**
Closes the generic data link control (GDLC) device manager using a file descriptor.
Syntax

```c
int close (int fildes);
```

Description

The `close` subroutine disables a GDLC channel. If this is the last channel to close on a port, the GDLC device manager is reset to an idle state on that port and the communications device handler is closed.

Each GDLC supports the `close` subroutine interface by way of its `dlcclose` and `dlcmpx` entry points. This subroutine can be called from the process environment only.

Parameters

- `fildes`: Specifies the file descriptor of the GDLC being closed.

Return Values

- `0`: Indicates a successful operation.
- `EBADF`: Indicates a bad file number. This value is defined in the `/usr/include/sys/errno.h` file.

If an error occurs, a value of -1 is also returned.

Related Information

The `close` subroutine.

`open` Subroutine Interface for DLC Devices.

Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

**ioctl Subroutine Interface for Data Link Control (DLC) Devices**

Purpose

Transfers special commands to generic data link control (GDLC) using a file descriptor.

Syntax

```c
#include <sys/ioctl.h>
#include <sys/devinfo.h>
#include <sys/gdlextcb.h>

int ioctl (int fildes, int op, void *arg);
```

Description

The `ioctl` subroutine initiates various GDLC functions, such as changing configuration parameters, contacting a remote link, and testing a link. Most of these operations can be completed before returning to the user (synchronously). Since some operations take longer, asynchronous results are returned later using the exception condition notification. Application users can obtain these exceptions using the `DLC_GET_EXCEP` ioctl operation. For more information on the functions that can be initiated using the `ioctl` subroutine, see "ioctl Operations (op) for DLC" and "Parameter Blocks by ioctl Operation for DLC".

Each GDLC supports the `ioctl` subroutine interface via its `dlcioctl` entry point. This subroutine may be called from the process environment only.
Parameters

- **fildes**: Specifies the file descriptor of the target GDLC.
- **op**: Specifies the operation to be performed by GDLC. See "ioctl Operations (op) for DLC" for a listing of all possible operators.
- **arg**: Specifies the address of the parameter block. See "Parameter Blocks by ioctl Operations for DLC" for a listing of possible values.

Return Values

- **0**: Indicates a successful operation.

If an error occurs, a value of -1 is returned with one of the following error values available using the ```errno``` global variable, as defined in the ```/usr/include/sys/errno.h``` file:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EBADF</td>
<td>Indicates a bad file number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EINVAL</td>
<td>Indicates an invalid argument.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENOMEM</td>
<td>Indicates insufficient resources to satisfy the ioctl subroutine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Information

- The ```ioctl``` subroutine.
- ```ioctl Operations (op) for DLC```
- ```Parameter Blocks by ioctl Operation for DLC```
- ```Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Introduction``` in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

open Subroutine Interface for Data Link Control (DLC) Devices

Purpose

Opens the generic data link control (GDLC) device manager by special file name.

Syntax

```c
#include <fcntl.h>
#include <sys/gdextcb.h>

int open (path, oflag, mode)  
or
int openx (path, oflag, mode, ext)
```

Description

The open subroutine allows the application user to open a GDLC device manager by specifying the DLC special file name and the target device handler special file name. Since the GDLC device manager is multiplexed, more than one process can open it (or the same process many times) and still have unique channel identifications.
Each open carries the communications device handler’s special file name so that the DLC knows on which port to transfer data. This name must directly follow the DLC’s special file name. For example, in the /dev/dlccether/ent0 character string, ent0 is the special file name of the Ethernet device handler. GDLC obtains this name using its dlcmpx routine.

Each GDLC supports the open subroutine interface by way of its dlcopen and dlcmpx entry points. This subroutine may be called from the process environment only.

Parameters

path
Consists of a character string containing the /dev special file name of the GDLC device manager, with the name of the communications device handler appended as follows:

```
/dev/dlccether/ent0
```

oflag
Specifies a value for the file status flag. The GDLC device manager ignores all but the following flags:

```
O_RDWR
  Open for reading and writing. This must be set for GDLC or the open will fail.
```

```
O_NDELAY, O_NONBLOCK
  Subsequent reads with no data present and writes that cannot get enough resources will return immediately. The calling process is not put to sleep.
```

mode
Specifies the O_CREAT mode parameter. This is ignored by GDLC.

ext
Specifies the extended subroutine parameter. This is a pointer to the dlc_open_ext extended I/O structure for the open subroutines. See open Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC for more information on this parameter.

Return Values

Upon successful completion, the open subroutine returns a valid file descriptor that identifies the opened GDLC channel.

If an error occurs, a value of -1 is returned with one of the following error values available using the errno global variable, as defined in the /usr/include/sys/errno.h file:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ECHILD</td>
<td>Indicates that the device manager cannot create a kernel process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EINVAL</td>
<td>Indicates an invalid value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENODEV</td>
<td>Indicates that no such device handler is present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENOMEM</td>
<td>Indicates insufficient resources to satisfy the open subroutine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFAULT</td>
<td>Indicates that a kernel service, such as the copyin or initp kernel service, has failed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Information

The dlcmpx entry point.

The copyin kernel service, initp kernel service.

close Subroutine Interface for Data Link Control (DLC) Devices, open Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC.

Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
readx Subroutine Interface for Data Link Control (DLC) Devices

Purpose
Allows receive application data to be read using a file descriptor.

Syntax
```
#include <sys/gdlextcb.h>
#include <sys/uio.h>
int readx (fildes, buf, len, ext)
```

Description
The receive queue for this application user is interrogated for any pending data. The oldest data packet is copied to user space, with the type of data, the link station correlator, and the service access point (SAP) correlator written to the extension area. When attempting to read an empty receive data queue, the default action is to delay until data is available. If the O_NDELAY or O_NONBLOCK flags are specified in the open subroutine, the readx subroutine returns immediately to the caller.

Data is transferred using the uiomove kernel service between the user space and kernel communications memory buffers (mbufs). A complete receive packet must fit into the user’s read data area. Generic data link control (GDLC) does not break up received packets into multiple user data areas.

Each GDLC supports the readx subroutine interface via its dlcread entry point. This subroutine can be called from the process environment only.

Parameters
- **fildes**: Specifies the file descriptor returned from the open subroutine.
- **buf**: Points to the user data area.
- **len**: Contains the byte count of the user data area.
- **ext**: Specifies the extended subroutine parameter. This is a pointer to the dlc_io_ext extended I/O structure for the readx subroutine. ["read Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC" provides more information on this parameter.](#)

Note: It is the user’s responsibility to set the ext parameter area to 0 (zero) before issuing the readx subroutine to insure valid entries when no data is available.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, the readx subroutine returns the number of bytes read and placed into the application data area. If more data is received from the media than will fit into the application data area, the DLC_OFLO flag is set in the dlc_io_ext command extension area to indicate that the read is truncated. All excess data is lost.

If no data is available and the application user has specified the O_NDELAY or O_NONBLOCK flags at open time, a 0 (zero) is returned.

If an error occurs, a value of -1 is returned with one of the following error numbers available using the errno global variable, as defined in the /usr/include/sys/errno.h file:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EBADF</td>
<td>Indicates a bad file number.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EINTR</td>
<td>Indicates that a signal interrupted the subroutine before it received data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EINVAL</td>
<td>Indicates an invalid value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENOMEM</td>
<td>Indicates insufficient resources to satisfy the read operation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Information**

The `open` subroutine, `readx` subroutine.

The `uiomove` kernel service.

`read` Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC, `writex` Subroutine Interface for DLC Devices.


---

**select Subroutine Interface for Data Link Control (DLC) Devices**

**Purpose**

Allows data to be sent using a file descriptor.

**Syntax**

```c
#include <sys/select.h>

int select (nfdsmsgs, readlist, writelist, exceptlist, timeout)
```

**Description**

The `select` subroutine checks the specified file descriptor and message queues to see if they are ready for reading (receiving) or writing (sending), or if they have an exception condition pending.

**Note:** Generic data link control (GDLC) does not support transmit for nonblocked notification in the full sense. If the `writelist` parameter is specified in the `select` call, GDLC always returns as if transmit is available. There is no checking to see if internal buffering is available or if internal control-block locks are free. These resources are much too dynamic, and tests for their availability can be done reasonably only at the time of use.

The `readlist` and `exceptlist` parameters are fully supported. Whenever the selection criteria specified by the `SelType` parameter is true, the file system returns a value that indicates the total number of file descriptors and message queues that satisfy the selection criteria. The `fdsmask` bit masks are modified so that bits set to a value of 1 indicate file descriptors that meet the criteria. The `msgids` arrays are altered so that message queue identifiers that do not meet the criteria are replaced with a value of -1. If the selection is not satisfied, the calling process is put to sleep waiting on a `selwakeup` subroutine at a later time.

Each GDLC supports the `select` subroutine interface via its `dlcselect` entry point. This subroutine can be called from the process environment only.

**Parameters**

- **nfdsmsgs**
  
  Specifies the number of file descriptors and message queues to check.
The readlist, writelist, and exceptlist parameters specify what to check for during reading, writing, and exceptions, respectively. Each sellist is a structure that contains a file descriptor bit mask (fdsmask) and message queue identifiers (msgids).

The writelist criterion is always set to True by GDLC.

Points to a structure that specifies the maximum length of time to wait for at least one of the selection criteria to be met (if the timeout parameter is not a null pointer).

### Return Values

Upon successful completion, the select subroutine returns a value that indicates the total number of file descriptors and message queues that satisfy the selection criteria. The return value is similar to the nfdsmsgs parameter in that the low-order 16 bits give the number of file descriptors. Also, the high-order 16 bits give the number of message queue identifiers. These values indicate the sum total that meet each of the read and exception criteria.

If the time limit specified by the timeout parameter expires, then the select subroutine returns a value of 0 (zero).

If an error occurs, a value of -1 is returned with one of the following error values available using the errno global variable, as defined in the /usr/include/sys/errno.h file:

- **EBADF**: Indicates a bad file number.
- **EINVAL**: Indicates that one of the parameters contained an invalid value.
- **EINTR**: Indicates that a signal interrupted the subroutine before it found any of the selected events.

### Related Information


[Generic Data Link Control (G DLC) Environment Overview](#) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

### writex Subroutine Interface for Data Link Control (DLC) Devices

#### Purpose

Allows application data to be sent using a file descriptor.

#### Syntax

```c
#include <sys/gdlextcb.h>
#include <sys/uio.h>

int writex (fildes, buf, len, ext)
```

#### Description

Four types of data can be sent to generic data link control (GDLC). Network data can be sent to a service access point (SAP), while normal, Exchange Identification (XID) or datagram data can be sent to a link.
station (LS). Data is transferred using the **uiomove** kernel service between the application user space and kernel communications I/O buffers (**mbufs**). All data must fit into a single packet for each **write** subroutine. The generic data link control does not separate the user’s write data area into multiple transmit packets. A maximum write data size is passed back to the user at **DLC_ENABLE_SAP** completion and at **DLC_START_LS** completion for this purpose. See **DLC_SAPE_RES** and **DLC_STAS_RES** for further information.

Normally, GDLC can immediately satisfy a **write** subroutine by completing the data link headers and sending the transmit packet down to the device handler. In some cases, however, transmit packets can be blocked by the particular protocol’s flow control or by a resource outage. GDLC reacts to this differently, based on the system blocked or nonblocked file status flags. These are set for each channel using the **O_NDELAY** and **O_NONBLOCK** values passed on **open** or **fcntl** subroutines with the **F_SETFD** parameter.

GDLC only looks at the **uiomove** field on each **write** subroutine to determine whether the operation is blocked or nonblocked. Nonblock writes that cannot get enough resources to queue the data return an error indication. Blocked **write** subroutines put the calling process to sleep until the resources free up or an error occurs.

Each GDLC supports the **writex** subroutine interface via its **dlcwrite** entry point. This subroutine may be called from the process environment only.

**Note:** GDLC does not support nonblocked transmit users based on resource availability using the **selwakeup** subroutine. Internal resources such as communications I/O buffers and control block locks are very dynamic. Any **write** subroutines that fail with errors (such as **EAGAIN** or **ENOMEM**) should be retried at the user’s discretion.

### Parameters

- **fildes**
  - Specifies the file descriptor returned from the **open** subroutine.
- **buf**
  - Points to the user data area.
- **len**
  - Contains the byte count of the user data area.
- **ext**
  - Specifies the extended subroutine parameter. This is a pointer to the **dlc_io_ext** extended I/O structure for the **writex** subroutine. **Write Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC** provides more information on this parameter.

### Return Values

Upon successful completion, this service returns the number of bytes that were written into a communications packet from the user data area.

If an error occurs, a value of -1 is returned with one of the following error values available using the **errno** global variable, as defined in the **/usr/include/sys/errno.h** file.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>EAGAIN</strong></td>
<td>Indicates insufficient resources to satisfy the write. For example, the routine was unable to obtain a necessary lock. The user can try again later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EBADF</strong></td>
<td>Indicates a bad file number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EINTR</strong></td>
<td>Indicates that a signal interrupted the subroutine before it completed successfully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EINVAL</strong></td>
<td>Indicates an invalid value, such as too much data for a single packet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Value | Description
--- | ---
EIO | Indicates that an I/O error has occurred, such as loss of the port.
ENOMEM | Indicates insufficient resources to satisfy the write operation. For example, a lack of communications memory buffers (mbufs). The user can try again later.

Related Information

The `fcntl` subroutine, `open` subroutine, `writex` subroutine.

The `uiomove` kernel service.

Parameter Blocks by ioctl Operation for DLC

`readx` Subroutine Interface for DLC Devices, `write` Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC.

Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

open Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC

**Purpose**

Alters certain defaulted parameters for an extended open (openx) subroutine.

**Syntax**

```c
struct dlc_open_ext
{
    __ulong32_t maxsaps;
    int (* rcvi_fa)();
    int (* rcvx_fa)();
    int (* rcvd_fa)();
    int (* rcvn_fa)();
    int (* excp_fa)();
};
```

**Description**

An extended open or openx subroutine can be issued to alter certain defaulted parameters, such as maximum service access points (SAPs) and ring queue depths. Kernel users may change these normally defaulted parameters, but are required to provide additional parameters to notify the `dlcopen` routine that these callers are to be treated as kernel processes and not as application processes. Additional parameters passed include functional addresses that generic data link control (GDLC) calls to notify about asynchronous events, such as receive data available.

The `maxsaps` parameter is optional for both the application and the kernel user. The other five parameters are mandatory for kernel users but are ignored by GDLC for application users. There are no default values. Each field must be filled in by the kernel user. All functional entry addresses must be valid. That is, entry points that the kernel user does not wish to support must at least point to a routine which frees the communication’s memory buffer (mbuf) passed on the call.

These DLC extended parameters for the open subroutine are part of the data link control in BOS Extensions 2 for the device manager you are using.
See the /usr/include/sys/gdextcb.h file for more details on GDLC structures.

**Parameters**

*maxsaps*  
Specifies the maximum number of SAPs the user channel uses to start and run concurrently. Any value from 1 to 127 can be specified. If the default value of 1 is desired, the user must set the field to 0 (zero) before issuing the open subroutine.

*rcvi_fa*  
Points to the address of a user I-Frame Data Received routine that handles the sequenced receive data completions. This field is valid for kernel users only and must be set to 0 (zero) by application users.

*rcvx_fa*  
Points to the address of a user XID Data Received routine that handles the exchange ID receive data completions.

*rcvd_fa*  
Points to the address of a user Datagram Data Received routine that handles the datagram receive data completions.

*rcvn_fa*  
Points to the address of a user Network Data Received routine that handles the network receive data completions.

*excp_fa*  
Points to the address of a user Exception Condition routine that handles the exception conditions, such as DLC_SAPE_RES (SAP-enabled) or DLC_CONT_RES (LS-contacted).

**Related Information**

- The *open* or *openx* subroutine.
- The *dlcopen* entry point.

List of Kernel Routines for DLC

Parameter Blocks by ioctl Operation for DLC

Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

**read Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC**

**Purpose**

Provide generic data link control (GDLC) with a structure to return data types and service access point (SAP) and link station (LS) correlators.

**Syntax**

```c
#define DLC_INFO 0x80000000
#define DLC_XIDD 0x40000000
#define DLC_DGRM 0x20000000
#define DLC_NETD 0x10000000
#define DLC_OFLO 0x00000002
#define DLC_OFLO 0x00000001

struct dlc_io_ext
{
    __ulong32_t sap_corr;
};
```
Description
An extended read or readx subroutine must be issued by an application user to provide GDLC with a structure to return the type of data and the SAP and LS correlators.

Parameters

sap_corr Specifies the user’s SAP identifier of the received data.
ls_corr Specifies the user’s LS identifier of the received data.
flags Specifies flags for the readx subroutine. The following flags are supported:

DLC_INFO Indicates that normal sequenced data has been received for a link station using an I-Frame Data Received routine. If buffer overflow (OFLO) is indicated, the received data has been truncated because the received data length exceeds either the maximum I-field size derived at completion of DLC_START_LS ioctl operation or the application user’s buffer size.

DLC_XIDD Indicates that exchange identification (XID) data has been received for a link station using an XID Data Received routine. If buffer overflow (OFLO) is indicated, the received XID has been truncated because the received data length exceeds either the maximum I-field size derived at DLC_START_LS completion or the application user’s buffer size. If response pending (RSPP) is indicated, an XID response is required and must be provided to GDLC using a write XID as soon as possible to avoid repolling and possible termination of the remote LS.

DLC_DGRM Indicates that a datagram has been received for an LS using a Datagram Data Received routine. If buffer overflow (OFLO) is indicated, the received data has been truncated because the received data length exceeds either the maximum I-field size derived at DLC_START_LS completion or the application user’s buffer size.

DLC_NETD Indicates that data has been received from the network for a service access point using a Network Data Received routine. This may be link-establishment data such as X.21 call-progress signals or Smartmodem command responses. It can also be data destined for the user’s SAP when no link station has been started that fits the addressing of the packet received. If buffer overflow (OFLO) is indicated, the received data has been truncated because the received data length exceeds either the maximum packet size derived at DLC_ENABLE_SAP completion or the application user’s buffer size.

Network data contains the entire MAC layer packet, excluding any fields stripped by the adapter such as Preamble or CRC.

DLC_OFLO Indicates that overflow of the user data area has occurred and the data was truncated. This error does not set a u.u_error indication.

DLC_RSPP Indicates that the XID received requires an XID response to be sent back to the remote link station.
dlh_len Specifies data link header length. This field has a different meaning depending on whether the extension is for a readx subroutine call to GDLC or a response from GDLC.

On the application readx subroutine, this field indicates whether the user wishes to have datalink header information prefixed to the data. If this field is set to 0 (zero), the data link header is not to be copied (only the I-field is copied). If this field is set to any nonzero value, the data link header information is included in the read operation.

On the response to an application readx subroutine, this field contains the number of data link header bytes received and copied into the data link header information field.

On asynchronous receive function handlers to the kernel user, this field contains the length of the data link header within the communications memory buffer (mbuf).

These DLC extended parameters for the read subroutine are part of the data link control in BOS Extensions 2 for the device manager you are using.

Related Information
The read, readx, readv, or readvx subroutine.

List of Kernel Routines for DLC
Parameter Blocks by ioctl Operation for DLC
write Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC

Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

write Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC

Purpose
Provide generic data link control (GDLC) with data types, service access points (SAPs), and link station (LS) correlators.

Syntax
```c
#define DLC_INFO 0x80000000
#define DLC_XIDD 0x40000000
#define DLC_DGRM 0x20000000
#define DLC_NETD 0x10000000

__ulong32_t sap_corr;
__ulong32_t ls_corr;
__ulong32_t flags;
__ulong32_t dlh_len;
```

Description
An extended write or writex subroutine must be issued by an application or kernel user to provide GDLC with data types, SAPs, and LS correlators.

These DLC extended parameters for the write subroutine are part of the data link control in BOS Extensions 2 for the device manager you are using.
Parameters

sap_corr

Specifies the GDLC SAP correlator of the write data. This field must contain the same correlator value passed back from GDLC in the gdlc_sap_corr field when the SAP was enabled.

dlh_len

Not used for writes.

ls_corr

Specifies the GDLC LS correlator of the write data. This field must contain the same correlator value passed back from GDLC in the gdlc_ls_corr field when the LS was started.

flags

Specifies flags for the writex subroutine. The following flags are supported:

DLC_INFO

Requests a sequenced data class of information to be sent (generally called I-frames).

This request is valid any time the target link station has been started and contacted.

DLC_XIDD

Requests an exchange identification (XID) non-sequenced command or response packet to be sent.

This request is valid any time the target link station has been started with the following rules:

GDLC sends the XID as a command as long as no DLC_TEST, DLC_CONTACT, DLC_HALT_LS, or DLC_XIDD write subroutine is already in progress, and no received XID is waiting for a response. If a received XID is waiting for a response, GDLC automatically sends the write XID as that response. If no response is pending and a command is already in progress, the write is rejected by GDLC.

DLC_DGRM

Requests a datagram packet to be sent. A datagram is an unnumbered information (UI) response.

This request is valid any time the target link station has been started.

DLC_NETD

Requests that network data be sent.

Examples of network data include special modem control data or user-generated medium access control (MAC) and logical link control (LLC) headers.

Network data must contain the entire MAC layer packet headers so that the packet can be sent without the data link control (DLC)'s intervention. GDLC only provides a pass-through function for this type of write.

This request is valid any time the SAP is open.
Datagram Data Received Routine for DLC

Purpose
Receives a datagram packet each time it is coded by the kernel user and called by generic data link control (GDLC).

Syntax
```c
#include <sys/gdlextcb.h>

int (*dlc_open_ext.rcvd_fa)(m, ext);
struct mbuf *m;
struct dlc_io_ext *ext;
```

Description
The DLC Datagram Data Received routine receives a datagram packet each time it is coded by the kernel user and called by GDLC.

Each GDLC supports a subset of the data-received routines. It is critical to performance that the Datagram Data Received routine be coded to minimize the amount of time spent prior to returning to the GDLC that called it.

Parameters
- `m` Points to a communications memory buffer (`mbuf`).
- `ext` Specifies the receive extension parameter. This is a pointer to the `dlc_io_ext` extended I/O structure for read operations.

Return Values
- `DLC_FUNC_OK` Indicates that the received datagram `mbuf` data has been accepted.
- `DLC_FUNC_RETRY` Indicates that the received datagram `mbuf` data cannot be accepted at this time. GDLC should retry this function later. The actual retry wait period depends on the DLC in use. Excessive retries may close the link station.

Related Information
- `read Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC`
- `Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview` in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
Exception Condition Routine for DLC

Purpose
Notifies the kernel user each time an asynchronous event occurs in generic data link control (GDLC).

Syntax
```c
#include <sys/gdlextcb.h>

int (*dlc_open_ext.excp_fa)(ext)
struct dlc_getx_arg *ext;
```

Description
The DLC Exception Condition routine notifies the kernel user each time an asynchronous event occurs, such as DLC_SAPD_RES (SAP-disabled) or DLC_CONT_RES (contacted), in GDLC.

Each GDLC supports a subset of the data-received routines. It is critical to performance that the Exception Condition routine for DLC be coded to minimize the amount of time spent prior to returning to the GDLC that called it.

Parameters
- **ext**: Specifies the same structure for a dlc_getx_arg (get exception) ioctl subroutine.

Return Values
- **DLC_FUNC_OK**: Indicates that the exception has been accepted.

Note: The function call above has a hidden parameter extension for internal use only, defined as int *chanp, the channel pointer.

Related Information
The ioctl subroutine.

Parameter Blocks by ioctl Operation for DLC.

Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

I-Frame Data Received Routine for DLC

Purpose
Receives a normal sequenced data packet each time it is coded by the kernel user and called by generic data link control (GDLC).

Syntax
```c
#include <sys/gdlextcb.h>

int (*dlc_open_ext.rcvi_fa)(m, ext)
struct mbuf *m;
struct dlc_io_ext *ext;
```
Description
The DLC I-Frame Data Received routine receives a normal sequenced data packet each time it is coded by the kernel user and called by GDLC.

Each GDLC supports a subset of the data-received routines. It is critical to performance that the I-Frame Data Received routine be coded to minimize the amount of time spent prior to returning to the GDLC that called it.

Parameters

\( m \quad \text{Points to a communications memory buffer (mbuf).} \)

\( ext \quad \text{Specifies the receive extension parameter. This is a pointer to the dlc_io_ext extended I/O structure for reads. The argument to this parameter must be in the kernel space.} \)

Return Values

- **DLC_FUNC_OK** Indicates that the received I-frame function call is accepted.
- **DLC_FUNC_BUSY** Indicates that the received I-frame function call cannot be accepted at this time. The ioctl command operation [DLC_EXIT_LBUSY](#) must be issued later using the ioctl subroutine.
- **DLC_FUNC_RETRY** Indicates that the received I-frame function call cannot be accepted at this time. GDLC should retry this function call later. The actual retry wait period depends on the DLC in use. Excessive retries can be subject to a halt of the link station.

Related Information

- The [ioctl](#) subroutine.
- Parameter Blocks by ioctl Operation for DLC.
- read Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC.
- Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

Network Data Received Routine for DLC

Purpose
Receives network-specific data each time it is coded by the kernel user and called by generic data link control (GDLC).

Syntax

```
#include <sys/gdlextcb.h>

int (*dlc_open_ext.rcvn_fa)(m, ext)
struct mbuf *m;
struct dlc_io_ext *ext;
```

Description
The DLC Network Data Received routine receives network-specific data each time the routine is coded by the kernel user and called by GDLC.
Each GDLC supports a subset of the data-received routines. It is critical to performance that the Network Data Received routine be coded to minimize the amount of time spent prior to returning to the GDLC that called it.

**Parameters**

- **m** Points to a communications memory buffer (*mbuf*).
- **ext** Specifies the receive extension parameter. This is a pointer to the **dlc_io_ext** extended I/O structure for read operations.

**Return Values**

- **DLC_FUNC_OK**: Indicates that the received network *mbuf* data has been accepted.
- **DLC_FUNC_RETRY**: Indicates that the received network *mbuf* data cannot be accepted at this time. GDLC should retry this function call later. The actual retry wait period depends on the DLC in use. Excessive retries can cause a disabling of the service access point.

**Related Information**

- [read Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC](#)
- [Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview](#) in *AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.*

### XID Data Received Routine for DLC

**Purpose**

Receives an exchange identification (XID) packet each time it is coded by the kernel user and called by generic data link control (GDLC).

**Syntax**

```c
#include <sys/gdlextcb.h>

int (*dlc_open_ext.rcvx_fa)(struct mbuf *m, struct dlc_io_ext *ext);
```

**Description**

The DLC XID Data Received routine receives an XID packet each time the routine is coded by the kernel user and called by GDLC.

Each GDLC supports a subset of the data-received routines. It is performance critical that the XID Data Received routine be coded to minimize the amount of time spent prior to returning to the GDLC that called it.

**Parameters**

- **m** Points to a communication memory buffer (*mbuf*).
- **ext** Specifies the receive extension parameter. This is a pointer to the **dlc_io_ext** extended I/O structure for reads. The argument to this parameter must be in the kernel space.
Return Values

DLC_FUNC_OK
Indicates that the received XID mbuf data has been accepted.

DLC_FUNC_RETRY
Indicates that the received XID mbuf data cannot be accepted at this time. GDLC should retry this function call later. The actual retry wait period depends on the DLC in use. Excessive retries may close the link station.

Related Information

read Subroutine Extended Parameters for DLC.

Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

ioctl Operations (op) for DLC

Syntax

```c
#define DLC_ENABLE_SAP 1
#define DLC_DISABLE_SAP 2
#define DLC_START_LS 3
#define DLC_HALT_LS 4
#define DLC_TRACE 5
#define DLC_CONTACT 6
#define DLC_TEST 7
#define DLC_ALTER 8
#define DLC_QUERY_SAP 9
#define DLC_QUERY_LS 10
#define DLC_ENTER_LBUSY 11
#define DLC_EXIT_LBUSY 12
#define DLC_ENTER_SHOLD 13
#define DLC_EXIT_SHOLD 14
#define DLC_GET_EXCEP 15
#define DLC_ADD_GRP 16
#define DLC_ADD.Func_addr 17
#define DLC_DEL.Func_addr 18
#define DLC_DEL_GRP 19
#define IOCINFO /* see /usr/include/sys/ioctl.h */
```

Description

Note: If the operation's notification is returned asynchronously to the user by way of exception, application users should refer to "DLC_GET_EXCEP ioctl Operation for DLC" and kernel users should refer to "Exception Condition Routine for DLC" for more information.

Each GDLC supports a subset of ioctl subroutine operations. These ioctl operations are selectable through the fp_ioctl kernel service or the ioctl subroutine. They may be called from the process environment only.
The following ioctl command operations are supported for generic data link control (GDLC):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DLC_ADD_FUNC_ADDR</td>
<td>Adds a group or multicast receive functional address to a port. This command allows additional functional address bits to be added to the current receive functional address mask, as supported by the individual device handlers. See device handler specifications to determine which address values are supported. <strong>Note:</strong> Currently, token ring is the only local area network (LAN) protocol supporting functional addresses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_ADD_GRP</td>
<td>Adds a group or multicast receive address to a port. This command allows additional address values to be filtered in receive as supported by the individual communication device handlers. See device handler specifications to determine which address values are supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_ALTER</td>
<td>Alters link station (LS) configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_CONTACT</td>
<td>Contacts the remote LS. This ioctl operation does not complete processing before returning to the user. The DLC_CONTACT notification is returned asynchronously to the user by way of exception.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_DEL_GRP</td>
<td>Removes a group or multicast address that was previously added to a port with a DLC_ENABLE_SAP or DLC_ADD_GRP ioctl operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_DEL_FUNC_ADDR</td>
<td>Removes a group or multicast receive functional address from a port. This command removes functional address bits from the current receive functional address mask, as supported by the individual device handlers. See device handler specifications to determine which address values are supported. <strong>Note:</strong> Currently, token ring is the only local area network protocol supporting functional addresses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_DISABLE_SAP</td>
<td>Disables a service access point (SAP). This ioctl operation does not fully complete the disable SAP processing before returning to the user. The DLC_DISABLE_SAP notification is returned asynchronously to the user later by way of exception.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_ENABLE_SAP</td>
<td>Enables an SAP. This ioctl operation does not fully complete the enable SAP processing before returning to the user. The DLC_ENABLE_SAP notification is returned asynchronously to the user later by way of exception.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_ENTER_LBUSY</td>
<td>Enters local busy mode on an LS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_ENTER_SHOLD</td>
<td>Enters short hold mode on an LS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_EXIT_LBUSY</td>
<td>Exits local busy mode on an LS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_EXIT_SHOLD</td>
<td>Exits short hold mode on an LS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_GET_EXCEP</td>
<td>Returns asynchronous exception notifications to the application user. <strong>Note:</strong> This ioctl command operation is not used by the kernel user since all exception conditions are passed to the kernel user by their exception handler routine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_HALT_LS</td>
<td>Halts an LS. This ioctl operation does not complete processing before returning to the user. Notification of the ioctl operation, DLC_HALT_LS, is returned asynchronously to the user by way of exception.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_QUERY_LS</td>
<td>Queries an LS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_QUERY_SAP</td>
<td>Queries an SAP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_START_LS</td>
<td>Starts an LS. This ioctl operation does not complete processing before returning to the user. Notification of the ioctl operation, DLC_START_LS, is returned asynchronously to the user by way of exception.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_TEST</td>
<td>Tests LS connectivity. This ioctl operation does not complete processing before returning to the user. Notification of the ioctl operation, DLC_TEST completion, is returned asynchronously to the user by way of exception.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_TRACE</td>
<td>Traces LS activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOCINFO</td>
<td>Returns a structure that describes the device. Refer to the description of the /usr/include/sys/devinfo.h file. The first byte is set to an ioctype of DD_DLC. The subtype and data are defined by the individual DLC devices.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Information**

Parameter Blocks by ioctl Operation for DLC.
Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

Parameter Blocks by ioctl Operation for DLC

Description
Each command operation has a specific parameter block associated with the command pointed to by the `arg` pointer. Some parameters are sent to the generic data link control (GDLC) and others are returned.

The ioctl command operations for DLC are:

- `DLC_ADD_FUNC_ADDR` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_ADD_GRP` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_ALTER` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_CONTACT` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_DEL_FUNC_ADDR` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_DEL_GRP` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_DISABLE_SAP` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_ENABLE_SAP` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_ENTER_LBUSY` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_ENTER_SHOLD` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_EXIT_LBUSY` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_EXIT_SHOLD` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_GET_EXCEP` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_HALT_LS` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_QUERY_LS` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_QUERY_SAP` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_START_LS` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_TEST` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `DLC_TRACE` ioctl Operation for DLC
- `IOCINFO` ioctl Operation for DLC

DLC_ADD_FUNC_ADDR ioctl Operation for DLC

The `DLC_ADD_FUNC_ADDR` ioctl operation is selectable through the `fp_ioctl` kernel service or the `ioctl` subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block adds a functional address mask any time a service access point (SAP) has been enabled via `DLC_ENA_SAP` ioctl. Multiple functional address bits may be specified.

```c
struct dlc_func_addr
{
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr; /* GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t len_func_addr_mask; /* length of functional */
    /* address mask */
    uchar_t func_addr_mask[DLC_MAX_ADDR]; /* functional address */
    /* mask */
};
```
The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_sap_corr</td>
<td>Contains the generic data link control (GDLC) service access point (SAP) correlator being requested to delete a functional address from a port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>len_func_addr_mask</td>
<td>Contains the byte length of the functional address mask to be added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>func_addr_mask</td>
<td>Contains the functional address mask value to be ORed with the functional address on the adapter. See the individual DLC interface documentation to determine the length and format of this field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DLC_ADD_GRP ioctl Operation for DLC**

The **DLC_ADD_GRP** ioctl operation is selectable through the `fp_ioctl` kernel service or the `ioctl` subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block adds a group or multicast receive address:

```c
struct dlc_add_grp
{
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr;    /* GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t grp_addr_len;     /* group address length */
    uchar_t grp_addr[DLC_MAX_ADDR]; /* grp addr to be added */
};
```

The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_sap_corr</td>
<td>Contains the generic data link control (GDLC) service access point (SAP) correlator being requested to add a group or multicast address to a port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grp_addr_len</td>
<td>Contains the byte length of the group or multicast address to be added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grp_addr</td>
<td>Contains the group or multicast address value to be added.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DLC_ALTER ioctl Operation for DLC**

The **DLC_ALTER** ioctl operation is selectable through the `fp_ioctl` kernel service or the `ioctl` subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block alters a link station’s (LS) configuration parameters:

```c
#define DLC_MAX_ROUT 20 /* Maximum Size of Routing Info */

struct dlc_alter_arg
{
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr;    /* GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t gdlc_ls_corr;     /* GDLC link station correlator */
    __ulong32_t flags;            /* Alter Flags */
    __ulong32_t repoll_time;      /* New Repoll Timeout */
    __ulong32_t ack_time;         /* New Acknowledge Timeout */
    __ulong32_t inact_time;       /* New Inactivity Timeout */
    __ulong32_t force_time;       /* New Force Timeout */
    __ulong32_t maxif;            /* New Maximum I-Frame Size */
};
```

Chapter 1. Data Link Controls 31
The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_sap_corr</td>
<td>Indicates the generic data link control (GDLC) service access point (SAP) correlator of the target LS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_ls_corr</td>
<td>Indicates the GDLC LS correlator to be altered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flags</td>
<td>Specifies alter flags. The following flags are supported:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DLC_ALT_RTO Alter repoll timeout:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = Do not alter repoll timeout.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = Alter configuration with value specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alters the length of time the LS waits for a response before repolling the remote station. When specified, the repoll timeout value specified in the LS configuration is overridden by the value supplied in the repoll timeout field of the Alter command. This new value remains in effect until another value is specified or the LS is halted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DLC_ALT_AKT Alter acknowledgment timeout:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = Do not alter the acknowledgment timeout.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = Alter configuration with value specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alters the length of time the LS delays the transmission of an acknowledgment for a received I-frame. When specified, the acknowledgment timeout value specified in the LS configuration is overridden by the value supplied in the acknowledgment timeout field of the Alter command. This new value remains in effect until another value is specified or the LS is halted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DLC_ALT_ITO Alter inactivity timeout:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = Do not alter inactivity timeout.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = Alter configuration with value specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alters the maximum length of time allowed without receive link activity from the remote station. When specified, the inactivity timeout value specified in the LS configuration is overridden by the value supplied in the inactivity timeout field of the Alter command. This new value remains in effect until another value is specified or the LS is halted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DLC_ALT_FHT Alter force halt timeout:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = Do not alter force halt timeout.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = Alter configuration with value specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alters the period to wait for a normal disconnection before forcing the halt LS to occur. When specified, the force halt timeout value specified in the LS configuration is overridden by the value supplied in the force halt timeout field of the Alter command. This new value remains in effect until another value is specified or the LS is halted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| DLC_ALT_MIF | Maximum I-field length:  
0 = Do not alter maximum I-field length.  
1 = Alter configuration with value specified.  
Sets the value for the maximum length of transmit or receive data in one I-field. If received data exceeds this length, a buffer overflow indication set by GDLC in the receive extension. When specified, the maximum I-field length value specified in the LS configuration is overridden by the value supplied in the maximum I-field length specified in the `Alter` command. This new value remains in effect until another value is specified or the LS is halted. |
| DLC_ALT_XWIN | Alter transmit window:  
0 = Do not alter transmit window.  
1 = Alter configuration with value specified.  
Alters the maximum number of information frames that can be sent in one transmit burst. When specified, the transmit window count value specified in the LS configuration is overridden by the value supplied in the transmit window field of the `Alter` command. This new value remains in effect until another value is specified or the LS is halted. |
| DLC_ALT_MXR | Alter maximum repoll:  
0 = Do not alter maximum repoll.  
1 = Alter configuration with value specified.  
Alters the maximum number of retries for an acknowledged command frame, or in the case of an I-frame timeout, the number of times the nonresponding remote LS will be polled with a supervisory command frame. When specified, the maximum repoll count value specified in the LS configuration is overridden by the value supplied in the maximum repoll count field of the `Alter` command. This new value remains in effect until another value is specified or the LS is halted. |
| DLC_ALT_RTE | Alter routing:  
0 = Do not alter routing.  
1 = Alter configuration with value specified.  
Alters the route that subsequent transmit packets take when transferring data across a local area network bridge. When specified, the routing length and routing data values specified in the LS configuration are overridden by the values supplied in the routing fields of the `Alter` command. These new values remain in effect until another route is specified or the LS is halted. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>DLC_ALT_SM1</strong></td>
<td>Set primary SDLC Control mode:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = Do not alter SDLC Control mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = Set SDLC Control mode to primary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sets the local station to a primary station in NDM, waiting for a command from PU services to write an XID or TEST, or a command to contact the secondary for NRM data phase. This control can only be issued if not already in NRM, and no XID, TEST, or SNRM is in progress. This flag cannot be set if the DLC_ALT_SM2 flag is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DLC_ALT_SM2</strong></td>
<td>Set secondary SDLC Control mode:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = Do not alter SDLC Control mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = Set SDLC Control mode to secondary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sets the local station to a secondary station in NDM, waiting for XID, TEST, or SNRM from the primary station. This control can only be issued if not already in NRM, and no XID, TEST, or SNRM is in progress. This flag cannot be set if the DLC_ALT_SM1 flag is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DLC_ALT_IT1</strong></td>
<td>Set notification for Inactivity Time-Out mode:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = Do not alter Inactivity Time-Out mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = Set Inactivity Time-Out mode to notification only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inactivity does not cause the LS to be halted, but notifies the user of inactivity without termination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DLC_ALT_IT2</strong></td>
<td>Set automatic halt for Inactivity Time-Out mode:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = Do not alter Inactivity Time-Out mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = Set Inactivity Time-Out mode to automatic halt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>repoll_time</th>
<th>Provides a new value to replace the LS repoll time-out value whenever the <strong>DLC_ALT_RTO</strong> flag is set.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ack_time</td>
<td>Provides a new value to replace the LS acknowledgment time-out value whenever the <strong>DLC_ALT_AKT</strong> flag is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inact_time</td>
<td>Provides a new value to replace the LS inactivity time-out value whenever the <strong>DLC_ALT_ITO</strong> flag is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>force_time</td>
<td>Provides a new value to replace the LS force halt time-out value whenever the <strong>DLC_ALT_FHT</strong> flag is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxif</td>
<td>Provides a new value to replace the LS-started result value for the maximum I-field size whenever the <strong>DLC_ALT_MIF</strong> flag is set. GDLC does not allow this value to exceed the capacity of the receive buffer and only increases the internal value to the allowed maximum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xmit_wind</td>
<td>Provides a new value to replace the LS transmit window count value whenever the <strong>DLC_ALT_XWIN</strong> flag is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max_repoll</td>
<td>Provides the new value that is to replace the LS maximum repoll count value whenever the <strong>DLC_ALT_MXR</strong> flag is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routing_len</td>
<td>Provides a new value to replace the LS routing field length whenever the <strong>DLC_ALT_RTE</strong> flag is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>routing</td>
<td>Provides a new value to replace the LS routing data whenever the <strong>DLC_ALT_RTE</strong> flag is set.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Field | Description
--- | ---
result_flags | Returns the following result indicators at the completion of the alter operation, depending on the command:

**DLC_MSS_RES**
Indicates mode set secondary. Set to 1, this bit indicates that the station mode has been set to secondary as a result of the user issuing an `Alter` (set mode secondary) command.

**DLC_MSSF_RES**
Indicates mode set secondary was unsuccessful. Set to 1, this bit indicates that the station mode has not been set to secondary as a result of the user issuing an `Alter` (set mode secondary) command. This occurs whenever an SDLC LS is already in data phase or an SDLC primary command sequence has not yet completed.

**DLC_MSP_RES**
Indicates mode set primary. Set to 1, this bit indicates that the station mode has been set to primary as a result of the user issuing an `Alter` (set mode primary) command.

**DLC_MSPF_RES**
Indicates mode set primary was unsuccessful. Set to 1, this bit indicates that the station mode has not been set to primary as a result of the user issuing an `Alter` (set mode primary) command. This occurs whenever an SDLC LS is already in data phase.

The protocol-dependent area allows additional fields to be provided by a specific protocol type. Corresponding flags may be necessary to support additional fields. This optional data area must directly follow (or append to) the end of the `dlc_alter_arg` structure.

---

## DLC_CONTACT ioctl Operation for DLC

The **DLC_CONTACT** ioctl operation is selectable through the `fp_ioctl` kernel service or the `ioctl` subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block contacts a remote station for a particular local link station (LS):

```c
struct dlc_corr_arg
{
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr; /* GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t gdlc_ls_corr; /* GDLC link station correlator */
};
```

The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_sap_corr</td>
<td>Contains the GDLC SAP correlator of the target LS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_ls_corr</td>
<td>Contains the GDLC LS correlator to be contacted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

## DLC_DEL_FUNC_ADDR ioctl Operation for DLC

The **DLC_DEL_FUNC_ADDR** ioctl operation is selectable through the `fp_ioctl` kernel service or the `ioctl` subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block deletes a previously defined functional address mask any time a service access point (SAP) has been enabled with a **DLC_ENA_SAP** ioctl. Multiple functional address bits can be specified.
struct dlc_func_addr
{
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr; /* GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t len_func_addr_mask; /* length of functional */
    /* address mask */
    uchar_t func_addr_mask[DLC_MAX_ADDR]; /*functional add. mask */
};

The fields of this ioctl operation are:

Field                  Description
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
gdlc_sap_corr          Indicates the generic data link control (GDLC) service access point (SAP) identifier being requested to delete a functional address from a port.
len_func_addr_mask     Contains the byte length of the functional address mask to be deleted.
func_addr_mask         Contains the functional address mask value to be deleted from with the functional address on the adapter. See the individual DLC interface documentation to determine the length and format of this field.

DLC_DEL_GRP ioctl Operation for DLC

The DLC_DEL_GRP ioctl operation is selectable through the fp_ioctl kernel service or the ioctl subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter removes a previously defined group or multicast address:

struct dlc_add_grp
{
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr; /*GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t grpaddr_len; /*group address length */
    uchar_t grp_addr[DLC_MAX_ADDR]; /*group address to be removed */
};

The fields of this ioctl operation are:

Field                  Description
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
gdlc_sap_corr          Indicates the generic data link control (GDLC) service access point (SAP) identifier being requested to remove a group or multicast address from a port. This field is known as the GDLC SAP Correlator field.
grp_addr_len           Contains the byte length of the group or multicast address to be removed.
grp_addr               Contains the group or multicast address to be removed.

DLC_DISABLE_SAP ioctl Operation for DLC

The DLC_DISABLE_SAP ioctl operation is selectable through the fp_ioctl kernel service or the ioctl subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block disables a service access point (SAP):
struct dlc_corr_arg {
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr;  /* GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t gdlc_ls_corr;  /* <not used for disabling a SAP> */
};

The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_sap_corr</td>
<td>Contains GDLC SAP correlator. The field indicates the GDLC SAP identifier to be disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_ls_corr</td>
<td>Contains GDLC LS correlator. The GDLC LS identifier is returned to the user as soon as resources are determined to be available. This correlator must accompany all commands associated with this LS.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DLC_ENABLE_SAP ioctl Operation for DLC

The DLC_ENABLE_SAP ioctl operation is selectable through the fp_ioctl kernel service or the ioctl subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block enables a service access point (SAP):

```c
#define DLC_MAX_NAME 20
#define DLC_MAX_GSAPS 7
#define DLC_MAX_ADDR 8
#define DLC_ESAP_NTWK 0x40000000
#define DLC_ESAP_LINK 0x20000000
#define DLC_ESAP_PHYC 0x10000000
#define DLC_ESAP_ANSW 0x08000000
#define DLC_ESAP_ADDR 0x04000000

struct dlc_esap_arg {
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr;
    __ulong32_t user_sap_corr;
    __ulong32_t len_func_addr_mask;
    uchar_t func_addr_mask[DLC_MAX_ADDR];
    __ulong32_t len_grp_addr;
    uchar_t grp_addr[DLC_MAX_ADDR];
    __ulong32_t max_ls;
    __ulong32_t flags;
    __ulong32_t len_laddr_name;
    u_char_t laddr_name[DLC_MAX_NAME];
    u_char_t num_grp_saps;
    u_char_t grp_sap[DLC_MAX_GSAPS];
    u_char_t res1[3];
    u_char_t local_sap;
};
```
The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_sap_corr</td>
<td>Specifies the generic data link control's (GDLC) SAP identifier that is returned to the user. This correlator must accompany all subsequent commands associated with this SAP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user_sap_corr</td>
<td>Specifies an identifier or correlator the user wishes to have returned on all SAP results from GDLC. It allows the user of multiple SAPs to choose a correlator to route the SAP-specific results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>len_func_addr_mask</td>
<td>Specifies the byte length of the following functional address mask. This field must be set to 0 if no functional address is required. Length values of 0 through 8 are supported.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| func_addr_mask       | Specifies the functional address mask to be ORed with the functional address on the adapter. This address mask allows packets that are destined for specified functions to be received by the local adapter. See individual DLC interface documentation to determine the format and length of this field.  
**Note:** GDLC does not distinguish whether a received packet was accepted by the adapter due to a pre-set network, group, or functional address. If the SAP address matches and the packet is otherwise valid (no protocol errors, for instance), the received packet is passed to the user. |
| len_grp_addr         | Specifies the byte length of the following group address. This field must be set to 0 (zero) if no group address is required. Length values of 0 through 8 are supported. |
| grp_addr             | Specifies the group address value to be written to the adapter. It allows packets that are destined for a specific group to be received by the local adapter.  
**Note:** Most adapters allow only one group address to be active at a time. If this field is nonzero and the adapter rejects the group address because it is already in use, the enable SAP call fails with an appropriate error code. |
<p>| max_ls               | Specifies the maximum number of link stations (LSs) allowed to operate concurrently on a particular SAP. The protocol used determines the values for this field. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flags</td>
<td>Supports the following flags of the <strong>DLC_ENABLE_SAP ioctl</strong> operation:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DLC_ESAP_NTWK</strong></td>
<td>Teleprocessing network type:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$0 = $Switched (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$1 = $Leased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DLC_ESAP_LINK</strong></td>
<td>Teleprocessing link type:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$0 = $Point to point (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$1 = $Multipoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DLC_ESAP_PHYC</strong></td>
<td>Physical network call (teleprocessing):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$0 = $Listen for incoming call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$1 = $Initiate call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DLC_ESAP_ADDR</strong></td>
<td>Local address or name indicator. Specifies whether the local address or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>name field contains an address or a name:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$0 = $Local name specified (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$1 = $Local address specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DLC_ESAP_ANSW</strong></td>
<td>Teleprocessing autocall or autoanswer:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$0 = $Manual call and answer (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$1 = $Automatic call and answer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>len_laddr_name</td>
<td>Specifies the byte length of the following local address or name. Length values of 1 through 20 are supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laddr_name</td>
<td>Contains the unique network name or address of the user local SAP as indicated by the <strong>DLC_ESAP_ADDR</strong> flag. Some protocols allow the local SAP to be identified by name (for example, Name-Discovery Services) and others by address (for example, Address Resolve Procedures). Other protocols such as Synchronous Data Link Control (SDLC) do not identify the local SAP. Check the individual DLC’s usage of this field for the protocol you are operating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num_grp_saps</td>
<td>Specifies the number of group SAPs to which the user’s local SAP responds. If no group SAPs are needed, this field must contain a 0. Up to seven group SAPs can be specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grp_sap</td>
<td>Contains the specific group SAP values to which the user local SAP responds (seven maximum).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_sap</td>
<td>Specifies the local SAP address opened. Receive packets with this LSAP value indicated in the destination SAP field are routed to the LSs opened under this particular SAP.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The protocol-specific data area allows parameters to be defined by the specific GDLC device manager, such as X.21 call-progress signals or Smartmodem call-establishment data. This optional data area must directly follow (or append to) the end of the **dlc_esap_arg** structure.
DLC_ENTER_LBUSY ioctl Operation for DLC

The DLC_ENTER_LBUSY ioctl operation is selectable through the fp_ioctl kernel service or the ioctl subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block enters local busy mode on a particular link station (LS):

```c
struct dlc_corr_arg
{
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr; /* GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t gdlc_ls_corr; /* GDLC link station correlator */
};
```

The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_sap_corr</td>
<td>Contains the GDLC SAP correlator of the target LS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_ls_corr</td>
<td>Contains the GDLC LS correlator to enter local busy mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DLC_ENTER_SHOLD ioctl Operation for DLC

The DLC_ENTER_SHOLD ioctl operation is selectable through the fp_ioctl kernel service or the ioctl subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block enters short hold mode on a particular link station (LS):

```c
struct dlc_corr_arg
{
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr; /* GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t gdlc_ls_corr; /* GDLC link station correlator */
};
```

The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_sap_corr</td>
<td>Contains the generic data link control (GDLC) service access point (SAP) correlator of the target LS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_ls_corr</td>
<td>Contains the GDLC LS correlator to enter short hold mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DLC_EXIT_LBUSY ioctl Operation for DLC

The DLC_EXIT_LBUSY ioctl operation is selectable through the fp_ioctl kernel service or the ioctl subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block exits local busy mode on a particular link station (LS):

```c
struct dlc_corr_arg
{
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr; /* GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t gdlc_ls_corr; /* GDLC link station correlator */
};
```
The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_sap_corr</td>
<td>Contains the GDLC SAP correlator of the target LS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_ls_corr</td>
<td>Contains the GDLC LS correlator to exit local busy mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DLC_EXIT_SHOLD ioctl Operation for DLC**

The **DLC_EXIT_SHOLD** ioctl operation is selectable through the `fp_ioctl` kernel service or the `ioctl` subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block exits short hold mode on a particular link station (LS):

```c
struct dlc_corr_arg
{
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr; /* GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t gdlc_ls_corr; /* GDLC link station correlator */
};
```

The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_sap_corr</td>
<td>Contains the GDLC SAP correlator of the target LS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_ls_corr</td>
<td>Contains the GDLC LS correlator to exit short hold mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DLC_GET_EXCEP ioctl Operation for DLC**

The **DLC_GET_EXCEP** ioctl operation is selectable through the `fp_ioctl` kernel service or the `ioctl` subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block returns asynchronous exception notifications to the application user:

```c
struct dlc_getx_arg
{
    __ulong32_t user_sap_corr; /* user SAP corr - RETURNED */
    __ulong32_t user_ls_corr; /* user ls corr - RETURNED */
    __ulong32_t result_ind; /* the flags identifying the type */
    /* of excep*/
    int result_code; /* the manner of excep */
    u_char_t result_ext[DLC_MAX_EXT]; /* excep specific ext */
};
```

The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>user_sap_corr</td>
<td>Indicates the user service access point (SAP) correlator for this exception.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user_ls_corr</td>
<td>Indicates the user link station (LS) correlator for this exception.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result_ind</td>
<td>Result indicators:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_TEST_RES</td>
<td>Test complete: a nonextended result. Set to 1, this bit indicates that the link test has completed as indicated in the result code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_SAPE_RES</td>
<td>SAP enables: an extended result. Set to 1, this bit indicates that the SAP is active and ready for LSs to be started. See <a href="#">DLC_SAPE_RES</a> operation for the format of the extension area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_SAPD_RES</td>
<td>SAP disabled: a nonextended result. Set to 1, this bit indicates that the SAP has been terminated as indicated in the result code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_STAS_RES</td>
<td>Link station started: an extended result. Set to 1, this bit indicates that the link station is connected to the remote station in asynchronous or normal disconnected mode. GDLC is waiting for link receive data from the device driver or additional commands from the user such as the <a href="#">DLC_CONTACT</a> ioctl operation. See the <a href="#">DLC_STAS_RES</a> operation for the format of the extension area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_STAH_RES</td>
<td>Link station halted: a nonextended result. Set to 1, this bit indicates that the LS has terminated due to a <a href="#">DLC_HALT_LS</a> ioctl operation from the user, a remote discontact, or an error condition indicated in the result code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_DIAL_RES</td>
<td>Dial the phone: a nonextended result. Set to 1, this bit indicates that the user can now manually dial an outgoing call to the remote station.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_IWOT_RES</td>
<td>Inactivity without termination: a nonextended result. Set to 1, this bit indicates that the LS protocol activity from the remote station has terminated for the length of time specified in the configuration (receive inactivity timeout). The local station remains active and notifies the user if the remote station begins to respond. Additional notifications of inactivity without termination are suppressed until the inactivity condition clears up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_IEND_RES</td>
<td>Inactivity ended: a nonextended result. Set to 1, this bit indicates that the LS protocol activity from the remote station has restarted after a condition of inactivity without termination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_CONT_RES</td>
<td>Contacted: a nonextended result. Set to 1, this bit indicates that GDLC has either received a Set Mode, or has received a positive response to a Set Mode initiated by the local LS. GDLC is now able to send and receive normal sequenced data on this LS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_RADD_RES</td>
<td>Remote address/name change: an extended result. Set to 1, this bit indicates that the remote LS address (or name) has been changed from the previous value. This can occur on synchronous data link control (SDLC) links when negotiating a point-to-point connection, for example. See the <a href="#">DLC_RADD_RES</a> operation for the format of the extension area.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Field | Description
--- | ---
result_code | Indicates the result code. The following values specify the result codes for GDLC. Negative return codes that are even indicate that the error condition can be remedied by restarting the LS returning the error. Return codes that are odd indicate that the error is catastrophic, and, at the minimum, the SAP must be restarted. Additional error data may be obtained from the GDLC error log and link trace entries.

DLC_SUCCESS | The result indicated was successful.

DLC_PROT_ERR | Protocol error.

DLC_BAD_DATA | A bad data compare on a TEST.

DLC_NO_RBUF | No remote buffering on test.

DLC_RDISC | Remote initiated discontact.

DLC_DISC_TO | Discontact abort timeout.

DLC_INACT_TO | Inactivity timeout.

DLC_MSESS_RE | Mid session reset.

DLC_NO_FIND | Cannot find the remote name.

DLC_INV_RNAME | Invalid remote name.

DLC_SESS_LIM | Session limit exceeded.

DLC_LST_IN_PRGS | Listen already in progress.

DLC_LS_NT_COND | LS unusual network condition.

DLC_LS_ROUT | Link station resource outage.

DLC_REMOTE_BUSY | Remote station found, but busy.

DLC_REMOTE_CONN | Specified remote is already connected.

DLC_NAME_IN_USE | Local name already in use.

DLC_INV_LNAME | Invalid local name.
result_ext  Indicates result extension. Several results carry extension areas to provide additional information about them. The user must provide a full-sized area for each result requested since there is no way to tell if the next result is extended or nonextended. The extended result areas are described by type below.

**DLC_SAPE_RES** SAP Enabled Result Extension

The following parameter block enables a service access point (SAP) result extension:

```c
struct dlc_sape_res
{
    __ulong32_t  max_net_send; /* maximum write network data length */
    __ulong32_t  lport_addr_len; /* local port network address length */
    u_char_t     lport_addr[DLC_MAX_ADDR]; /* the local port address */
};
```

The fields of this extension are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>max_net_send</td>
<td>Indicates the maximum number of bytes that the user can write for each packet when writing network data. This is generally based on a communications mbuf/mbufs page cluster size, but is not necessarily limited to a single mbuf structure since mbuf clusters can be linked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lport_addr_len</td>
<td>Indicates the byte length of the local port network address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lport_addr</td>
<td>Indicates the hexadecimal value of the local port network address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DLC_STAS_RES** Link Station Started Result Extension

The following parameter block starts a link station (LS) result extension:

```c
struct dlc_stas_res
{
    ulong32_t  maxif;             /* max size of the data sent */
    /* on a write */
    ulong32_t  rport_addr_len;    /* remote port network address */
    /* length */
    u_char_t   rport_addr[DLC_MAX_ADDR]; /* remote port address */
    u_char_t   rname_len;         /* remote network name length */
    u_char_t   rname[DLC_MAX_NAME]; /* remote network name */
    uchar_t    res[3];           /* reserved */
};
```
uchar_t rsap; /* remote SAP */
ulong32_t max_data_off; /* the maximum data offsets for sends*/
};

The fields of this extension are:

Field | Description
--- | ---
maxif | Contains the maximum byte size allowable for user data. This value is derived from the value supplied by the user at the start link station (`DLC_START_LS`) and the actual number of bytes that can be handled by the GDLC and device handler on a single transmit or receive. Generally this value is less than the size of a communications `mbuf` page cluster. However, some communications devices may be able to link page clusters together, so the maximum I-field receivable may exceed the length of a single `mbuf` cluster. The returned value never exceeds the value supplied by the user, but may be smaller if buffering is not large enough to hold the specified value.

rport_addr_len | Contains the byte length of the remote port network address.
rport_addr | Contains the hexadecimal value of the remote port network address.
rname_len | Contains the byte length of the remote port network name. This is returned only when name discovery procedures are used to locate the remote station. Otherwise this field is set to 0 (zero). Network names can be 1 to 20 characters in length.
rname | Contains the name used by the remote SAP. This field is valid only if name-discovery procedures were used to locate the remote station.
rsap | Contains the hexadecimal value of the remote SAP address.
max_data_off | Contains the write data offset in bytes of a communications `mbuf` cluster where transmit data must minimally begin. This allows ample room for the DLC and MAC headers to be inserted if needed. Some DLCs may be able to prepend additional `mbuf` clusters for their headers, and in this case will set this field to 0 (zero).

This field is only valid for kernel users that pass in a communications `mbuf` structure on write operations.

**Note:** To align the data moves to a particular byte boundary, the kernel user may wish to choose a value larger than the minimum value returned.

**DLC_STAH_RES Link Station Halted Result Extension**

The following parameter block halts the link station (LS) result extension:

```c
struct dlc_stah_res
{
    ulong32_t conf_ls_corr; /* conflicting link station corr */
};
```
The field of this extension is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conf_ls_corr</td>
<td>Indicates conflicting link station correlator. Contains the user's link station identifier that already has the specified remote station attached.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This extension is valid only if the result code value indicates -936 (specified remote is already connected).

**DLC_RADD_RES Remote Address/Name Change Result Extension**

The following parameter block changes the remote address or name of the result extension:

```c
struct dlc_radd_res {
    __ulong32_t rname_len; /* remote network name/addr length */
    u_char rname[DLC_MAX_NAME];/* remote network name/addr */
};
```

The fields of this extension are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rname_len</td>
<td>Indicates the remote network address or name length. Contains the byte length of the updated remote SAP's network address or name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rname</td>
<td>Contains the updated address or name being used by the remote SAP.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DLC_HALT_LS ioctl Operation for DLC**

The `DLC_HALT_LS` ioctl operation is selectable through the `fp_ioctl` kernel service or the `ioctl` subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block halts a `link station` (LS):

```c
struct dlc_corr_arg {
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr; /* GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t gdlc_ls_corr; /* GDLC link station correlator */
};
```

The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_sap_corr</td>
<td>Contains the GDLC SAP correlator: The GDLC SAP identifier of the target LS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_ls_corr</td>
<td>Contains the GDLC LS correlator: The GDLC LS identifier to be halted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DLC_QUERY_LS ioctl Operation for DLC**

The `DLC_QUERY_LS` ioctl operation is selectable through the `fp_ioctl` kernel service or the `ioctl` subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block queries statistics of a particular link station (LS):
struct dlc_qls_arg
{
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr;  /* GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t gdlc_ls_corr;   /* GDLC ls correlator */
    __ulong32_t user_sap_corr; /* user's SAP correlator - RETURNED */
    __ulong32_t user_ls_corr;  /* user's link station correlator - RETURNED */
    u_char_t ls_diag[DLC_MAX_DIAG]; /* the char name of the ls */
    __ulong32_t ls_state;      /* current ls state */
    __ulong32_t ls_sub_state;  /* further clarification of state */
    struct dlc_ls_counters counters;
    __ulong32_t protodd_len;   /* protocol dependent data byte length*/
};

The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_sap_corr</td>
<td>Specifies the generic data link control (GDLC) service access point (SAP) correlator of the target LS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_ls_corr</td>
<td>Specifies the GDLC LS correlator to be queried.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user_sap_corr</td>
<td>Specifies the user SAP correlator returned for routing purposes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user_ls_corr</td>
<td>Specifies the user LS correlator, that is the user LS identifier returned for routing purposes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ls_diag</td>
<td>Contains the link station (LS) diagnostic tag. Indicates the ASCII character string tag passed to GDLC at the <code>DLC_START_LS</code> ioctl operation to identify the station being queried. For example, SNA services puts the attachment profile name in this field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ls_state</td>
<td>Contains the current state of this LS:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DLC_OPENING</strong>  Indicates the SAP or link station is in the process of opening.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DLC_OPENED</strong>   Indicates the SAP or link station has been opened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DLC_CLOSING</strong>  Indicates the SAP or link station is the process of closing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DLC_INACTIVE</strong> Indicates the link station is currently inactive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contains the current substate of this LS. Several indicators may be active concurrently.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ls_sub_state</td>
<td><strong>DLC_CALLING</strong>  Indicates the link station is calling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DLC_LISTENING</strong> Indicates the link station is listening.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DLC_CONTACTED</strong> Indicates the link station is contacted into sequenced data mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DLC_LOCAL_BUSY</strong> Indicates the local link station is currently busy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DLC_REMOTE_BUSY</strong> Indicates the remote link station is currently busy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Field Description
counters Contains link station reliability/availability/serviceability counters. These 14 reliability/availability/serviceability counters are shown as an example only. Each GDLC device manager provides as many of these counters as necessary to diagnose specific network problems for its protocol type.

test_cmds_sent Specifies the number of test commands sent.
test_cmds_fail Specifies the number of test commands failed.
test_cmds_rec Specifies the number of test commands received.
data_pkt_sent Specifies the number of sequenced data packets sent.
data_pkt_resent Specifies the number of sequenced data packets resent.
max_cont_resent Specifies the maximum number of contiguous resendings.
data_pkt_rec Indicates data packets received.
inv_pkt_rec Specifies the number of invalid packets received.
adp_rec_err Specifies the number of data-detected receive errors.
adp_send_err Specifies the number of data-detected transmit errors.
rec_inact_to Specifies the number of received inactivity timeouts.

The protocol-dependent data contains any additional statistics that a particular GDLC device manager might provide. See the individual GDLC specifications for information on the specific fields returned. This optional data area must directly follow (or append to) the end of the dlc_qls_arg structure.
The **DLC_QUERY_SAP** ioctl operation is selectable through the `fp_ioctl` kernel service or the `ioctl` subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block queries statistics of a particular service access point (SAP):

```c
#define DLC_MAX_DIAG 16 /* the max string of chars in the */
/* diag name */

struct dlc_qsap_arg
{
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr; /* GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t user_sap_corr; /* user SAP correlator (returned) */
    __ulong32_t sap_state; /* state of the SAP, returned by kernel */
    uchar_t dev[DLC_MAX_DIAG]; /* the returned device handler's */
    /* device name */
    __ulong32_t devdd_len; /* device driver dependent data */
    /* byte length */
};
```

The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_sap_corr</td>
<td>Contains the generic data link control (GDLC) SAP correlator to be queried.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user_sap_corr</td>
<td>Contains the user SAP correlator returned for routing purposes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sap_state</td>
<td>Contains the current SAP state:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DLC_OPENING</strong> Indicates the SAP or link station is in the process of opening.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DLC_OPENED</strong> Indicates the SAP or link station has been opened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DLC_CLOSING</strong> Indicates the SAP or link station is the process of closing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dev</td>
<td>Contains the <code>/dev</code> directory name of the communications I/O device handler being used by this SAP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devdd_len</td>
<td>Contains the byte length of the expected device driver statistics that will be appended to the <code>dlc_qsap_arg</code> structure.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The device driver-dependent data contains the device statistics of the attached network device handler. This is generally the query device statistics (reliability/availability/serviceability log area) returned from an ioctl operation issued to the device handler by the Data Link Control (DLC). See the individual GDLC device manager specifications, discussed in the [Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview](#) for information on the particular fields returned.

The optional data area must directly follow or append to the end of the `dlc_qsap_arg` structure.
### DLC_START_LS ioctl Operation for DLC

The **DLC_START_LS** ioctl operation is selectable through the `fp_ioctl` kernel service or the `ioctl` subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block starts a **link station** (LS) on a particular SAP as a caller or listener:

```c
#define DLC_MAX_DIAG 16 /* the maximum string of chars */
/* in the diag name */
struct dlc_sls_arg
{
    __ulong32_t gdlc_ls_corr; /* GDLC User link station correlator */
    u_char_t ls_diag[DLC_MAX_DIAG]; /* the char name of the ls */
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr; /* GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t user_ls_corr; /* User's SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t flags; /* Start Link Station flags */
    __ulong32_t trace_chan; /* Trace Channel (rc of trcstart)*/
    __ulong32_t len_raddr_name; /* Length of the remote name/addr*/
    u_char_t raddr_name[DLC_MAX_NAME]; /* The Remote addr/name */
    __ulong32_t maxif; /* Maximum number of bytes in an */
    /* I-field */
    __ulong32_t rcv_wind; /* Maximum size of receive window */
    __ulong32_t xmit_wind; /* Maximum size of transmit window */
    u_char_t rsap; /* Remote SAP value */
    u_char_t rsap_low; /* Remote SAP low range value */
    u_char_t rsap_high; /* Remote SAP high range value */
    u_char_t res1; /* Reserved */
    __ulong32_t max_repoll; /* Maximum Repoll count */
    __ulong32_t repoll_time; /* Repoll timeout value */
    __ulong32_t ack_time; /* Time to delay trans of an ack */
    __ulong32_t inact_time; /* Time before inactivity times out */
    __ulong32_t force_time; /* Time before a forced disconnect */
};
```

The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>gdlc_ls_corr</code></td>
<td>Contains GDLC LS correlator. The GDLC LS identifier returned to the user as soon as resources are determined to be available. This correlator must accompany all commands associated with this LS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ls_diag</code></td>
<td>Contains LS diagnostic tag. Any ASCII 1 to 16-character name written to GDLC trace, error log, and status entries for LS identification. (The end-of-name delimiter is the AIX null character.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>gdlc_sap_corr</code></td>
<td>Contains GDLC LS correlator. Specifies the SAP with which to associate this link station. This field must contain the same correlator value passed to the user in the <code>gdlc_sap_corr</code> field by GDLC when the SAP was enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>user_ls_corr</code></td>
<td>Contains user LS correlator. Specifies an identifier or correlator that the user wishes to have returned on all LS results and data from GDLC. It allows the user of multiple link stations to route the station-specific results based on a correlator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flags</td>
<td>Contains common LS flags. The following flags are supported:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_TRCO</td>
<td>Trace control on:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_TRCL</td>
<td>Trace control long:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_SLS_STAT</td>
<td>Station type for SDLC:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_SLS_NEGO</td>
<td>Negotiate station type for SDLC:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_SLS_HOLD</td>
<td>Hold link on inactivity:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_SLS_LSVCC</td>
<td>LS virtual call:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC_SLS_ADDR</td>
<td>Address indicator:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trace_chan</td>
<td>Specifies the channel number obtained from the trcstart subroutine. This field is valid only if the DLC_TRCO indicator is set active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>len_raddr_name</td>
<td>Specifies the byte length of the remote address or name. This field must be set to 0 if no remote address or name is required to start the LS. Length values of 0 through 20 are supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raddr_name</td>
<td>Contains the unique network address of the remote node if the DLC_SLS_ADDR indicator is set active. Contains the unique network name of the remote node if the DLC_SLS_ADDR indicator is reset. Addresses are entered in hexadecimal notation, and names are entered in character notation. This field is only valid if the previous length field is nonzero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxif</td>
<td>Specifies the maximum number of I-field bytes that can be in one packet. This value is reduced by GDLC if the device handler buffer sizes are too small to hold the maximum I-field specified here. The resultant size is returned from GDLC when the link station has been started.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rcv_wind</td>
<td>The receive window specifies the maximum number of sequentially numbered receive I-frames the local station can accept before sending an acknowledgment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Field | Description
---|---
xmit_wind | Specifies the transmit window and the maximum number of sequentially numbered transmitted I-frames that can be outstanding at any time.
rsap | Specifies the remote SAP address being called. This field is valid only if the DLC_SLS_LSVC indicator or the DLC_SLS_ADDR indicator is set active.
rsap_low | Specifies the lowest value in the range of remote SAP address values that the local SAP responds to when listening for a remote-initiated attachment. This value cannot be the null SAP (0x00) or the discovery SAP (0xFC), and must have the low-order bit set to 0 (B'nnnnnnn0') to indicate an individual address.
rsap_high | Specifies the highest value in the range of remote SAP address values that the local SAP responds to, when listening for a remote-initiated attachment. This value cannot be the null SAP (0x00) or the discovery SAP (0xFC), and must have the low-order bit set to 0 (B'nnnnnnn0') to indicate an individual address.
max_repoll | Specifies the maximum number of retries for an unacknowledged command frame, or in the case of an I-frame timeout, the number of times the nonresponding remote link station is polled with a supervisory command frame.
repoll_time | Contains the timeout value (in increments defined by the specific GDLC) used to specify the amount of time allowed prior to retransmitting an unacknowledged command frame.
ack_time | Contains the timeout value (in increments defined by the specific GDLC) used to specify the amount of time to delay the transmission of an acknowledgment for a received I-frame.
inact_time | Contains the timeout value (in increments of 1 second) used to specify the maximum amount of time allowed before receive inactivity returns an error.
force_time | Contains the timeout value (in increments of 1 second) specifying the period to wait for a normal disconnection. Once the timeout occurs, the disconnection is forced and the link station is halted.

The protocol-specific data area allows parameters to be defined by a specific GDLC device manager, such as Token-Ring dynamic window increment or SDLC primary slow poll. This optional data area must directly follow (or append to) the end of the dlc_sls_arg structure.

**DLC_TEST ioctl Operation for DLC**

The DLC_TEST ioctl operation is selectable through the fp_ioctl kernel service or the ioctl subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block tests the link to a remote for a particular local link station (LS):

```c
struct dlc_corr_arg {
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr; /* GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t gdlc_ls_corr; /* GDLC link station correlator */
};
```

The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_sap_corr</td>
<td>Indicates the GDLC SAP correlator of the target LS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_ls_corr</td>
<td>Indicates the GDLC LS correlator to be tested.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**DLC TRACE ioctl Operation for DLC**

The **DLC TRACE** ioctl operation is selectable through the *fp_ioctl* kernel service or the *ioctl* subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

The following parameter block traces link station (LS) activity for short or long activities:

```c
struct dlc_trace_arg
{
    __ulong32_t gdlc_sap_corr; /* GDLC SAP correlator */
    __ulong32_t gdlc_ls_corr; /* GDLC link station correlator */
    __ulong32_t trace_chan; /* Trace Channel (rc of trcstart) */
    __ulong32_t flags; /* Trace Flags */
};
```

The fields of this ioctl operation are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_sap_corr</td>
<td>Contains the GDLC SAP correlator. The correlator returned by GDLC when the SAP was enabled by the user. This correlator identifies the user SAP to the GDLC protocol process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gdlc_ls_corr</td>
<td>Contains the GDLC LS correlator. The correlator returned by GDLC when the LS was started by the user. This correlator identifies the user LS to the GDLC protocol process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trace_chan</td>
<td>Specifies the trace channel number obtained from the <em>trcstart</em> subroutine. This field is only valid if the <strong>DLC TRCO</strong> indicator is set active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flags</td>
<td>Specifies trace flags. The following flags are supported:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DLC_TRCO</strong> Trace control on:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = Disable link trace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = Enable link trace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DLC_TRCL</strong> Trace control long:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 = Link trace entries are short (80 bytes).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 = Link trace entries are long (full packet).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IOCINFO ioctl Operation for DLC**

This operation returns a structure that describes the device. The first byte is set to an ioctype of **DD_DLC**. The subtype and data are defined by the individual DLC devices. See the `/usr/include/sys/devinfo.h` file for details.

The **IOCINFO** ioctl operation is selectable through the *fp_ioctl* kernel service or the *ioctl* subroutine. It can be called from the process environment only.

**Related Information**

- [Generic Data Link Control (GDLC) Environment Overview](#) in *AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts*. 
Chapter 2. Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI)

DL_ATTACH_REQ Primitive

Purpose
Requests that the data link service (DLS) provider associate a physical point of attachment (PPA) with a stream.

Structure
The message consists of one MPROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_ppa;
} dl_attach_req_t;
```

This structure is defined in `/usr/include/sys/dlpi.h`.

Description
The DL_ATTACH_REQ primitive requests that the DLS provider associate a PPA with a stream. The DL_ATTACH_REQ primitive is needed for style 2 DLS providers to identify the physical medium over which communication is to transpire.

Parameters

- `dl_primitive`: Specifies the DL_ATTACH_REQ message.
- `dl_ppa`: Specifies the identifier of the PPA to be associated with the stream. The dlpi driver is implemented a style 2 provider

The value of the `dl_ppa` parameter must include identification of the communication medium. For media that multiplex multiple channels over a single physical medium, this identifier should also specify a specific communication channel (where each channel on a physical medium is associated with a separate PPA).

**Note:** Because of the provider-specific nature of this value, DLS user software that is to be protocol independent should avoid hard-coding the PPA identifier. The DLS user should retrieve the necessary PPA identifier from some other entity (such as a management entity) and insert it without inspection into the DL_ATTACH_REQ primitive.

States

- **Valid**: The primitive is valid in the DL_UNATTACHED state.
- **New**: The resulting state is DL_ATTACH_PENDING.

Acknowledgments

- **Successful**: The DL_OK_ACK primitive is sent to the DLS user resulting in the DL_UNBOUND state.
- **Unsuccessful**: The DL_ERROR_ACK primitive is returned and the resulting state is unchanged.
Error Codes

DL_ACCESS Indicates the DLS user does not have proper permission to use the requested PPA.
DL_BADPPA Indicates the specified PPA is invalid.
DL_OUTSTATE Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state.
DL_SYSERR Indicates a system error occurred. The system error is indicated in the DL_ERROR_ACK primitive.

Related Information

The DL_BIND_REQ primitive, DL_OK_ACK primitive, DL_ERROR_ACK primitive.

DL_BIND_ACK Primitive

Purpose

Reports the successful bind of a data link service access point (DLSAP) to a stream.

Structure

The message consists of one M_PCPROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

typedef struct
{
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_sap;
    ulong dl_addr_length;
    ulong dl_addr_offset;
    ulong dl_max_conind;
    ulong dl_xidtest_flg;
} dl_bind_ack_t;

This structure is defined in /usr/include/sys/dlpi.h.

Description

The DL_BIND_ACK primitive reports the successful bind of a DLSAP to a stream and returns the bound DLSAP address to the data link service (DLS) user. This primitive is generated in response to a DL_BIND_REQ primitive.

Parameters

dl_primitive Specifies the DL_BIND_ACK primitive.
dl_sap Specifies the DLSAP address information associated with the bound DLSAP. It corresponds to the dl_sap parameter of the associated DL_BIND_REQ primitive, which contains part or all of the DLSAP address. For the portion of the DLSAP address conveyed in the DL_BIND_REQ primitive, this parameter contains the corresponding portion of the address for the DLSAP that was actually bound.
dl_addr_length Specifies the length of the complete DLSAP address that was bound to the Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI) stream. The bound DLSAP is chosen according to the guidelines presented under the description of the DL_BIND_REQ primitive.
dl_addr_offset Specifies where the DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PCPROTO block.
dl_max_conind  Specifies whether a DL_CODLS stream will allow incoming connection indications (DL_CONNECT_IND). If the value is zero, the stream cannot accept any DL_CONNECT_IND messages; the stream will only accept DL_CONNECT_REQ. If the value is greater than zero, then this stream is a listening stream, and indicates how many DL_CONNECT_IND’s can be pending at one time.

dl_xidtest_flg  Specifies the XID and test responses supported by the provider. Valid values are:

0  The DLS user will be handling all XID and TEST traffic.

DL_AUTO_XID  Automatically handles XID responses.

DL_AUTO_TEST  Automatically handles test responses.

DL_AUTO_XID|DL_AUTO_TEST  Automatically handles both XID and TEST responses.

States

Valid  The primitive is valid in the DL_BIND_PENDING state.
New  The resulting state is DL_IDLE.

Related Information
The DL_BIND_REQ primitive.

DL_BIND_REQ Primitive

Purpose
Requests that the data link service (DLS) provider bind a data link service access point (DLSAP) to a stream.

Structure
The message consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_sap;
    ulong dl_max_conind;
    ushort dl_service_mode;
    ushort dl_conn_mgmt;
    ulong dl_xidtest_flg;
} dl_bind_req_t;
```

This structure is defined in /usr/include/sys/dlpi.h.

Description
A stream is active when the DLS provider can transmit and receive protocol data units destined to or originating from the stream. The physical point of attachment (PPA) associated with each stream must be initialized when the DL_BIND_REQ primitive has been processed. The PPA is initialized when the DL_BIND_ACK primitive is received. If the PPA cannot be initialized, the DL_BIND_REQ primitive fails.
Parameters

**dl_primitive**

Specifies the DL_BIND_REQ primitive. Identifies the DLSAP to be bound to the Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI) stream. This parameter can contain either the full DLSAP address or a portion of the address sufficient to uniquely identify the DLSAP. The DL_BIND_ACK primitive returns the full address of the bound DLSAP. The dl_sap parameter is a ulong containing and ethertype for DL_ETHER, or a single byte SAP for 802.2 networks.

The DLS provider adheres to the following rules when it binds a DLSAP address:

- The DLS provider must define and manage its DLSAP address space.
- The DLS provider allows the same DLSAP to be bound to multiple streams.

The DLS provider may not be able to bind the specified DLSAP address for the following reasons:

- The DLS provider statically associated a specific DLSAP with each stream. The value of the dl_sap parameter is ignored by the DLS provider and the DL_BIND_ACK primitive returns the DLSAP address that is already associated with the stream.

**dl_sap**

Identifies the DLSAP to be bound to the Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI) stream. This parameter can contain either the full DLSAP address or a portion of the address sufficient to uniquely identify the DLSAP. The DL_BIND_ACK primitive returns the full address of the bound DLSAP. The dl_sap parameter is a ulong containing and ethertype for DL_ETHER, or a single byte SAP for 802.2 networks.

The DLS provider may not be able to bind the specified DLSAP address for the following reasons:

- The DLS provider statically associated a specific DLSAP with each stream. The value of the dl_sap parameter is ignored by the DLS provider and the DL_BIND_ACK primitive returns the DLSAP address that is already associated with the stream.

**Note:** Because of the provider-specific nature of the DLSAP address, protocol-independent DLS user software should not have this value hard-coded. The DLS user should retrieve the necessary DLSAP address from the appropriate header file for that protocol and insert it without inspection into the DL_BIND_REQ primitive.

**dl_max_conind**

Specifies the maximum number of outstanding DL_CONNECT_IND primitives allowed on the DLPI stream. This field controls whether a connection-oriented stream will accept incoming connection indications. This parameter can have one of the following values:

- 0: The stream cannot accept any DL_CONNECT_IND primitives.
- >0: The DLS user accepts the specified number of DL_CONNECT_IND primitives before having to respond with a DL_CONNECT_RES or DL_DISCONNECT_REQ primitive.

The DLS provider may not be able to support the value supplied in the dl_max_conind parameter for the following reasons:

- If the provider cannot support the specified number of outstanding connect indications, it should set the value down to a number it can support.
- Only one stream that is bound to the indicated DLSAP can have an allowed number of maximum outstanding connect indications greater than 0. If a DL_BIND_REQ primitive specifies a value greater than 0, but another stream has already bound itself to the DLSAP with a value greater than 0, the request fails. The DLS provider then sets the dl_errno parameter of the DL_ERROR_ACK primitive to a value of DL_BOUND.
- A connection cannot be accepted on a stream bound with a dl_max_conind greater than zero. No other streams in which the value of the dl_max_conind parameter is greater than 0 can be bound to the same DLSAP. This restriction prevents more than one stream bound to the same DLSAP from receiving connect indications and accepting connections.
  - A DLS user should always be able to request a dl_max_conind parameter value of 0, since this indicates to the DLS provider that the stream will only be used to originate connect requests.
  - A stream in which the dl_max_conind parameter has a negotiated value greater than 0 cannot originate connect requests.

**Note:** This field is ignored in connectionless-mode service.
**dl_service_mode**

Specifies the following modes of service for this stream:

**DL_CODLS**

Selects the connection-oriented only mode. The connection primitives will be accepted. In addition, an arbitrary number of streams may bind to the same `dl_sap` on the same interface, as long as `dl_max_conind` is zero. No incoming datagram traffic will be sent up this stream. Such frames will either be routed to a `DL_CLDLS` stream, or silently discarded.

**DL_CLDLS**

Selects the connectionless only mode. The connection primitives will not be accepted. This mode selects exclusive control of connectionless traffic. All datagrams (DL_UNITDATA_IND) from any remote station addressed to this `dl_sap` will be received on this stream, even if another stream is currently connected on the same `dl_sap`. Only one stream per interface may bind `DL_CLDS`.

**DL_CLDLS|DL_CODLS**

Selects the connection-oriented service augmented with connectionless traffic. An arbitrary number of streams may bind to the same `dl_sap` on the same interface. This mode is mutually exclusive with `DL_CLDLS`.

If the DLS provider does not support the requested service mode, a `DL_ERROR_ACK` primitive is generated. This primitive conveys a value of `DL_UNSUPPORTED`.

**dl_conn_mgmt**

This field is ignored.

**dl_xidtest_flg**

Indicates to the DLS provider that XID or test responses for this stream are to be automatically generated by the DLS provider. The `xidtest_flg` parameter contains a bit mask that can specify either, both, or neither of the following values:

**DL_AUTO_XID**

Indicates to the DLS provider that automatic responses to XID commands are to be generated.

**DL_AUTO_TEST**

Indicates to the DLS provider that automatic responses to test commands are to be generated.

**DL_AUTO_XID|DL_AUTO_TEST**

Indicates to the DLS provider that automatic responses to both XID commands and test commands are to be generated.

The DLS provider supports automatic handling of XID and test responses. If an automatic XID or test response has been requested, the DLS provider does not generate `DL_XID_IND` or `DL_TEST_IND` primitives. Therefore, if the provider receives an XID request (`DL_XID_REQ`) or test request (`DL_TEST_REQ`) from the DLS user, the DLS provider returns a `DL_ERROR_ACK` primitive, specifying a `DL_XIDAUTO` or `DL_TESTAUTO` error code, respectively.

If no value is specified in the `dl_xidtest_flg` parameter, the DLS provider does not automatically generate XID and test responses.

The value informs the DLS provider that the DLS user will be handling all XID and TEST traffic. A nonzero value indicates the DLS provider is responsible for either XID or TEST traffic or both. If the driver handles XID or TEST, the DLS user will not receive any incoming XID or TEST frames, nor be allowed to send them.

**States**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Valid</th>
<th>The primitive is valid in the <code>DL_UNBOUND</code> state.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New</td>
<td>The resulting state is <code>DL_BIND_PENDING</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Acknowledgments

Successful  The **DL_BIND_ACK** primitive is sent to the DLS user. The resulting state is **DL_IDLE**.
Unsuccessful  The **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive is returned. The resulting state is unchanged.

Error Codes

**DL_ACCESS** Indicates the DLS user does not have proper permission to use the requested DLSAP address.
**DL_BADADDR** Indicates the DLSAP address information is invalid or is in an incorrect format.
**DL_BOUND** Indicates the DLS user attempted to bind a second stream to a DLSAP with a `dl_max_conind` parameter value greater than 0, or the DLS user attempted to bind a second connection management stream to the PPA.
**DL_INITFAILED** Indicates the automatic initialization of the PPA failed.
**DL_NOADDR** Indicates the DLS provider cannot allocate a DLSAP address for this stream.
**DL_NOAUTO** Indicates automatic handling of XID and test responses is not supported.
**DL_NOTINIT** Indicates the PPA was not initialized prior to this request.
**DL_NOTESTAUTO** Indicates automatic handling of test responses is not supported.
**DL_NOXIDAUTO** Indicates automatic handling of XID responses is not supported.
**DL_OUTSTATE** Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state.
**DL_SYSERR** Indicates a system error occurred. The system error is indicated in the **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive.
**DL_UNSUPPORTED** Indicates the DLS provider does not support the requested service mode on this stream.

Related Information
The **DL_BIND_ACK** primitive, **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive.

**DL_CONNECT_CON** Primitive

**Purpose**
Informs the local data link service (DLS) user that the requested data link connection has been established.

**Structure**
The primitive consists of one **M_PROTO** message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong    dl_primitive;
    ulong    dl_resp_addr_length;
    ulong    dl_resp_addr_offset;
    ulong    dl_qos_length;
    ulong    dl_qos_offset;
    ulong    dl_growth;
} dl_connect_con_t;
```

**Description**
The **DL_CONNECT_CON** primitive informs the local DLS user that the requested data link connection has been established. The primitive contains the data link service access point (DLSAP) address of the responding DLS user.

**Note:** This primitive applies to connection mode.
Parameters

- **dl_primitive**: Specifies the DL_CONNECT_CON primitive.
- **dl_resp_addr_length**: Specifies the length of the address of the responding DLSAP associated with the newly established data link connection.
- **dl_resp_addr_offset**: Specifies where responding DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the MPROTO message block.
- **dl_qos_length**: The DLS provider does not support QOS parameters. This value is set to 0.
- **dl_qos_offset**: The DLS provider does not support QOS parameters. This value is set to 0.
- **dl_growth**: Defines a growth field for future enhancements to this primitive. Its value must be set to zero.

States

- **Valid**: The primitive is valid in the DL_OUTCON_PENDING state.
- **New**: The resulting state is DL_DATAFER.

Related Information

- DL_CONNECT_REQ primitive.

DL_CONNECT_IND Primitive

**Purpose**

Informs the local data link service (DLS) user that a remote (calling) DLS user is attempting to establish a data link connection.

**Structure**

The primitive consists of one MPROTO message block, which contains the following structure.

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_correlation;
    ulong dl_called_addr_length;
    ulong dl_called_addr_offset;
    ulong dl_calling_addr_length;
    ulong dl_calling_addr_offset;
    ulong dl_qos_length;
    ulong dl_qos_offset;
    ulong dl_growth;
} dl_connect_req_t;
```

**Description**

The **DL_CONNECT_IND** primitive informs the local DLS user that a remote (calling) DLS user is attempting to establish a data link connection. The primitive contains the data link service access point (DLSAP) addresses of the calling and called DLS user.

The **DL_CONNECT_IND** primitive also contains a number that allows the DLS user to correlate the primitive with a subsequent **DL_CONNECT_RES**, **DL_DISCONNECT_REQ**, or **DL_DISCONNECT_IND** primitive.
The number of outstanding DL_CONNECT_IND primitives issued by the DLS provider must not exceed the value of the dl_max_conind parameter specified by the DL_BIND_ACK primitive. If this limit is reached and an additional connect request arrives, the DLS provider does not pass the corresponding connect indication to the DLS user until a response is received for an outstanding request.

**Note:** This primitive applies to connection mode.

### Parameters

- **dl_primitive**
  - Specifies the DL_CONNECT_IND primitive.
- **dl_correlation**
  - Specifies the correlation number to be used by the DLS user to associate this message with the DL_CONNECT_RES, DL_DISCONNECT_REQ, or DL_DISCONNECT_IND primitive that is to follow. This value enables the DLS user to multithread connect indications and responses. All outstanding connect indications must have a distinct, nonzero correlation value set by the DLS provider.
- **dl_called_addr_length**
  - Specifies the length of the address of the DLSAP for which this DL_CONNECT_IND primitive is intended. This address is the full DLSAP address specified by the calling DLS user and is typically the value returned on the DL_BIND_ACK associated with the given stream.
- **dl_called_addr_offset**
  - Specifies where the called DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PROTO message block.
- **dl_calling_addr_length**
  - Specifies the length of the address of the DLSAP from which the DL_CONNECT_REQ primitive was sent.
- **dl_calling_addr_offset**
  - Specifies where the calling DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PROTO message block.
- **dl_qos_length**
  - The DLS provider does not support QOS parameters. This length field is set to 0.
- **dl_qos_offset**
  - The DLS provider does not support QOS parameters. This length field is set to 0.
- **dl_growth**
  - Defines a growth field for future enhancements to this primitive. Its value must be set to 0.

### States

- **Valid**
  - The primitive is valid in the DL_IDLE state. It is also valid in the DL_INCON_PENDING state when the maximum number of outstanding DL_CONNECT_IND primitives has not been reached on this stream.
- **New**
  - The resulting state is DL_INCON_PENDING, regardless of the current state.

### Acknowledgments

The DLS user must send either the DL_CONNECT_RES primitive to accept the connect request or the DL_DISCONNECT_REQ primitive to reject the connect request. In either case, the responding message must convey the correlation number received from the DL_CONNECT_IND primitive. The DLS provider uses the correlation number to identify the connect request to which the DLS user is responding.

### Related Information

DL_CONNECT_REQ Primitive

Purpose
Requests that the data link service (DLS) provider establish a data link connection with a remote DLS user.

Structure
The primitive consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_length;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_offset;
    ulong dl_qos_length;
    ulong dl_qos_offset;
    ulong dl_growth;
} dl_connect_req_t;
```

Description
The DL_CONNECT_REQ primitive requests that the DLS provider establish a data link connection with a remote DLS user. The request contains the data link service access point (DLSAP) address of the remote DLS user.

Note: This primitive applies to connection mode.

Parameters
- `dl_primitive` Specifies the DL_CONNECT_REQ primitive.
- `dl_dest_addr_length` Specifies the length of the DLSAP address that identifies the DLS user with whom a connection is to be established. If the called user is implemented using DLPI, this address is the full DLSAP address returned on the DL_BIND_ACK primitive.
- `dl_dest_addr_offset` Specifies where the destination DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PROTO message block.
- `dl_qos_length` The DLS provider does not support any QOS parameter values. This value is set to 0.
- `dl_qos_offset` The DLS provider does not support any QOS parameter values. This value is set to 0.
- `dl_growth` Defines a growth field for future enhancements to this primitive. Its value must be set to 0.

States
- Valid The primitive is valid in the DL_IDLE state.
- New The resulting state is DL_OUTCON_PENDING.

Acknowledgments
There is no immediate response to the connect request. However, if the connect request is accepted by the called DLS user, the DL_CONNECT_CON primitive is sent to the calling DLS user, resulting in the DL_DATAXFER state.
If the connect request is rejected by the called DLS user, the called DLS user cannot be reached, or the DLS provider or called DLS user do not agree on the specified quality of service, a DL_DISCONNECT_IND primitive is sent to the calling DLS user, resulting in the DL_IDLE state.

If the request is erroneous, the DL_ERROR_ACK primitive is returned and the resulting state is unchanged.

**Error Codes**

- **DL_ACCESS**: Indicates the DLS user does not have proper permission to use the requested DLSAP address.
- **DL_BADADDR**: Indicates the DLSAP address information is invalid or is in an incorrect format.
- **DL_BADQOSPARAM**: Indicates the QOS parameters contain invalid values.
- **DL_BADQOSTYPE**: Indicates the QOS structure type is not supported by the DLS provider.
- **DL_OUTSTATE**: Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state.
- **DL_SYSERR**: Indicates a system error occurred. The system error is indicated in the DL_ERROR_ACK primitive.
- **DL_UNSUPPORTED**: Indicates the DLS user has indicated QOS parameters, which are unsupported.

**Related Information**

**DL_CONNECT_RES Primitive**

**Purpose**
Directs the data link service (DLS) provider to accept a connect request from a remote DLS user.

**Structure**
The primitive consists of one MPROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct
{
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_correlation;
    ulong dl_resp_token;
    ulong dl_qos_length;
    ulong dl_qos_offset;
    ulong dl_growth;
} dl_connect_res_t;
```

**Description**
The DL_CONNECT_RES primitive directs the DLS provider to accept a connect request from a remote (calling) DLS user on a designated stream. The DLS user can accept the connection on the same stream where the connect indication arrived, or on a different, previously bound stream. The response contains the correlation number from the corresponding DL_CONNECT_IND primitive, selected quality of service (QOS) parameters, and an indication of the stream on which to accept the connection.

After issuing this primitive, the DLS user can immediately begin transferring data using the DL_DATA_REQ primitive. However, if the DLS provider receives one or more DL_DATA_REQ primitives from the local DLS user before it has established a connection, the provider must queue the data transfer requests internally until the connection is successfully established.
Note: This primitive applies to connection mode.

Parameters

- **dlPrimitive**: Specifies the **DL_CONNECT_RES** primitive.
- **dl_correlation**: Specifies the correlation number that was received with the corresponding **DL_CONNECT_IND** primitive. The DLS provider uses the correlation number to identify the connect indication to which the DLS user is responding.
- **dlRespToken**: Specifies one of the following values:
  - >0: Specifies the token associated with the responding stream on which the DLS provider is to establish the connection. This stream must be in the **DL_IDLE** state. The token value for a stream can be obtained by issuing a **DL_TOKEN_REQ** primitive on that stream.
  - 0: Indicates the DLS user is accepting the connection on the stream where the connect indication arrived.
- **dl_qos_length**: The DLS provider does not support QOS parameters. This value is set to 0.
- **dl_qos_offset**: The DLS provider does not support QOS parameters. This value is set to 0.
- **dl_growth**: Defines a growth field for future enhancements to this primitive. Its value must be set to 0.

States

- **Valid**: The primitive is valid in the **DL_INCON_PENDING** state.
- **New**: The resulting state is **DL_CONN_RES_PENDING**.

Acknowledgments

- **Successful**: The **DL_OK_ACK** primitive is sent to the DLS user. If no outstanding connect indications remain, the resulting state for the current stream is **DL_IDLE**. Otherwise, it remains **DL_INCON_PENDING**. For the responding stream (designated by the **dlRespToken** parameter), the resulting state is **DL_DATAFER**. If the current stream and responding stream are the same, the resulting state of that stream is **DL_DATAFER**. These streams can only be the same when the response corresponds to the only outstanding connect indication.
- **Unsuccessful**: The **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive is returned on the stream where the **DL_CONNECT_RES** primitive was received, and the resulting state of that stream and the responding stream is unchanged.

Error Codes

- **DL_ACCESS**: Indicates the DLS user does not have proper permission to use the requested data link service access point (DLSAP) address.
- **DL_BADCORR**: Indicates the correlation number specified in this primitive does not correspond to a pending connect indication.
- **DL_BADQOSPARAM**: Indicates the QOS parameters contain invalid values.
- **DL_BADQOSTYPE**: Indicates the QOS structure type is not supported by the DLS provider.
- **DL_BADTOKEN**: Indicates the token for the responding stream is not associated with a currently open stream.
- **DL_OUTSTATE**: Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state, or the responding stream was not in a valid state for establishing a connection.
- **DL_PENDING**: Indicates the current and responding streams are the same, and there is more than one outstanding connect indication.
- **DL_SYSERR**: Indicates a system error occurred. The system error is indicated in the **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive.
Related Information

The \texttt{DL\_CONNECT\_IND} primitive, \texttt{DL\_CONNECT\_RES} primitive, \texttt{DL\_DATA\_REQ} primitive, \texttt{DL\_ERROR\_ACK} primitive, \texttt{DL\_OK\_ACK} primitive.

\subsection*{DL\_DATA\_IND Primitive}

\subsubsection*{Purpose}
Conveys a data link service data unit (DLSDU) from the data link service (DLS) provider to the DLS user.

\subsubsection*{Structure}
The primitive consists of one or more \texttt{M\_DATA} message blocks containing at least one byte of data. (That is, there is no DLPI data structure associated with this primitive.)

\subsubsection*{Description}
The \texttt{DL\_DATA\_IND} primitive conveys a DLSDU from the DLS provider to the DLS user. The DLS provider guarantees to deliver each DLSDU to the local DLS user in the same order as received from the remote DLS user. If the DLS provider detects unrecoverable data loss during data transfer, this may be indicated to the DLS user by a \texttt{DL\_RESET\_IND} primitive, or, if the connection is lost, by a \texttt{DL\_DISCONNECT\_IND} primitive.

\textbf{Note:} This primitive applies to connection mode.

\subsubsection*{States}
Valid \quad The primitive is valid in the \texttt{DL\_DATAXFER} state.
New \quad The resulting state is unchanged.

\subsection*{Related Information}
The \texttt{DL\_DISCONNECT\_IND} primitive, \texttt{DL\_RESET\_IND} primitive.

\subsection*{DL\_DATA\_REQ Primitive}

\subsubsection*{Purpose}
Conveys a complete data link service data unit (DLSDU) from the data link service (DLS) user to the DLS provider for transmission over the data link connection.

\subsubsection*{Structure}
This primitive consists of one or more \texttt{M\_DATA} message blocks containing at least one byte of data. (That is, there is no DLPI data structure associated with this primitive.)

\subsubsection*{Description}
The \texttt{DL\_DATA\_REQ} primitive conveys a complete DLSDU from the DLS user to the DLS provider for transmission over the data link connection. The DLS provider guarantees to deliver each DLSDU to the remote DLS user in the same order as received from the local DLS user. If the DLS provider detects unrecoverable data loss during data transfer, the DLS user can be notified by a \texttt{DL\_RESET\_IND} primitive. If the connection is lost, the user can be notified by a \texttt{DL\_DISCONNECT\_IND} primitive.
To simplify support of a read/write interface to the data link layer, the DLS provider must recognize and process messages that consist of one or more M_DATA message blocks without a preceding M_PROTO message block. This message type may originate from the write subroutine.

Notes:
1. This does not imply that the Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI) directly supports a pure read/write interface. If such an interface is desired, a streams module could be implemented to be pushed above the DLS provider.
2. (Support of Direct User-Level Access) A streams module would implement more field processing itself to support direct user-level access. This module could collect messages and send them in one larger message to the DLS provider, or break large DLSDUs passed to the DLS user into smaller messages. The module would only be pushed if the DLS user was a user-level process.
3. The DL_DATA_REQ primitive applies to connection mode.

States
Valid The primitive is valid in the DL_DATAXFER state. If it is received in the DL_IDLE or DL_PROV_RESET_PENDING state, the primitive is discarded without generating an error.
New The resulting state is unchanged.

Acknowledgments
Successful No response is generated.
Unsuccessful A streams M_ERROR message is issued to the DLS user specifying an errno global value of EPROTO. This action should be interpreted as a fatal, unrecoverable, protocol error. A request will fail under the following conditions:
   • The primitive was issued from an invalid state. If the request is issued in the DL_IDLE or DL_PROV_RESET_PENDING state. However, the request is discarded without generating an error.
   • The amount of data in the current DLSDU is not within the DLS provider’s acceptable bounds as specified by the dl_min_sdu and dl_max_sdu parameters of the DL_INFO_ACK primitive.

Related Information
The DL_DISCONNECT_IND primitive, DL_INFO_ACK primitive, DL_RESET_IND primitive.

DL_DETACH_REQ Primitive

Purpose
Requests that the data link service (DLS) style 2 provider detach a physical point of attachment (PPA) from a stream.

Structure
The message consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong dl_primitive;
} dl_detach_req_t;
```

This structure is defined in /usr/include/sys/dlpi.h.
Description

For style 2 DLS providers, the **DL_DETACH_REQ** primitive requests the DLS provider detach a PPA from a stream.

Parameters

- **dl_primitive**
  Specifies the **DL_DETACH_REQ** primitive.

States

- **Valid**
  The primitive is valid in the **DL_UNBOUND** state.
- **New**
  The resulting state is **DL_DETACH_PENDING**.

Acknowledgments

- **Successful**
  The **DL_OK_ACK** primitive is sent to the DLS user. The resulting state is **DL_UNATTACHED**.
- **Unsuccessful**
  The **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive is returned, and the resulting state is unchanged.

Error Codes

- **DL_OUTSTATE**
  Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state.
- **DL_SYSERR**
  Indicates a system error occurred. The system error is indicated in the **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive.

Related Information

The **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive, **DL_OK_ACK** primitive.

**DL_DISABMULTI_REQ** Primitive

Purpose

Requests that the data link service (DLS) provider disable specific multicast addresses on a per stream basis.

Structure

The message consists of one **M_PROTO** message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct
{
  ulong dl_primitive;
  ulong dl_addr_length;
  ulong dl_addr_offset;
} dl_disabmulti_req_t;
```

This structure is defined in `/usr/include/sys/dlpi.h`.

Description

The **DL_DISABMULTI_REQ** primitive requests that the DLS provider disable specific multicast addresses on a per stream basis.
The DLS provider must not run in the interrupt environment. If the DLS provider runs in the interrupt environment, the system returns a **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive with an error code of **DL_SYSERR** and an operating system error code of 0.

### Parameters

- **dl_primitive**
  Specifies the **DL_DISABMULTI_REQ** primitive.
- **dl_addr_length**
  Specifies the length of the physical address.
- **dl_addr_offset**
  Indicates where the multicast address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the **M_PROTO** message block.

### States

- **Valid**
  The primitive is valid in any state in which a local acknowledgement is not pending, with the exception of the **DL_UNATTACH** state.
- **New**
  The resulting state is unchanged.

### Acknowledgments

- **Successful**
  The **DL_OK_ACK** primitive is sent to the DLS user.
- **Unsuccessful**
  The **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive is returned, and the resulting state is unchanged.

### Error Codes

- **DL_BADADDR**
  Indicates the data link service access point (DLSAP) address information is invalid or is in an incorrect format.
- **DL_NOTENAB**
  Indicates the address specified is not enabled.
- **DL_NOTSUPPORTED**
  Indicates the primitive is known but not supported by the DLS provider.
- **DL_OUTSTATE**
  Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state.
- **DL_SYSERR**
  Indicates a system error occurred. The **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive indicates the system error.

### Related Information

The **DL_OK_ACK** primitive, **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive, **DL_ENABMULTI_REQ** primitive.

### DL_DISCONNECT_IND Primitive

#### Purpose

Informs the data link service (DLS) user that the data link connection on the current stream has been disconnected, or that a pending connection has been cancelled.

#### Structure

The primitive consists of one **M_PROTO** message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct
{
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_originator;
} dl_disconnect_ind;
```
ulong dl_reason;
ulong dl_correlation;
} dl_disconnect_ind_t;

Description

The **DL_DISCONNECT_IND** primitive informs the DLS user of one of the following conditions:

- The data link connection on the current stream has been disconnected.
- A pending connection from either the **DL_CONNECT_REQ** or **DL_CONNECT_IND** primitive has been cancelled.

The primitive indicates the origin and the cause of the disconnect.

**Note**: This primitive applies to connection mode.

Parameters

- **dl_primitive**: Specifies the **DL_DISCONNECT_IND** primitive.
- **dl_originator**: Indicates whether the disconnect originated from a DLS user or provider. Valid values are **DL_USER** and **DL_PROVIDER**.
- **dl_reason**: Specifies the reason for the disconnect. Reasons for disconnect are:
  - **DL_DISC_PERMANENT_CONDITION**: Indicates the connection was released because of a permanent condition.
  - **DL_DISC_TRANSIENT_CONDITION**: Indicates the connection was released because of a temporary condition.
  - **DL_CONREJ_DEST_UNKNOWN**: Indicates the connect request has an unknown destination.
  - **DL_CONREJ_DEST_UNREACH_PERMANENT**: Indicates the connection was released because the destination for connect request could not be reached. This is a permanent condition.
  - **DL_CONREJ_DEST_UNREACH_TRANSIENT**: Indicates the connection was released because the destination for connect request could not be reached. This is a temporary condition.
  - **DL_CONREJ_QOS_UNAVAIL_PERMANENT**: Indicates the requested quality of service (QOS) parameters became permanently unavailable while establishing a connection.
  - **DL_CONREJ_QOS_UNAVAIL_TRANSIENT**: Indicates the requested QOS parameters became temporarily unavailable while establishing a connection.
  - **DL_DISC_UNSPECIFIED**: Indicates the connection was closed because of an unspecified reason.
- **dl_correlation**: If the value is nonzero, specifies the correlation number contained in the **DL_CONNECT_IND** primitive being cancelled. This value permits the DLS user to associate the message with the proper **DL_CONNECT_IND** primitive. If the disconnect request indicates the release of a connection that is already established, or is indicating the rejection of a previously sent **DL_CONNECT_REQ** primitive, the value of the **dl_correlation** parameter is zero.
States

Valid The primitive is valid in any of the following states:
- DL_DATAFER
- DL_INCON_PENDING
- DL_OUTCON_PENDING
- DL_PROV_RESET_PENDING
- DL_USER_RESET_PENDING

New The resulting state is DL_IDLE.

Related Information

The DL_CONNECT_IND primitive, DL_CONNECT_REQ primitive.

DL_DISCONNECT_REQ Primitive

Purpose
Requests that an active data link be disconnected.

Structure
The primitive consists of one MPROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_reason;
    ulong dl_correlation;
} dl_disconnect_req_t;
```

Description
The DL_DISCONNECT_REQ primitive requests the data link service (DLS) provider to disconnect an active data link connection or one that was in the process of activation. The DL_DISCONNECT_REQ primitive can be sent in response to a previously issued DL_CONNECT_REQ primitive. If an incoming DL_CONNECT_IND primitive is being refused, the correlation number associated with that connect indication must be supplied. The message indicates the reason for the disconnect.

Note: This primitive applies to connection mode.

Parameters

- **dl_primitive** Specifies the DL_DISCONNECT_REQ primitive.
**dl_reason**

Indicates one of the following reasons for the disconnect:

- **DL_DISC_NORMAL_CONDITION**
  Indicates normal release of a data link connection.

- **DL_DISC_ABNORMAL_CONDITION**
  Indicates abnormal release of a data link connection.

- **DL_CONREJ_PERMANENT_COND**
  Indicates a permanent condition caused the rejection of a connect request.

- **DL_CONREJ_TRANSIENT_COND**
  Indicates a transient condition caused the rejection of a connect request.

- **DL_DISC_UNSPECIFIED**
  Indicates the connection was closed for an unspecified reason.

**dl_correlation**

Specifies one of the following values:

- **0**
  Indicates either the disconnect request is releasing an established connection or is cancelling a previously sent **DL_CONNECT_REQ** primitive.

- **>0**
  Specifies the correlation number that was contained in the **DL_CONNECT_IND** primitive being rejected. This value permits the DLS provider to associate the primitive with the proper **DL_CONNECT_IND** primitive when rejecting an incoming connection.

**States**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Valid</th>
<th>The primitive is valid in any of the following states:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>DL_DATAXFER</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>DL_INCON_PENDING</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>DL_OUTCON_PENDING</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>DL_PROV_RESET_PENDING</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>DL_USER_RESET_PENDING</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| New     | • **DL_DISCON11_PENDING**                            |

**Acknowledgments**

- **Successful**
  The **DL_OK_ACK** primitive is sent to the DLS user resulting in the **DL_IDLE** state.

- **Unsuccessful**
  The **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive is returned, and the resulting state is unchanged.

**Error Codes**

- **DL_BADCORR**
  Indicates the correlation number specified in this primitive does not correspond to a pending connect indication.

- **DL_OUTSTATE**
  Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state.

- **DL_SYSERR**
  Indicates a system error occurred. The system error is indicated in the **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive.

**Related Information**

The **DL_CONNECT_IND** primitive, **DL_OK_ACK** primitive, **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive, **DL_CONNECT_REQ** primitive.
DL_ENABMULTI_REQ Primitive

Purpose
Requests that the data link service (DLS) provider enable specific multicast addresses on a per stream basis.

Structure
The primitive consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_addr_length;
    ulong dl_addr_offset;
} dl_enabmulti_req_t;
```

This structure is defined in /usr/include/sys/dlpi.h.

Description
The DL_ENABMULTI primitive requests that the DLS provider enable specific multicast addresses on a per stream basis. It is invalid for a DLS provider to pass upstream messages that are destined for any address other than those explicitly enabled on that stream by the DLS user.

If a duplicate address is requested, the system returns a DL_OK_ACK primitive, with no operation performed. If the stream is closed, all multicast addresses associated with the stream will be unregistered.

The DLS provider must not run in the interrupt environment. If the DLS provider runs in the interrupt environment, the system returns a DL_ERROR_ACK primitive with a DL_SYSERR error code and an operating system error code of 0.

Parameters

dl_primitive
  Specifies the DL_ENABMULTI primitive.
dl_addr_length
  Specifies the length of the multicast address.
dl_addr_offset
  Indicates where the multicast address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PROTO message block.

States

Valid
  The primitive is valid in any state in which a local acknowledgement is not pending, with the exception of the DL_UNATTACH state.

New
  The resulting state is unchanged.

Acknowledgments

Successful
  The DL_OK_ACK primitive is sent to the DLS user.

Unsuccessful
  The DL_ERROR_ACK primitive is returned, and the resulting state is unchanged.
Error Codes

DL_BADADDR Indicates the data link service access point (DLSAP) address information is invalid or is in an incorrect format.
DL_NOTSUPPORTED Indicates the primitive is known but not supported by the DLS provider.
DL_OUTSTATE Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state, or the responding stream was not in a valid state for establishing a connection.
DL_TOO_MANY Indicates the limit has been exceeded for the maximum number of DLSAPS per stream.
DL_SYSERR Indicates a system error. The DL_ERROR_ACK primitive indicates the error.

Related Information
The DL_OK_ACK primitive, DL_ERROR_ACK primitive, DL_DISABMULTI_REQ primitive.

DL_ERROR_ACK Primitive

Purpose
Informs the data link service (DLS) user that a request or response was invalid.

Structure
The message consists of one M_PCPROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_error_primitive;
    ulong dl_errno;
    ulong dl_unix_errno;
} dl_ok_ack_t;
```

This structure is defined in `/usr/include/sys/dlpi.h`.

Description
The DL_ERROR_ACK primitive informs the DLS user that the previously issued request or response was invalid. This primitive identifies the primitive in error, specifies a Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI) error code, and if appropriate, indicates an operating system error code.

Parameters
- `dl_primitive` Specifies the DL_ERROR_ACK primitive.
- `dl_error_primitive` Identifies the primitive that caused the error.
- `dl_errno` Specifies the DLPI error code associated with the failure. See the individual request or response for the error codes that are applicable. In addition to those errors:
  - DL_BADPRIM Indicates an unrecognized primitive was issued by the DLS user.
  - DL_NOT_SUPPORTED Indicates an unsupported primitive was issued by the DLS user.
- `dl_unix_errno` Specifies the operating system error code associated with the failure. This value should be nonzero only when the `dl_errno` parameter is set to DL_SYSERR. It is used to report operating system failures that prevent the processing of a given request or response.
States

Valid       The primitive is valid in all states that have a pending acknowledgment or confirmation.
New        The resulting state is the same as the one from which the acknowledged request or response was generated.

Related Information

The \texttt{DL_OK_ACK} primitive.

\textbf{DL_GET_STATISTICS_ACK Primitive}

\textbf{Purpose}

Returns statistics in response to the \texttt{DL_GET_STATISTICS_REQ} primitive.

\textbf{Structure}

The message consists of one \texttt{M_PCPROTO} message block, which contains the following structure:

\begin{verbatim}
typedef struct {
    ulong \texttt{dl_primitive};
    ulong \texttt{dl_stat_length};
    ulong \texttt{dl_stat_offset};
} \texttt{dl_get_statistics_ack_t};
\end{verbatim}

This structure is defined in \texttt{/usr/include/sys/dlpi.h}.

\textbf{Description}

The \texttt{DL_GET_STATISTICS_ACK} primitive returns statistics in response to the \texttt{DL_GET_STATISTICS_REQ} primitive.

The \texttt{/usr/include/sys/dlpistats.h} file defines the statistics that the \texttt{DL_GET_STATISTICS_ACK} and \texttt{DL_GET_STATISTICS_REQ} primitives support. The primitives support the statistics both globally (totals for all streams) and per stream. Per stream, or \textit{local}, statistics can be requested only for the stream over which the \texttt{DL_GET_STATISTICS_REQ} primitive is requested.

The global and local statistics structures are returned concatenated. The offset in the \texttt{M_PCPROTO} message, returned by the \texttt{DL_GET_STATISTICS_ACK} primitive, indicates where the two concatenated structures begin. The first statistics structure contains information about the local stream over which the \texttt{DL_GET_STATISTICS_REQ} primitive was issued. The second statistics structure contains the global statistics collected and summed for all streams.

The structures for the local statistics are initialized to zero when the stream is opened. The structure for the global statistics is initialized to zero when the \texttt{dlpi} kernel extension is loaded. The statistics structures can be reset to zero using the \texttt{DL_ZERO_STATS IOCTL} command. See "IOCTL Specifics" in \texttt{Data Link Provider Interface Information}.

The statistics collected by the DLPI provider are considered vague. There are no locks protecting the counters to prevent write collisions.

\textbf{Parameters}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{dl_primitive} Specifies the \texttt{DL_GET_STATISTICS_ACK} primitive.
\end{itemize}
**States**

Valid  The primitive is valid in any attached state in which a local acknowledgment is not pending.
New  The resulting state is unchanged.

**Related Information**

The [DL_GET_STATISTICS_REQ](#) primitive.

“IOCTL Specifics” in Data Link Provider Interface Information

---

**DL_GET_STATISTICS_REQ**

**Purpose**

Directs the data link service (DLS) provider to return statistics to the DLS user.

**Structure**

The message consists of one `M_PROTO` message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
   ulong  dl_primitive;
} dl_get_statistics_req_t;
```

The `dl_get_statistics_req_t` structure is defined in `/usr/include/sys/dlpi.h`.

**Description**

The `DL_GET_STATISTICS_REQ` primitive directs the DLS provider to return statistics.

**Parameters**

`dl_primitive`  Specifies the `DL_GET_STATISTICS_REQ` primitive.

**States**

Valid  The primitive is valid in any attached state in which a local acknowledgment is not pending.
New  The resulting state is unchanged.

**Acknowledgments**

Successful  The `DL_GET_STATISTICS_ACK` primitive is sent to the DLS user.
Unsuccessful  The `DL_ERROR_ACK` primitive is returned to the DLS user.
Error Codes

**DL_NOTSUPPORTED**  Indicates the primitive is known but not supported by the DLS provider.

**DL_SYSERR**  Indicates a system error. The **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive indicates the error.

Related Information

The **DL_GET_STATISTICS_ACK** primitive, **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive.

**DL_INFO_ACK** Primitive

**Purpose**

Returns information about the Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI) stream in response to the **DL_INFO_REQ** primitive.

**Structure**

The message consists of one **M_PCPROTO** message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong  dl_primitive;
    ulong  dl_max_sdu;
    ulong  dl_min_sdu;
    ulong  dl_addr_length;
    ulong  dl_mac_type;
    ulong  dl_reserved;
    ulong  dl_current_state;
    long   dl_sap_length;
    ulong  dl_service_mode;
    ulong  dl_qos_length;
    ulong  dl_qos_offset;
    ulong  dl_qos_range_length;
    ulong  dl_qos_range_offset;
    ulong  dl_provider_style;
    ulong  dl_addr_offset;
    ulong  dl_version;
    ulong  dl_brdcast_addr_length;
    ulong  dl_brdcast_addr_offset;
    ulong  dl_growth;
} dl_info_ack_t;
```

This structure is defined in `/usr/include/sys/dlpi.h`.

**Description**

The **DL_INFO_ACK** primitive returns information about the DLPI stream to the data link service (DLS). The **DL_INFO_ACK** primitive is a response to the **DL_INFO_REQ** primitive.

**Parameters**

- **dl_primitive**
  Specifies the **DL_INFO_ACK** primitive.

- **dl_max_sdu**
  Specifies the maximum number of bytes that can be transmitted in a data link service data unit (DLSDU). This value must be a positive integer greater than or equal to the value of the **dl_min_sdu** parameter.
dl_min_sdu Specifies the minimum number of bytes that can be transmitted in a DLSDU. The minimum value is 1.

dl_addr_length Specifies the length, in bytes, of the provider’s data link service access point (DLSAP) address. For hierarchical subsequent binds, the length returned is the total length. The total length is the sum of the values for the physical address, service access point (SAP), and subsequent address length.

dl_mac_type Specifies the type of medium supported by this DLPI stream. Possible values include:

DL_CSMACD Indicates the medium is carrier sense multiple access with collision detection (ISO 8802/3).

DL_TPR Indicates the medium is token-passing ring (ISO 8802/5).

DLETHER Indicates the medium is Ethernet bus.

DL_FDDI Indicates the medium is a Fiber Distributed Data Interface.

DL_OTHER Indicates any other medium.

dl_reserved Indicates a reserved field, the value of which must be set to 0.

dl_current_state Specifies the state of the DLPI interface for the stream the DLS provider issues this acknowledgement.

dl_sap_length Indicates the current length of the SAP component of the DLSAP address. The specified value must be an integer. The absolute value of the dl_sap_length parameter provides the length of the SAP component within the DLSAP address. The value can be one of the following:

>0 Indicates the SAP component precedes the physical component within the DLSAP address.

<0 Indicates the physical component precedes the SAP component within the DLSAP address.

0 Indicates that no SAP has been bound.

dl_service_mode Specifies which service modes that the DLS provider supports if the DL_INFO_ACK primitive is returned before the DL_BIND_REQ primitive is processed. This parameter contains a bit-mask specifying the following value:

DL_CODLS Indicates connection-oriented DLS.

DL_CLDLS Indicates connectionless DLS.

Once a specific service mode has been bound to the stream, this field returns that specific service mode.

dl_qos_length The DLS provider does not support *_qos_* parameters. This value is set to 0.

dl_qos_offset The DLS provider does not support *_qos_* parameters. This value is set to 0.

dl_qos_range_length The DLS provider does not support *_qos_* parameters. This value is set to 0.

dl_qos_range_offset The DLS provider does not support *_qos_* parameters. This value is set to 0.
**States**

Valid: The primitive is valid in any state in response to a `DL_INFO_REQ` primitive.
New: The resulting state is unchanged.

**Related Information**

The `DL_INFO_REQ` primitive, `DL_BIND_REQ` primitive, `DL_ATTACH_REQ` primitive.

---

**DL_INFO_REQ Primitive**

**Purpose**

Requests information about the Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI) stream.

**Structure**

The message consists of one `M_PCPROTO` message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong dl_primitive;
} dl_info_req_t;
```

This structure is defined in `/usr/include/sys/dlpi.h`.

**Description**

The `DL_INFO_REQ` primitive requests information from the data link service (DLS) provider about the DLPI stream. This information includes a set of provider-specific parameters, as well as the current state of the interface.

**Parameters**

- **dl_primitive**
  
  Conveys the `DL_INFO_REQ` primitive.

**States**

- Valid: The primitive is valid in any state in which a local acknowledgment is not pending.
- New: The resulting state is unchanged.
Acknowledgments
The DLS provider responds to the information request with a DL_INFO_ACK primitive.

Related Information
The DL_INFO_ACK primitive.

DL_OK_ACK Primitive

Purpose
Acknowledges that a previously issued primitive was received successfully.

Structure
The message consists of one M_PCPROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

typedef struct
{  ulong dl_primitive;
   ulong dl_correct_primitive;
} dl_ok_ack_t;

This structure is defined in /usr/include/sys/dlpi.h.

Description
The DL_OK_ACK primitive acknowledges to the data link service (DLS) user that a previously issued primitive was received successfully. It is only initiated for the primitives listed in the “States” section.

Parameters

dl_primitive Specifies the DL_OK_ACK primitive.
dl_correct_primitive Identifies the received primitive that is being acknowledged.

States
Valid The primitive is valid in response to the following primitives:
• DL_ATTACH_REQ
• DL_DETACH_REQ
• DL_UNBIND_REQ
• DL_SUBS_UNBIND_REQ
• DL_PROMISCON_REQ
• DL_ENABMULTI_REQ
• DL_DISABMULTI_REQ
• DL_PROMISCOFF_REQ

New The resulting state depends on the current state and is fully defined in “Allowable Sequence of DLPI Primitives” in your copy of the AT&T DLPI Specifications.

Related Information
The DL_ATTACH_REQ primitive, DL_DETACH_REQ primitive, DL_UNBIND_REQ primitive,
DL_SUBS_UNBIND_REQ primitive, DL_PROMISCON_REQ primitive, DL_ENABMULTI_REQ primitive,
DL_DISABMULTI_REQ primitive, DL_PROMISCOFF_REQ primitive.
DL_PHYS_ADDR_ACK Primitive

Purpose
Returns the value for the physical address to the data link service (DLS) user in response to a DL_PHYS_ADDR_REQ primitive.

Structure
The message consists of one M_PCPROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

```
typedef struct {
    ulong    dl_primitive;
    ulong    dl_addr_length;
    ulong    dl_addr_offset;
} dl_phys_addr_req_t;
```

This structure is defined in /usr/include/sys/dlpi.h.

Description
The DL_PHYS_ADDR_ACK primitive returns the value for the physical address to the DLS user in response to a DL_PHYS_ADDR_REQ primitive.

Parameters
dl_primitive
Specifies the DL_PHYS_ADDR_ACK primitive.
dl_addr_length
Specifies the length of the physical address.
dl_addr_offset
Indicates where the physical address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PCPROTO block.

States
Valid
The primitive is valid in any state in response to a DL_PHYS_ADDR_REQ primitive.
New
The resulting state is unchanged.

Related Information
The DL_PHYS_ADDR_REQ primitive.

DL_PHYS_ADDR_REQ Primitive

Purpose
Requests that the data link service (DLS) provider return the current value of the physical address associated with the stream.

Structure
The message consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

```
typedef struct {
```
ulong \( dl\text{\_primitive} \);
ulong \( dl\text{\_addr\_type} \);
} \( dl\:\text{phys\_addr\_req\_t} \);

This structure is defined in /usr/include/sys/dlpi.h.

**Description**
The **DL\_PHYS\_ADDR\_REQ** primitive requests that the DLS provider return the current value of the physical address associated with the stream.

**Parameters**
- \( dl\text{\_primitive} \): Specifies the **DL\_PHYS\_ADDR\_REQ** primitive.
- \( dl\text{\_addr\_type} \): Specifies the requested address. The value is:
  - **DL\_CURR\_PHYS\_ADDR**: Current physical address.

**States**
- **Valid**: The primitive is valid in any attached state in which a local acknowledgment is not pending. For a style 2 DLS provider, this is after a PPA is attached using the **DL\_ATTACH\_REQ** provider.
- **New**: The resulting state is unchanged.

**Acknowledgments**
- **Successful**: The **DL\_PHYS\_ADDR\_ACK** primitive is sent to the DLS user.
- **Unsuccessful**: The **DL\_ERROR\_ACK** primitive is returned to the DLS user.

**Error Codes**
- **DL\_NOTSUPPORTED**: Indicates the primitive is known but not supported by the DLS provider.
- **DL\_OUTSTATE**: Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state.
- **DL\_UNSUPPORTED**: Indicates the requested address type is not supplied by the DLS provider.
- **DL\_SYSERR**: Indicates a system error occurred and the provider did not have access to the physical address.

**Related Information**
The **DL\_PHYS\_ADDR\_ACK** and **DL\_ERROR\_ACK** primitives.

**DL\_PROMISCOFF\_REQ** Primitive

**Purpose**
Requests that the data link service (DLS) provider disable promiscuous mode on a per-stream basis, at either the physical level or the service access point (SAP) level.

**Structure**
The message consists of one **M\_PROTO** message block, which contains the following structure:
typedef struct {
    ulong  dl_primitive;
    ulong  dl_level;
} dl_promiscoff_req_t;

This structure is defined in /usr/include/sys/dlpi.h.

Description
A device in promiscuous mode lets a user view all packets, not just those destined for the user.

The DL_PROMISCOFF_REQ primitive requests that the DLS provider disable promiscuous mode on a per-stream basis, at either the physical level or the SAP level.

If the DLS user disables the promiscuous mode at the physical level, the DLS user no longer receives a copy of every packet on the wire for all SAPs.

If the DLS user disables the promiscuous mode at the SAP level, the DLS user no longer receives a copy of every packet on the wire directed to that user for all SAPs.

If the DLS user disables the promiscuous mode for all multicast addresses, the DLS user no longer receives all packets on the wire that have either a multicast or group destination address. This includes broadcast.

An application issuing the DL_PROMISCOFF_REQ primitive must have root authority. Otherwise, the DLS provider returns the DL_ERROR_ACK primitive with an error code of DL_ACCESS.

The DLS provider must not run in the interrupt environment. If it does, the system returns a DL_ERROR_ACK primitive with an error code of DL_SYSERR and an operating system error code of 0.

Parameters

dl_primitive
    Specifies the DL_PROMISCOFF_REQ primitive.

dl_level
    Indicates promiscuous mode at the physical or SAP level. Possible values include:

    DL_PROMISC_PHYS
        Indicates promiscuous mode at the physical level.

    DL_PROMISC_SAP
        Indicates promiscuous mode at the SAP level.

    DL_PROMISC_MULTI
        Indicates promiscuous mode for all multicast addresses.

States

Valid
    The primitive is valid in any state in which an acknowledgement is not pending, with the exception of DL_UNATTACH.

New
    The resulting state is unchanged.

Acknowledgments

Successful
    The DL_OK_ACK primitive is sent to the DLS user.

Unsuccessful
    The DL_ERROR_ACK primitive is returned, and the resulting state is unchanged.
Error Codes

- **DL_ACCESS**: Indicates the DLS user does not have permission to issue the primitive.
- **DL_NOTENAB**: Indicates the mode is not enabled.
- **DL_NOTSUPPORTED**: Indicates the primitive is known but not supported by the DLS provider.
- **DL_OUTSTATE**: Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state.
- **DL_SYSERR**: Indicates a system error occurred. The system error is indicated in the **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive.
- **DL_UNSUPPORTED**: Indicates the DLS provider does not supply the requested level.

Related Information

The **DL_OK_ACK** primitive, **DL_ERROR_ACK** primitive.

---

**DL_PROMISCON_REQ Primitive**

**Purpose**

Requests that the data link service (DLS) provider enable promiscuous mode on a per-stream basis, at either the physical level or the service access point (SAP) level.

**Structure**

The message consists of one **M_PROTO** message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong   dl_primitive;
    ulong   dl_level;
} dl_promiscon_req_t;
```

This structure is defined in `/usr/include/sys/dlpi.h`.

**Description**

A device in promiscuous mode lets a user view all packets, not just those destined for the user.

The **DL_PROMISCON_REQ** primitive requests that the DLS provider enable promiscuous mode on a per-stream basis, either at the physical level or at the SAP level.

The DLS provider routes all received messages on the media to the DLS user until either a **DL_DETACH_REQ** or a **DL_PROMISCOFF_REQ** primitive is received or the stream is closed.

If the DLS user enables the promiscuous mode at the physical level, the DLS user receives a copy of every packet on the wire for all SAPs.

If the DLS user enables the promiscuous mode at the SAP level, the DLS user receives a copy of every packet on the wire directed to that user for all SAPs.

If the DLS user enables the promiscuous mode for all multicast addresses, the DLS user receives all packets on the wire that have either a multicast or group destination address. This includes broadcast.

If the DLS user issues duplicate requests, the system returns a **DL_OK_ACK** primitive and does not perform the operation.
An application issuing the DL_PROMISCON_REQ primitive must have root authority. Otherwise, the DLS provider returns the DL_ERROR_ACK primitive with an error code of DL_ACCESS.

The DLS provider must not run in the interrupt environment. If it does, the system returns a DL_ERROR_ACK primitive with an error code of DL_SYSERR and an operating system error code of 0.

The above code fragment.

The following sample code fragment discards the DL_UNITDATA_IND header, and will work with dlpi:

```c
if (raw_mode) {
    if (mp->b_datap->db_type == M_PROTO) {
        union DL_primitives *p;
        p = (union DL_primitives *)mp->b_rptr;
        if (p->dl_primitive == DL_UNITDATA_IND) {
            mblk_t *mpl = mp->b_cont;
            freeb(mp);
            mp = mpl;
        }
    }
}
```

For compatibility with future releases, it is recommended that you parse the frame yourself. The MAC and LLC headers are presented in the M_DATA message for promiscuous mode.

**Parameters**

- **dl_primitive** Specifies the DL_PROMISCON_REQ primitive. Indicates promiscuous mode at the physical or SAP level. Possible values include:
  - DL_PROMISC_PHYS Indicates promiscuous mode at the physical level.
  - DL_PROMISC_SAP Indicates promiscuous mode at the SAP level.
  - DL_PROMISC_MULTI Indicates promiscuous mode for all multicast addresses.

- **dl_level**

**States**

- **Valid** The primitive is valid in any state in which an acknowledgement is not pending, with the exception of DL_UNATTACH.
- **New** The resulting state is unchanged.

**Acknowledgments**

- **Successful** The DL_OK_ACK primitive is sent to the DLS user.
- **Unsuccessful** The DL_ERROR_ACK primitive is returned, and the resulting state is unchanged.

**Error Codes**

- **DL_ACCESS** Indicates the DLS user does not have permission to issue the primitive.
- **DL_NOTSUPPORTED** Indicates the primitive is known but not supported by the DLS provider.
- **DL_OUTSTATE** Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state.
DL_SYSERR  Indicates a system error occurred. The system error is indicated in the DL_ERROR_ACK primitive.
DL_UNSUPPORTED  Indicates the DLS provider does not support the requested service on this stream.

Related Information

---

**DL_RESET_CON Primitive**

**Purpose**
Informs the data link service (DLS) user that the reset has been completed.

**Structure**
The primitive consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong dl_primitive;
} dl_reset_con_t;
```

**Description**
The DL_RESET_CON primitive informs the DLS user initiating the reset that the reset has been completed.

**Note:** This primitive applies to connection mode.

**Parameters**

dl_primitive  Specifies the DL_RESET_CON primitive.

**States**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Valid</th>
<th>The primitive is valid in the DL_USER_RESET_PENDING state.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New</td>
<td>The resulting state is DL_DATAFER.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Information**

**DL_RESET_IND Primitive**

**Purpose**
Indicates a data link service (DLS) connection has been reset.

**Structure**
The primitive consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure:
typedef struct
{
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_originator;
    ulong dl_reason;
} dl_disconnect_ind_t;

Description
The DL_RESET_IND primitive informs the DLS user that either the remote DLS user is resynchronizing the data link connection, or the DLS provider is reporting loss of data from which it can not recover. The primitive indicates the reason for the reset.

Note: This primitive applies to connection mode.

Parameters
dl_primitive Specifies the DL_RESET_IND primitive.
dl_originator Specifies whether the reset was originated by the DLS user or DLS provider. The values are DL_USER or DL_PROVIDER, respectively.
dl_reason Indicates one of the following reasons for the reset:

  DL_RESET_FLOW_CONTROL Indicates flow control congestion.
  DL_RESET_LINK_ERROR Indicates the occurrence of a data link error.
  DL_RESET_RESYNCH Indicates a request for resynchronization of a data link connection.

States
Valid The primitive is valid in the DL_DATAXFER state.
New The resulting state is DL_PROV_RESET_PENDING.

Acknowledgments
The DLS user should issue a DL_RESET_RES primitive to continue the resynchronization procedure.

Related Information
The DL_RESET_RES primitive.

DL_RESET_REQ Primitive

Purpose
Requests that the data link service (DLS) provider begin resynchronizing a data link connection.

Structure
The primitive consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

typedef struct
{
    ulong dl_primitive;
} dl_reset_req_t;
Description
The DL_RESET_REQ primitive requests that the DLS provider begin resynchronizing a data link connection.

Notes:
1. No guarantee exists that data in transit when the DL_RESET_REQ primitive is initiated will be delivered.
2. This primitive applies to connection mode.

Parameters
dl_primitive Specifies the DL_RESET_REQ primitive.

States
Valid The primitive is valid in state DL_DATAXFER.
New The resulting state is DL_USER_RESET_PENDING.

Acknowledgments
Successful There is no immediate response to the reset request. However, as resynchronization completes, the DL_RESET_CON primitive is sent to the initiating DLS user, resulting in the DL_DATAXFER state.
Unsuccessful The DL_ERROR_ACK primitive is returned and the resulting state is unchanged.

Error Codes
DL_OUTSTATE Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state.
DL_SYSERR Indicates a system error occurred. The system error is indicated in the DL_ERROR_ACK primitive.

Related Information
The DL_RESET_CON primitive, DL_ERROR_ACK primitive.

DL_RESET_RES Primitive

Purpose
Directs the data link service (DLS) provider to complete resynchronizing the data link connection.

Structure
The primitive consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

typedef struct 
{ 
    ulong dl_primitive;
} dl_reset_res_t;
Description
The DL_RESET_RES primitive directs the DLS provider to complete resynchronizing the data link connection.

Note: This primitive applies to connection mode.

Parameters

dl_primitive Specifies the DL_RESET_RES primitive.

States

Valid The primitive is valid in the DL_PROV_RESET_PENDING state.
New The resulting state is DL_RESET_RES_PENDING.

Acknowledgments

Successful The DL_OK_ACK primitive is sent to the DLS user, and the resulting state is DL_DATAXFER.
Unsuccessful The DL_ERROR_ACK primitive is returned, and the resulting state is unchanged.

Error Codes

DL_OUTSTATE Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state.
DL_SYSERR Indicates a system error occurred. The system error is indicated in the DL_ERROR_ACK primitive.

Related Information

DL_RESET_IND Primitive

DL_SUBS_BIND_ACK Primitive

Purpose
Reports the successful bind of a subsequent data link service access point (DLSAP) to a stream and returns the bound DLSAP address to the data link service (DLS) user.

Structure
The message consists of one M_PCPROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

typedef struct
{
ulong dl_primitive;
ulong dl_subs_sap_length;
ulong dl_subs_sap_offset;
} dl_subs_bind_ack_t;

This structure is defined in /usr/include/sys/dlpi.h.
Description
The **DL_SUBS_BIND_ACK** primitive reports the successful bind of a subsequent DLSAP to a stream and returns the bound DLSAP address to the DLS user. This primitive is generated in response to a **DL_BIND_REQ** primitive.

Parameters
- **dl_primitive** Specifies the **DL_SUBS_BIND_ACK** primitive.
- **dl_subs_sap_length** Specifies the length of the specified DLSAP.
- **dl_subs_sap_offset** Indicates where the DLSAP begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the **M_PROTO** message block.

States
- **Valid** The primitive is valid in the **DL_SUBS_BIND_PND** state.
- **New** The resulting state is **DL_IDLE**.

Related Information
The **DL_SUBS_BIND_REQ** primitive.

**DL_SUBS_BIND_REQ** Primitive

Purpose
Requests that the data link service (DLS) provider bind a subsequent data link service access point (DLSAP) to the stream.

Structure
The message consists of one **M_PROTO** message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct
{
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_subs_sap_offset;
    ulong dl_subs_sap_length;
    ulong dl_subs_bind_class;
} dl_subs_bind_req_t;
```

This structure is defined in `/usr/include/sys/dlpi.h`.

Description
The **DL_SUBS_BIND_REQ** primitive requests that the DLS provider bind a subsequent DLSAP to the stream. The DLS user must identify the address of the subsequent DLSAP to be bound to the stream.

The 802.2 networks accept either **DL_HIERARCHICAL_BIND** or **DL_PEER_BIND**. The **dl_subs_sap_length** parameter must be 5 (sizeof snap) for hierarchical binds, and **dl_subs_sap_offset** must point to a complete SNAP. For peer binds, **dl_subs_sap_length** may be either 1 or 5, and **dl_subs_sap_offset** must point to either a single byte SAP or a complete SNAP (as in hierarchical binds).

In the case of SNAP binds, **DL_PEER_BIND** and **DL_HIERARCHICAL_BIND** are synonymous, and fully interchangeable.
Several distinct SAPs/SNAPs may be bound on any single stream. Since a DSAP address field is limited to 8 bits, a maximum of 256 SAPS/SNAPS can be bound to a single stream. Closing the stream or issuing \texttt{DL\_UNBIND\_REQ} causes all SAPs and SNAPs to be unbound automatically, or each subs sap can be individually unbound.

\texttt{DL\_ETHER} supports only \texttt{DL\_PEER\_BIND}, and \texttt{dl\_subs\_sap\_offset} must point to an ethertype (\texttt{dl\_subs\_sap\_length == sizeof(ushort)}).

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preferred Request</th>
<th>Sap</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{DL_BIND_REQ}</td>
<td>0xaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{DL_SUBS_BIND_REQ/_HIERARCHICAL_BIND}</td>
<td>08.00.07.80.9b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{DL_SUBS_BIND_REQ/_HIERARCHICAL_BIND}</td>
<td>08.00.07.80.f3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

or

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Equivalent Effect</th>
<th>Sap</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{DL_BIND_REQ}</td>
<td>0xaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{DL_SUBS_BIND_REQ/_PEER_BIND}</td>
<td>08.00.07.80.9b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{DL_SUBS_BIND_REQ/_PEER_BIND}</td>
<td>08.00.07.80.f3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

or

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Equivalent Effect</th>
<th>Sap</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{DL_BIND_REQ}</td>
<td>0xaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{DL_SUBS_BIND_REQ/_HIERARCHICAL_BIND}</td>
<td>08.00.07.80.9b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{DL_SUBS_BIND_REQ/_PEER_BIND}</td>
<td>08.00.07.80.f3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Parameters**

- \texttt{dl\_primitive} Specifies the \texttt{DL\_SUBS\_BIND\_REQ} primitive.
- \texttt{dl\_subs\_sap\_length} Specifies the length of the specified DLSAP.
- \texttt{dl\_subs\_sap\_offset} Indicates where the DLSAP begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the \texttt{M\_PROTO} message block.
- \texttt{dl\_subs\_bind\_class} Specifies either peer or hierarchical addressing. Possible values include:
  - \texttt{DL\_PEER\_BIND} Specifies peer addressing. The DLSAP specified is used instead of the DLSAP bound in the bind request.
  - \texttt{DL\_HIERARCHICAL\_BIND} Specifies hierarchical addressing. The DLSAP specified is used in addition to the DLSAP specified using the bind request.

**States**

- **Valid** The primitive is valid in the \texttt{DL\_IDLE} state.
- **New** The resulting state is \texttt{DL\_SUBS\_BIND\_PND}.
Acknowledgments

Successful  The DL_SUBS_BIND_ACK primitive is sent to the DLS user, and the resulting state is DL_IDLE.
Unsuccessful The DL_ERROR_ACK primitive is returned, and the resulting state is unchanged.

Error Codes

**DL_ACCESS** Indicates the DLS user does not have proper permission to use the requested DLSAP address.
**DL_BADADDR** Indicates the DLSAP address information is invalid or is in an incorrect format.
**DL_OUTSTATE** Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state.
**DL_SYSERR** Indicates a system error occurred. The system error is indicated in the DL_ERROR_ACK primitive.
**DL_TOOMANY** Indicates the limit has been exceeded for the maximum number of DLSAPs per stream.
**DL_UNSUPPORTED** Indicates the DLS provider does not support the requested addressing class.

Related Information

The DL_ERROR_ACK primitive, DL_SUBS_BIND_ACK primitive.

**DL_SUBS_UNBIND_REQ** Primitive

**Purpose**
Requests that the data link service (DLS) provider unbind the data link service access point (DLSAP) that was bound by a previous DL_SUBS_BIND_REQ primitive from this stream.

**Structure**
The message consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_subs_sap_length;
    ulong dl_subs_sap_offset;
} dl_subs_unbind_req_t;
```

This structure is defined in `/usr/include/sys/dlpi.h`

**Description**
The DL_SUBS_UNBIND_REQ primitive requests that the DLS provider unbind the DLSAP that was bound by a previous DL_SUBS_BIND_REQ primitive from this stream.

**Parameters**

- `dl_primitive` Specifies the DL_SUBS_UNBIND_REQ primitive.
- `dl_subs_sap_length` Specifies the length of the specified DLSAP.
- `dl_subs_sap_offset` Indicates where the DLSAP begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PROTO message block.
States
Valid The primitive is valid in the DL_IDLE state.
New The resulting state is DL_SUBS_UNBIND_PND.

Acknowledgments
Successful The DL_OK_ACK primitive is sent to the DLS user. The resulting state is DL_IDLE.
Unsuccessful The DL_ERROR_ACK primitive is returned, and the resulting state is unchanged.

Error Codes
DL_BADADDR Indicates the DLSAP address information is invalid or is in an incorrect format.
DL_OUTSTATE Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state.
DL_SYSERR Indicates a system error occurred. The system error is indicated in the DL_ERROR_ACK primitive.

Related Information
The DL_OK_ACK primitive, DL_ERROR_ACK primitive, DL_SUBS_BIND_REQ primitive.

DL_TEST_CON Primitive

Purpose
Conveys the test-response data link service data unit (DLSDU) from the data link service (DLS) provider to the DLS user in response to a DL_TEST_REQ primitive.

Structure
The primitive consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure, followed by zero or more M_DATA blocks containing zero or more bytes of data:

typedef struct
{
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_flag;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_length;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_offset;
    ulong dl_src_addr_length;
    ulong dl_src_addr_offset;
} dl_test_con_t;

Description
The DL_TEST_CON primitive conveys the test-response DLSDU from the DLS provider to the DLS user in response to a DL_TEST_REQ primitive.

Note: This primitive applies to XID and test operations.

Parameters

dl_primitive Specifies the DL_TEST_CON primitive.
dl_flag Indicates flag values for the request as follows:

- **DL_POLL_FINAL**: Indicates whether the poll/final bit is set.

dl_dest_addr_length Specifies the length of the data link service access point (DLSAP) address of the destination DLS user. If the destination user is implemented using Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI), this address is the full DLSAP address returned on the DL_BIND_ACK primitive.

dl_dest_addr_offset Indicates where the destination DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PROTO message block.

dl_src_addr_length Specifies the length of the DLSAP address of the source DLS user.

dl_src_addr_offset Indicates where the source DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PROTO message block.

States

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Valid</td>
<td>The primitive is valid in the <strong>DL_IDLE</strong> or <strong>DL_DATAxFER</strong> state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New</td>
<td>The resulting state is unchanged.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Information

The **DL_BIND_ACK** primitive.

**DL_TEST_IND** Primitive

**Purpose**

Conveys the test-response indication data link service data unit (DLSDU) from the data link service (DLS) provider to the DLS user.

**Structure**

The primitive consists of one **M_PROTO** message block, which contains the following structure, followed by zero or more **M_DATA** blocks containing zero or more bytes of data:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_flag;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_length;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_offset;
    ulong dl_src_addr_length;
    ulong dl_src_addr_offset;
} dl_test_ind_t;
```

**Description**

The **DL_TEST_IND** primitive conveys the test-response indication DLSDU from the DLS provider to the DLS user.

**Note:** This primitive applies to XID and test operations.

**Parameters**

- **dl_primitive** Specifies the **DL_TEST_IND** primitive.
- **dl_flag** Indicates flag values for the request as follows:

  - **DL_POLL_FINAL**: Indicates whether the poll/final bit is set.
dl_dest_addr_length

Specifies the length of the data link service access point (DLSAP) address of the destination DLS user. If the destination user is implemented using the Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI), this address is the full DLSAP address returned on the DL_BIND_ACK primitive.

dl_dest_addr_offset

Indicates where the destination DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PROTO message block.

dl_src_addr_length

Specifies the length of the DLSAP address of the source DLS user.

dl_src_addr_offset

Indicates where the source DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PROTO message block.

States

Valid The primitive is valid in the DL_IDLE or DL_DATAFER state.
New The resulting state is unchanged.

Related Information

The DL_BIND_ACK primitive.

DL_TEST_REQ Primitive

Purpose

Conveys one test-command data link service data unit (DLSDU) from the data link service (DLS) user to the DLS provider for transmission to a peer DLS provider.

Structure

The message consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure, followed by zero or more M_DATA blocks containing zero or more bytes of data:

typedef struct
{
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_flag;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_length;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_offset;
} dl_test_req_t;

Description

The DL_TEST_REQ primitive conveys one test-command DLSDU from the DLS user to the DLS provider for transmission to a peer DLS provider.

A DL_ERROR_ACK primitive is always returned.

Note: This primitive applies to XID and test operations.

Parameters

dl_primitive

Specifies the DL_TEST_REQ primitive.

dl_flag

Indicates flag values for the request as follows:

DL_POLL_FINAL
Indicates whether the poll/final bit is set.
Specifies the length of the data link service access point (DLSAP) address of the destination DLS user. If the destination user is implemented using the Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI), this address is the full DLSAP address returned on the DL_BIND_ACK primitive.

Indicates where the destination DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PROTO message block.

States

Valid  The primitive is valid in the DL_IDLE or DL_DATAXFER state.
New    The resulting state is unchanged.

Acknowledgments

Unsuccessful  The DL_ERROR_ACK primitive is returned for an invalid test-command request.

Note: It is recommended that the DLS user use a timeout procedure to recover from a situation when the peer DLS user does not respond.

Error Code

DL_OUTSTATE  The primitive was issued from an invalid state.
DL_BADADDR  The DLSAP address information was invalid or was in an incorrect format.
DL_BADDATA  The amount of data in the current DLSDU exceeded the DLS provider's DLSDU limit.
DL_SYSERR  A system error has occurred. The system error is indicated in the DL_ERROR_ACK primitive.
DL_TESTAUTO  Indicates the previous bind request specified automatic handling of test responses.

Related Information

The DL_BIND_ACK primitive, DL_ERROR_ACK primitive.

DL_TEST_RES Primitive

Purpose

Conveys the test-response data link service data unit (DLSDU) from the data link service (DLS) user to the DLS provider in response to a DL_TEST_IND primitive.

Structure

The primitive consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure, followed by zero or more M_DATA blocks containing zero or more bytes of data:

typedef struct
{
    ulong  dl_primitive;
    ulong  dl_flag;
    ulong  dl_dest_addr_length;
    ulong  dl_dest_addr_offset;
} dl_test_res_t;
Description

The **DL_TEST_RES** primitive conveys the test-response DLSDU from the DLS user to the DLS provider in response to a **DL_TEST_IND** primitive.

**Note:** This primitive applies to XID and test operations.

**Parameters**

- **dl_primitive**
  Specifies the **DL_TEST_RES** primitive.

- **dl_flag**
  Indicates flag values for the request as follows:
  - **DL_POLL_FINAL**
    Indicates whether the poll/final bit is set.

- **dl_dest_addr_length**
  Specifies the length of the data link service access point (DLSAP) address of the destination DLS user. If the destination user is implemented using the Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI), this address is the full DLSAP address returned on the **DL_BIND_ACK** primitive.

- **dl_dest_addr_offset**
  Indicates where the destination DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the **M_PROTO** message block.

**States**

- **Valid**
  The primitive is valid in the **DL_IDLE** or **DL_DATAFER** state.

- **New**
  The resulting state is unchanged.

**Related Information**

The **DL_BIND_ACK** primitive.

---

**DL_TOKEN_ACK Primitive**

**Purpose**

Specifies the connection-response token assigned to a stream.

**Structure**

The primitive consists of one **M_PCPROTO** message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_token;
} dl_token_req_t;
```

**Description**

The **DL_TOKEN_ACK** primitive is sent in response to the **DL_TOKEN_REQ** primitive. The **DL_TOKEN_ACK** primitive specifies the connection-response token assigned to the stream.

**Note:** This primitive applies to connection mode.

**Parameters**

- **dl_primitive**
  Specifies the **DL_TOKEN_ACK** primitive.
dl_token  Specifies the connection-response token associated with a stream. This value must be a nonzero value. After an initial DL_TOKEN_REQ primitive is issued on a stream, the data link service (DLS) provider generates the same token value for each subsequent DL_TOKEN_REQ primitive issued on the stream.

The DLS provider generates a token value for each stream upon receipt of the first DL_TOKEN_REQ primitive issued on that stream. The same token value is returned in response to all subsequent DL_TOKEN_REQ primitives issued on a stream.

**States**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Valid</th>
<th>The primitive is valid in any state in response to a DL_TOKEN_REQ primitive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New</td>
<td>The resulting state is unchanged.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Information**

The DL_TOKEN_REQ primitive.

---

**DL_TOKEN_REQ Primitive**

**Purpose**

Requests that a connection-response token be assigned to the stream and returned to the data link service (DLS) user.

**Structure**

The primitive consists of one M_PCPROTO message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong  dl_primitive;
} dl_token_req_t;
```

**Description**

The DL_TOKEN_REQ primitive requests that a connection-response token be assigned to the stream and returned to the DLS user. This token can be supplied in the DL_CONNECT_RES primitive to indicate the stream on which a connection is to be established.

**Note:** This primitive applies to connection mode.

**Parameters**

| dl_primitive | Specifies the DL_TOKEN_REQ primitive. |

**States**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Valid</th>
<th>The primitive is valid in any state in which a local acknowledgement is not pending.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New</td>
<td>The resulting state is unchanged.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Acknowledgments**

The DLS provider responds to the information request with a DL_TOKEN_ACK primitive.
Related Information
The [DL_CONNECT_RES](#) primitive, [DL_TOKEN_ACK](#) primitive.

**DL_UDERROR_IND Primitive**

**Purpose**
Informs the data link service (DLS) user that a previously sent [DL_UNITDATA_REQ](#) primitive produced an error or could not be delivered.

**Structure**
The message consists of either one [M_PROTO](#) message block or one [M_PCPROTO](#) message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_length;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_offset;
    ulong dl_unix_errno;
    ulong dl_errno;
} dl_uderror_ind_t;
```

This structure is defined in `/usr/include/sys/dlpi.h`.

**Description**
The **DL_UDERROR_IND** primitive informs the DLS user that a previously sent [DL_UNITDATA_REQ](#) primitive produced an error or could not be delivered. The primitive indicates the destination DLSAP address associated with the failed request, and returns an error value that specifies the reason for failure.

There is, however, no guarantee that such an error report will be generated for all undeliverable data units, because connectionless-mode data transfer is not a confirmed service.

**Parameters**
- **dl_primitive**
  Specifies the **DL_UDERROR_IND** primitive.
- **dl_dest_addr_length**
  Specifies the length of the DLSAP address of the destination DLS user.
- **dl_dest_addr_offset**
  Indicates where the destination DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the [M_PROTO](#) message block.
- **dl_unix_errno**
  Specifies the operating system code associated with the failure. This value should be nonzero only when the **dl_errno** parameter is set to [DL_SYSERR](#). It is used to report operating system failures that prevent the processing of a given request or response.
Indicates the Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI) error code associated with the failure. Possible values include:

**DL_BADADDR**
Indicates the DLSAP address information is invalid or is in an incorrect format.

**DL_OUTSTATE**
Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state.

**DL_UNSUPPORTED**
Indicates the DLS provider does not support the requested priority.

**DL_UNDELIVERABLE**
Indicates the request was valid but for some reason the DLS provider could not deliver the data unit (for example, due to lack of sufficient local buffering to store the data unit).

### States

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Valid</th>
<th>The primitive is valid in the <strong>DL_IDLE</strong> state.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New</td>
<td>The resulting state is unchanged.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Related Information

The **DL_UNITDATA_REQ** primitive.

---

**DL_UNBIND_REQ** Primitive

### Purpose

Requests the data link service (DLS) provider to unbind a data link service access point (DLSAP).

### Structure

The message consists of one **M_PROTO** message block, which contains the following structure:

```c
typedef struct
{
    ulong dl_primitive;
} dl_unbind_req_t;
```

This structure is defined in `/usr/include/sys/dlpi.h`.

### Description

The **DL_UNBIND_REQ** primitive requests that the DLS provider unbind the DLSAP that had been bound by a previous **DL_BIND_REQ** primitive. If one or more DLSAPs were bound to the stream with a **DL_SUBS_BIND_REQ** primitive and have not been unbound with a **DL_SUBS_UNBIND_REQ** primitive, the **DL_UNBIND_REQ** primitive unbinds all the subsequent DLSAPs for that stream along with the DLSAP bound with the previous **DL_BIND_REQ** primitive.

At the successful completion of the request, the DLS user can issue a new **DL_BIND_REQ** primitive for a potentially new DLSAP.

### Parameters

- **dl_primitive** Specifies the **DL_UNBIND_REQ** primitive.
States

Valid The primitive is valid in the DL_IDLE state.
New The resulting state is DL_UNBIND_PENDING.

Acknowledgments

Successful The DL_OK_ACK primitive is sent to the DLS user, and the resulting state is DL_UNBOUND.
Unsuccessful The DL_ERROR_ACK primitive is returned, and the resulting state is unchanged.

Error Codes

DL_OUTSTATE Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state.
DL_SYSERR Indicates a system error occurred. The system error is indicated in the DL_ERROR_ACK primitive.

Related Information


DL_UNITDATA_IND Primitive

Purpose
Conveys one data link service data unit (DLSDU) from the data link service (DLS) provider to the DLS user.

Structure
The message consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure, followed by one or more M_DATA blocks containing at least one byte of data:

typedef struct
{
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_length;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_offset;
    ulong dl_src_addr_length;
    ulong dl_src_addr_offset;
    ulong dl_group_address;
} dl_unitdata_ind_t;

This structure is defined in /usr/include/sys/dlpi.h.

Description
The DL_UNITDATA_IND primitive conveys one DLSDU from the DLS provider to the DLS user.

Note: The amount of user data that may be transferred in a single DLSDU is limited. This limit is conveyed by the dl_max_sdu parameter of the DL_INFO_ACK primitive.
Parameters

*dl_primitive* Specifies the **DL_UNITDATA_IND** primitive.

*dl_dest_addr_length* Specifies the length of the data link service access point (DLSAP) address of the destination DLS user. If the destination user is implemented using the Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI), the full DLSAP address is returned on the **DL_BIND_ACK** primitive.

*dl_dest_addr_offset* Indicates where the destination DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the **M_PROTO** message block.

*dl_src_addr_length* Specifies the length of the DLSAP address of the source DLS user.

*dl_src_addr_offset* Indicates where the source DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the **M_PROTO** message block.

*dl_group_address* Indicates the address set by the DLS provider upon receiving and passing upstream a data message when the destination address of the data message is a multicast or broadcast address.

States

**Valid** The primitive is valid in the **DL_IDLE** state.

**New** The resulting state is unchanged.

Related Information

The **DL_INFO_ACK** primitive, **DL_BIND_ACK** primitive, **DL_UDERROR_IND** primitive.

**DL_UNITDATA_REQ** Primitive

**Purpose**

Conveys one data link service data unit (DLSDU) from the data link service (DLS) user to the DLS provider for transmission to a peer DLS user.

**Structure**

The message consists of one **M_PROTO** message block, which contains the following structure, followed by one or more **M_DATA** blocks containing at least one byte of data:

```c
typedef struct
{
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_length;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_offset;
    dl_priority_t dl_priority;
} dl_unitdata_req_t;
```

This structure is defined in `/usr/include/sys/dlpi.h`.

**Description**

The **DL_UNITDATA_REQ** primitive conveys one DLSDU from the DLS user to the DLS provider for transmission to a peer DLS user.

The amount of user data that may be transferred in a single DLSDU is limited. This limit is conveyed by the *dl_max_sdu* parameter of the **DL_INFO_ACK** primitive.
Because connectionless-mode data transfer is an unacknowledged service, the DLS provider makes no guarantees of delivery of connectionless DLSDUs. It is the responsibility of the DLS user to do any necessary sequencing or retransmissions of DLSDUs in the event of a presumed loss.

**Parameters**

- **dl_primitive**: Specifies the **DL_UNITDATA_REQ** primitive.
- **dl_dest_addr_length**: Specifies the length of the data link service access point (DLSAP) address of the destination DLS user. If the destination user is implemented using the Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI), the full DLSAP address is returned on the **DL_BIND_ACK** primitive.
- **dl_dest_addr_offset**: Indicates where the destination DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the **M_PROTO** message block.
- **dl_priority**: Indicates the priority value within the supported range for this particular DLSDU.

**States**

- **Valid**: The primitive is valid in the **DL_IDLE** state.
- **New**: The resulting state is unchanged.

**Acknowledgments**

If the DLS provider accepts the data for transmission, there is no response. This does not, however, guarantee that the data will be delivered to the destination DLS user, because the connectionless-mode data transfer is not a confirmed service.

If the request is erroneous, the **DL_UDERROR_IND** primitive is returned, and the resulting state is unchanged.

If for some reason the request cannot be processed, the DLS provider may generate a **DL_UDERROR_IND** primitive to report the problem. There is, however, no guarantee that such an error report will be generated for all undeliverable data units, because connectionless-mode data transfer is not a confirmed service.

**Error Codes**

- **DL_BADADDR**: Indicates the DLSAP address information is invalid or in an incorrect format.
- **DL_BADDATA**: Indicates the amount of data in the current DLSDU exceeds the DLS provider’s DLSDU limit.
- **DL_OUTSTATE**: Indicates the primitive was issued from an invalid state.
- **DL_UNSUPPORTED**: Indicates the DLS provider does not support the requested priority.

**Related Information**

The **DL_INFO_ACK** primitive, **DL_BIND_ACK** primitive, **DL_UDERROR_IND** primitive.

**DL_XID_CON Primitive**

**Purpose**

Conveys an XID data link service data unit (DLSDU) from the data link service (DLS) provider to the DLS user in response to a **DL_XID_REQ** primitive.
Structure

The primitive consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure, followed by zero or more M_DATA blocks containing zero or more bytes of data:

typedef struct
{
    ulong  dl_primitive;
    ulong  dl_flag;
    ulong  dl_dest_addr_length;
    ulong  dl_dest_addr_offset;
    ulong  dl_src_addr_length;
    ulong  dl_src_addr_offset;
} dl_xid_con_t;

Description

The DL_XID_CON conveys an XID DLSDU from the DLS provider to the DLS user in response to a DL_XID_REQ primitive.

Note: This primitive applies to XID and test operations.

Parameters

dl_primitive
    Specifies the DL_XID_CON primitive.

dl_flag
    Indicates flag values for the request as follows:
    
    DL_POLL_FINAL
        Indicates whether the poll/final bit is set.

ndl_dest_addr_length
    Specifies the length of the data link service access point (DLSAP) address of the destination DLS user. If the destination user is implemented using the Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI), this address is the full DLSAP address returned on the DL_BIND_ACK primitive.

ndl_dest_addr_offset
    Indicates where the destination DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PROTO message block.

ndl_src_addr_length
    Specifies the length of the DLSAP address of the source DLS user.

ndl_src_addr_offset
    Indicates where the source DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the MPROTO message block.

States

Valid The primitive is valid in the DL_IDLE or DL_DATAFER state.
New The resulting state is unchanged.

Related Information

The DL_BIND_ACK primitive, DL_XID_REQ primitive.

DL_XID_IND Primitive

Purpose

Conveys an XID data link service data unit (DLSDU) from the DLS provider to the data link service (DLS) user.
Structure
The primitive consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure, followed by zero or more M_DATA blocks containing zero or more bytes of data:

typedef struct {
ulong  dl_primitive;
ulong  dl_flag;
ulong  dl_dest_addr_length;
ulong  dl_dest_addr_offset;
ulong  dl_src_addr_length;
ulong  dl_src_addr_offset;
} dl_xid_ind_t;

Description
The DL_XID_IND primitive conveys an XID DLSDU from the DLS provider to the DLS user.

Note: This primitive applies to XID and test operations.

Parameters

dl_primitive Specifies the DL_XID_IND primitive.
dl_flag Indicates flag values for the request as follows:

DL_POLL_FINAL Indicates whether the poll/final bit is set.
dl_dest_addr_length Specifies the length of the data link service access point (DLSAP) address of the destination DLS user. If the destination user is implemented using the Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI), this address is the full DLSAP address returned on the DL_BIND_ACK primitive.
dl_dest_addr_offset Indicates where the destination DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PROTO message block.
dl_src_addr_length Specifies the length of the DLSAP address of the source DLS user.
dl_src_addr_offset Indicates where the source DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PROTO message block.

States
Valid The primitive is valid in the DL_IDLE or DL_DATAXFER state.
New The resulting state is unchanged.

Related Information
The DL_BIND_ACK primitive.

DL_XID_REQ Primitive

Purpose
Conveys one XID data link service data unit (DLSDU) from the data link service (DLS) user to the DLS provider for transmission to a peer DLS user.
Structure

The message consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure, followed by zero or more M_DATA blocks containing zero or more bytes of data:

typedef struct
{
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_flag;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_length;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_offset;
} dl_xid_req_t;

This structure is defined in /usr/include/sys/dlpi.h.

Description

Conveys one XID DLSDU from the DLS user to the DLS provider for transmission to a peer DLS user.

A DL_ERROR_ACK primitive is always returned.

Note: This primitive applies to XID and test operations.

Parameters

dl_primitive Specifies the DL_XID_REQ primitive.
dl_flag Indicates flag values for the request as follows:

    DL_POLL_FINAL
Indicates whether the poll/final bit is set.
dl_dest_addr_length Specifies the length of the data link service access point (DLSAP) address of the destination DLS user. If the destination user is implemented using the Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI), this address is the full DLSAP address returned on the DL_BIND_ACK primitive.
dl_dest_addr_offset Indicates where the destination DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PROTO message block.

States

Valid The primitive is valid in the DL_IDLE or DL_DATAFER state.
New The resulting state is unchanged.

Acknowledgments

Unsuccessful The DL_ERROR_ACK primitive is returned for an invalid XID request.

Note: It is recommended that the DLS user use a timeout procedure to recover from a situation when there is no response from the peer DLS User.

Error Codes

DL_OUTSTATE The primitive was issued from an invalid state.
DL_BADADDR The DLSAP address information was invalid or was in an incorrect format.
DL_BADDATA The amount of data in the current DLSDU exceeded the DLS provider’s DLSDU limit.
DL_SYSERR A system error has occurred. The system error is indicated in the DL_ERROR_ACK primitive.
Related Information

The DL_BIND_ACK primitive, DL_ERROR_ACK primitive.

DL_XID_RES Primitive

Purpose
Conveys an XID data link service data unit (DLSDU) from the data link service (DLS) user to the DLS provider in response to a DL_XID_IND primitive.

Structure
The primitive consists of one M_PROTO message block, which contains the following structure, followed by zero or more M_DATA blocks containing zero or more bytes of data:

```c
typedef struct {
    ulong dl_primitive;
    ulong dl_flag;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_length;
    ulong dl_dest_addr_offset;
} dl_xid_res_t;
```

Description
The DL_XID_RES primitive conveys an XID DLSDU from the DLS user to the DLS provider in response to a DL_XID_IND primitive.

Note: This primitive applies to XID and test operations.

Parameters

dl_primitive Specifies the DL_XID_RES primitive.
dl_flag Indicates flag values for the request as follows:

- **DL POLL_FINAL**  Indicates whether the poll/final bit is set.

dl_dest_addr_length Specifies the length of the data link service access point (DLSAP) address of the destination DLS user. If the destination user is implemented using the Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI), this address is the full DLSAP address returned on the DL_BIND_ACK primitive.

dl_dest_addr_offset Indicates where the destination DLSAP address begins. The value of this parameter is the offset from the beginning of the M_PROTO message block.

States

Valid The primitive is valid in the DL_IDLE or DL_DATAXFER state.
New The resulting state is unchanged.

Related Information

The DL_BIND_ACK primitive.
Chapter 3. eXternal Data Representation

xdr_accepted_reply Subroutine

Purpose
Encodes RPC reply messages.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

int xdr_accepted_reply (xdrs, ar)
    XDR *xdrs;
    struct accepted_reply *ar;

Description
The xdr_accepted_reply subroutine encodes Remote Procedure Call (RPC) reply messages. The routine generates message replies similar to RPC message replies without using the RPC program.

Parameters

xdrs  Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.

ar    Specifies the address of the structure that contains the RPC reply.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
See External Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdr_array Subroutine

Purpose
Translates between variable-length arrays and their corresponding external representations.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdr_array (xdrs, arrp, sizep, maxsize, elsize, elproc)
    XDR *xdrs;
    char **arrp;
    u_int *sizep;

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1997, 2006
Description
The `xdr_array` subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between variable-length arrays and their corresponding external representations. This subroutine is called to encode or decode each element of the array.

Parameters

- **xdrs**: Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
- **arrp**: Specifies the address of the pointer to the array. If the `arrp` parameter is null when the array is being deserialized, the XDR program allocates an array of the appropriate size and sets the parameter to that array.
- **sizep**: Specifies the address of the element count of the array. The element count cannot exceed the value for the `maxsize` parameter.
- **maxsize**: Specifies the maximum number of array elements.
- **elsize**: Specifies the byte size of each of the array elements.
- **elproc**: Translates between the C form of the array elements and their external representations. This parameter is an XDR filter.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
- eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

xdr_bool Subroutine

Purpose
Translates between Booleans and their external representations.

Library
C Library (`libc.a`)

Syntax
```c
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdr_bool (xdrs, bp)
XDR *xdrs;
bool_t *bp;
```

Description
The `xdr_bool` subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between Booleans (C integers) and their external representations. When encoding data, this filter produces values of either 1 or 0.

Parameters

- **xdrs**: Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
Specifies the address of the Boolean data.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdr_bytes Subroutine

Purpose
Translates between internal counted byte arrays and their external representations.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdr_bytes (xdrs, sp, sizep, maxsize)
XDR *xdrs;
char **sp;
u_int *sizep;
u_int maxsize;

Description
The xdr_bytes subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between counted byte arrays and their external representations. This subroutine treats a subset of generic arrays, in which the size of array elements is known to be 1 and the external description of each element is built-in. The length of the byte array is explicitly located in an unsigned integer. The byte sequence is not terminated by a null character. The external representation of the bytes is the same as their internal representation.

Parameters
xdrs Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
sp Specifies the address of the pointer to the byte array.
sizep Points to the length of the byte area. The value of this parameter cannot exceed the value of the maxsize parameter.
maxsize Specifies the maximum number of bytes allowed when XDR encodes or decodes messages.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
**xdr_callhdr Subroutine**

**Purpose**
Describes RPC call header messages.

**Library**
C Library (libc.a)

**Syntax**
```
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

xdr_callhdr (xdrs, chdr)
  XDR *xdrs;
  struct rpc_msg *chdr;
```

**Description**
The `xdr_callhdr` subroutine describes Remote Procedure Call (RPC) call header messages. This subroutine generates call headers that are similar to RPC call headers without using the RPC program.

**Parameters**
- `xdrs` Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
- `chdr` Points to the structure that contains the header for the call message.

**Return Values**
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

**Related Information**
[External Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming](#) and [Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming](#) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

**xdr_callmsg Subroutine**

**Purpose**
Describes RPC call messages.

**Library**
C Library (libc.a)

**Syntax**
```
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

xdr_callmsg (xdrs, cmsg)
  XDR *xdrs;
  struct rpc_msg *cmsg;
```

**Description**
The `xdr_callmsg` subroutine describes Remote Procedure Call (RPC) call messages. This subroutine generates messages similar to RPC messages without using the RPC program.
Parameters

\textit{xdrs} \hspace{1em} \text{Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.}
\textit{cmsg} \hspace{1em} \text{Points to the structure that contains the text of the call message.}

Return Values

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information

\textit{eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming} and \textit{Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming} in \textit{AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts}.

\textbf{xdr Char Subroutine}

Purpose

Translates between C language characters and their external representations.

Library

C Library (\texttt{libc.a})

Syntax

\texttt{#include \langle rpc/xdr.h\rangle}

\begin{verbatim}
xdr_char ( \textit{xdrs}, \textit{cp})
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{XDR \*xdrs;}
\texttt{char \*cp;}

Description

The \texttt{xdr_char} subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between C language characters and their external representations.

\textbf{Note:} Encoded characters are not packed and occupy 4 bytes each. For arrays of characters, the programmer should consider using the \texttt{xdr bytes}, \texttt{xdr opaque}, or \texttt{xdr string} routine.

Parameters

\textit{xdrs} \hspace{1em} \text{Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.}
\textit{cp} \hspace{1em} \text{Points to the character.}

Return Values

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information

\textit{eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming} and \textit{Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives} in \textit{AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts}. 
xdr_destroy Macro

Purpose
Destroys the XDR stream pointed to by the xdrs parameter.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

void xdr_destroy ( xdrs);
XDR *xdrs;

Description
The xdr_destroy macro invokes the destroy routine associated with the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream pointed to by the xdrs parameter and frees the private data structures allocated to the stream. The use of the XDR stream handle is undefined after it is destroyed.

Parameters
xdrs  Points to the XDR stream handle.

Related Information
eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Non-Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdr_enum Subroutine

Purpose
Translates between a C language enumeration (enum) and its external representation.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdr_enum ( xdrs, ep);
XDR *xdrs;
enum_t *ep;

Description
The xdr_enum subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between a C language enumeration (enum) and its external representation.

Parameters
xdrs  Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
ep Specifies the address of the enumeration data.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
External Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdr_float Subroutine

Purpose
Translates between C language floats and their external representations.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdr_float (xdrs, fp)
XDR *xdrs;
float *fp;

Description
The xdr_float subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between C language floats (normalized single-precision floating-point numbers) and their external representations.

Parameters
xdrs Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
fp Specifies the address of the float.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
External Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdr_free Subroutine

Purpose
Deallocates, or frees, memory.

Library
C Library (libc.a)
Syntax
```c
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

void xdr_free (proc, objp)
    xdrproc_t proc;
    char *objp;
```

Description
The `xdr_free` subroutine is a generic freeing routine that deallocates memory. The `proc` parameter specifies the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) routine for the object being freed. The `objp` parameter is a pointer to the object itself.

Note: The pointer passed to this routine is *not* freed, but the object it points to *is* freed (recursively).

Parameters
- `proc` Points to the XDR stream handle.
- `objp` Points to the object being freed.

Related Information
- eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Non-Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

xdr_getpos Macro

Purpose
Returns an unsigned integer that describes the current position in the data stream.

Library
C Library (`libc.a`)

Syntax
```c
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

u_int xdr_getpos (xdrs)
    XDR *xdrs;
```

Description
The `xdr_getpos` macro invokes the get-position routine associated with the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream pointed to by the `xdrs` parameter. This routine returns an unsigned integer that describes the current position in the data stream.

Parameters
- `xdrs` Points to the XDR stream handle.

Return Values
This macro returns an unsigned integer describing the current position in the stream. In some XDR streams, it returns a value of -1, even though the value has no meaning.
Related Information

The `xdr_setpos` macro.

eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Non-Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdr_inline Macro

**Purpose**

Returns a pointer to the buffer of a stream pointed to by the `xdrs` parameter.

**Library**

C Library (`libc.a`)

**Syntax**

```c
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

long *x_inline (xdrs, len)
XDR *xdrs;
int len;
```

**Description**

The `xdr_inline` macro invokes the inline subroutine associated with the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream pointed to by the `xdrs` parameter. The subroutine returns a pointer to a contiguous piece of the stream’s buffer, whose size is specified by the `len` parameter. The buffer can be used for any purpose, but it is not data-portable. The `xdr_inline` macro may return a value of null if it cannot return a buffer segment of the requested size.

**Parameters**

- `xdrs`  
  Points to the XDR stream handle.
- `len`  
  Specifies the size, in bytes, of the internal buffer.

**Return Values**

This macro returns a pointer to a piece of the stream’s buffer.

**Related Information**

eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Non-Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdr_int Subroutine

**Purpose**

Translates between C language integers and their external representations.

**Library**

C Library (`libc.a`)
Syntax
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdr_int (xdrs, ip)
XDR *xdrs;
int *ip;

Description
The xdr_int subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between C language integers and their external representations.

Parameters
xdrs Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
ip Specifies the address of the integer.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdr_long Subroutine

Purpose
Translates between C language long integers and their external representations.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdr_long (xdrs, lp)
XDR *xdrs;
long *lp;

Description
The xdr_long filter primitive translates between C language long integers and their external representations. This primitive is characteristic of most eXternal Data Representation (XDR) library primitives and all client XDR routines.

Parameters
xdrs Points to the XDR stream handle. This parameter can be treated as an opaque handler and passed to the primitive routines.
lp Specifies the address of the number.
Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

When in 64 BIT mode, if the value of the long integer can not be expressed in 32 BIT, xdr_long will return a value of 0.

Related Information
[xdr_long](https://www.google.com) will return a value of 0.

Related Information
- [eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming](https://www.google.com) and [Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives](https://www.google.com) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

### xdr_opaque Subroutine

**Purpose**
Translates between fixed-size opaque data and its external representation.

**Library**
C Library (libc.a)

**Syntax**
```c
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdr_opaque(xdrs, cp, cnt);
```

**Description**
The xdr_opaque subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between fixed-size opaque data and its external representation.

**Parameters**
- `xdrs` Points to the external Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
- `cp` Specifies the address of the opaque object.
- `cnt` Specifies the size, in bytes, of the object. By definition, the actual data contained in the opaque object is not machine-portable.

**Return Values**
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

**Related Information**
[xdr_opaque](https://www.google.com) subroutine

### xdr_opaque_auth Subroutine

**Purpose**
Describes RPC authentication messages.

**Related Information**
[xdr_opaque_auth](https://www.google.com) subroutine
Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

xdr_opaque_auth (xdrs, ap)
XDR *xdrs;
struct opaque_auth *ap;

Description
The xdr_opaque_auth subroutine describes Remote Procedure Call (RPC) authentication information messages. It generates RPC authentication message data without using the RPC program.

Parameters
xdrs Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
ap Points to the structure that contains the authentication information.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
External Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdr_pmap Subroutine

Purpose
Describes parameters for portmap procedures.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

xdr_pmap (xdrs, regs)
XDR *xdrs;
struct pmap *regs;

Description
The xdr_pmap subroutine describes parameters for portmap procedures. This subroutine generates portmap parameters without using the portmap interface.

Parameters
xdrs Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
regs Points to the buffer or register where the portmap daemon stores information.
Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
The portmap daemon.

**xdr_pmaplist Subroutine**

**Purpose**
Describes a list of port mappings externally.

**Library**
C Library (libc.a)

**Syntax**
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

xdr_pmaplist (xdrs, rp)
XDR *xdrs;
struct pmaplist **rp;

**Description**
The xdr_pmaplist subroutine describes a list of port mappings externally. This subroutine generates the port mappings to Remote Procedure Call (RPC) ports without using the portmap interface.

**Parameters**

- **xdrs** Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
- **rp** Points to the structure that contains the portmap listings.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
The portmap daemon.

**xdr_pointer Subroutine**

**Purpose**
Provides pointer chasing within structures and serializes null pointers.

**Library**
C Library (libc.a)
Syntax

```c
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdr_pointer (xdrs, objpp, objsize, xdrobj)
XDR * xdrs;
char ** objpp;
u_int objsize;
xdrproc_t xdrobj;
```

Description

The `xdr_pointer` subroutine provides pointer chasing within structures and serializes null pointers. This subroutine can represent recursive data structures, such as binary trees or linked lists.

Parameters

- `xdrs`: Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
- `objpp`: Points to the character pointer of the data structure.
- `objs`ize: Specifies the size of the structure.
- `xdrobj`: Specifies the XDR filter for the object.

Return Values

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information

eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Non-Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdr_reference Subroutine

Purpose

Provides pointer chasing within structures.

Library

C Library (libc.a)

Syntax

```c
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdr_reference (xdrs, pp, size, proc)
XDR * xdrs;
char ** pp;
u_int size;
xdrproc_t proc;
```

Description

The `xdr_reference` subroutine is a filter primitive that provides pointer chasing within structures. This primitive allows the serializing, deserializing, and freeing of any pointers within one structure that are referenced by another structure.
The `xdr_reference` subroutine does not attach special meaning to a null pointer during serialization. Attempting to pass the address of a null pointer can cause a memory error. The programmer must describe data with a two-armed discriminated union. One arm is used when the pointer is valid; the other arm, when the pointer is null.

**Parameters**

- **xdrs** Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
- **pp** Specifies the address of the pointer to the structure. When decoding data, XDR allocates storage if the pointer is null.
- **size** Specifies the byte size of the structure pointed to by the `pp` parameter.
- **proc** Translates the structure between its C form and its external representation. This parameter is the XDR procedure that describes the structure.

**Return Values**

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

**Related Information**

- eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming
- Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives

---

**xdr_rejected_reply Subroutine**

**Purpose**

Describes RPC message rejection replies.

**Library**

C Library (libc.a)

**Syntax**

```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

xdr_rejected_reply (xdrs, rr)
    XDR *xdrs;
    struct rejected_reply *rr;
```

**Description**

The `xdr_rejected_reply` subroutine describes Remote Procedure Call (RPC) message rejection replies. This subroutine can be used to generate rejection replies similar to RPC rejection replies without using the RPC program.

**Parameters**

- **xdrs** Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
- **rr** Points to the structure that contains the rejected reply.

**Return Values**

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.
**xdr_replymsg Subroutine**

**Purpose**
Describes RPC message replies.

**Library**
C Library (libc.a)

**Syntax**
```
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

xdr_replymsg (xdrs, rmsg)
XDR *xdrs;
struct rpc_msg *rmsg;
```

**Description**
The `xdr_replymsg` subroutine describes Remote Procedure Call (RPC) message replies. Use this subroutine to generate message replies similar to RPC message replies without using the RPC program.

**Parameters**
- `xdrs` Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
- `rmsg` Points to the structure containing the parameters of the reply message.

**Return Values**
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

**Related Information**
- eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

**xdr_setpos Macro**

**Purpose**
Changes the current position in the XDR stream.

**Library**
C Library (libc.a)

**Syntax**
```
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdr_setpos (xdrs, pos)
XDR *xdrs;
u_int pos;
```

---

124 Technical Reference: Communications, Volume 1
Description
The \texttt{xdr_setpos} macro invokes the set-position routine associated with the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream pointed to by the \texttt{xdrs} parameter. The new position setting is obtained from the \texttt{xdr_getpos} macro. The \texttt{xdr_setpos} macro returns a value of false if the set position is not valid or if the requested position is out of bounds.

A position cannot be set in some XDR streams. Trying to set a position in such streams causes the macro to fail. This macro also fails if the programmer requests a position that is not in the stream's boundaries.

Parameters
\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{xdrs} Points to the XDR stream handle.
\item \texttt{pos} Specifies a position value obtained from the \texttt{xdr_getpos} macro.
\end{itemize}

Return Values
Upon successful completion (if the stream is positioned successfully), this macro returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
The \texttt{xdr_getpos} macro.

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{xdr_short} Subroutine
\item Purpose
Translates between C language short integers and their external representations.
\item Library
C Library (\texttt{libc.a})
\item Syntax
\begin{verbatim}
#include <rpc/xdr.h>
xdr_short (xdrs, sp)
XDR *xdrs;        
short *sp;
\end{verbatim}
\item Description
The \texttt{xdr_short} subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between C language short integers and their external representations.
\item Parameters
\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{xdrs} Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
\item \texttt{sp} Specifies the address of the short integer.
\end{itemize}
\item Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.
\end{itemize}
Related Information

See External Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdr_string Subroutine

Purpose
Translates between C language strings and their external representations.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
```
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdr_string (xdrs, sp, maxsize)
```

XDR *xdrs;
char **sp;
int maxsize;

Description
The xdr_string subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between C language strings and their corresponding external representations. Externally, strings are represented as sequences of ASCII characters, while internally, they are represented with character pointers.

Parameters
- **xdrs**: Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
- **sp**: Specifies the address of the pointer to the string.
- **maxsize**: Specifies the maximum length of the string allowed during encoding or decoding. This value is set in a protocol. For example, if a protocol specifies that a file name cannot be longer than 255 characters, then a string cannot exceed 255 characters.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information

See External Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdr_u_char Subroutine

Purpose
Translates between unsigned C language characters and their external representations.

Library
C Library (libc.a)
Syntax

```
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdr_u_char (xdrs, ucp)
XDR *xdrs;
char *ucp;
```

**Description**

The `xdr_u_char` subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between unsigned C language characters and their external representations.

**Parameters**

- **xdrs**: Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
- **ucp**: Points to an unsigned integer.

**Return Values**

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

**Related Information**

[External Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming](#) and [Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives](#) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

**xdr_u_int Subroutine**

**Purpose**

Translates between C language unsigned integers and their external representations.

**Library**

C Library (`libc.a`)

**Syntax**

```
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdr_u_int (xdrs, up)
XDR *xdrs;
u_int *up;
```

**Description**

The `xdr_u_int` subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between C language unsigned integers and their external representations.

**Parameters**

- **xdrs**: Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
- **up**: Specifies the address of the unsigned long integer.

**Return Values**

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.
Related Information

Related Information: eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdr_u_long Subroutine

Purpose
Translates between C language unsigned long integers and their external representations.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

void xdr_u_long (xdrs, ulp);

xdrs XDR stream handle.
ulp Address of the unsigned long integer.

Description
The xdr_u_long subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between C language unsigned long integers and their external representations.

Parameters
xdrs Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
ulp Specifies the address of the unsigned long integer.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
Related Information: eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdr_u_short Subroutine

Purpose
Translates between C language unsigned short integers and their external representations.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

void xdr_u_short (xdrs, usp);

xdrs XDR stream handle.
usp Address of the unsigned short integer.

Description
The xdr_u_short subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between C language unsigned short integers and their external representations.

Parameters
xdrs Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
usp Specifies the address of the unsigned short integer.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.
Description
The **xdr_u_short** subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between C language unsigned short integers and their external representations.

Parameters
---

- **xdrs** | Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
- **usp** | Specifies the address of the unsigned short integer.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
- **eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming** and **Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives** in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

**xdr_union Subroutine**

Purpose
Translates between discriminated unions and their external representations.

Library
C Library (**libc.a**)

Syntax
```c
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdr_union (xdrs, dscmp, unp, armchoices, defaultarm)
XDR * xdrs;
enum_t * dscmp;
char * unp;
struct xdr_discrim * armchoices;
xdrproc_t (*defaultarm);
```

Description
The **xdr_union** subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between discriminated C unions and their corresponding external representations. It first translates the discriminant of the union located at the address pointed to by the **dscmp** parameter. This discriminant is always an **enum_t** value. Next, this subroutine translates the union located at the address pointed to by the **unp** parameter.

The **armchoices** parameter is a pointer to an array of **xdr_discrim** structures. Each structure contains an ordered pair of parameters [value, proc]. If the union’s discriminant is equal to the associated value, then the specified process is called to translate the union. The end of the **xdr_discrim** structure array is denoted by a routine having a null value. If the discriminant is not found in the choices array, then the **defaultarm** structure is called (if it is not null).

Parameters
---

- **xdrs** | Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
- **dscmp** | Specifies the address of the union’s discriminant. The discriminant is an enumeration (**enum_t**) value.
The `xdr_vector` subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between fixed-length arrays and their corresponding external representations.

**Parameters**

- `xdrs`: Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
- `arrp`: Specifies the pointer to the array.
- `size`: Specifies the element count of the array.
- `elsize`: Specifies the size of each of the array elements.
- `elproc`: Translates between the C form of the array elements and their external representation. This is an XDR filter.

**Return Values**

Upon successful completion, this routine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

**Related Information**

eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
## xdr_void Subroutine

### Purpose
Supplies an XDR subroutine to the RPC system without transmitting data.

### Library
C Library (libc.a)

### Syntax
```c
#include <rpc/xdr.h>
xdr_void ()
```

### Description
The `xdr_void` subroutine has no function parameters. It is passed to other Remote Procedure Call (RPC) subroutines that require a function parameter, but does not transmit data.

### Return Values
This subroutine always returns a value of 1.

### Related Information
[xExternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming](#) and [Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives](#) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

## xdr_wrapstring Subroutine

### Purpose
Calls the `xdr_string` subroutine.

### Library
C Library (libc.a)

### Syntax
```c
#include <rpc/xdr.h>
xdr_wrapstring (xdrs, sp);
XDR *xdrs;
char **sp;
```

### Description
The `xdr_wrapstring` subroutine is a primitive that calls the `xdr_string` subroutine `(xdrs, sp, MAXUN.UNSIGNED)`, where the `MAXUN.UNSIGNED` value is the maximum value of an unsigned integer. The `xdr_wrapstring` subroutine is useful because the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) package passes a maximum of two eXternal Data Representation (XDR) subroutines as parameters, and the `xdr_string` subroutine requires three.

### Parameters
- `xdrs` Points to the XDR stream handle.
- `sp` Specifies the address of the pointer to the string.
Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
The xdr_string subroutine.

Related Information
The eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

Related Information
Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdr_authunix_parms Subroutine

Purpose
Describes UNIX-style credentials.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>
xdr_authunix_parms (xdrs, app)
XDR *xdrs;
struct authunix_parms *app;

Description
The xdr_authunix_parms subroutine describes UNIX-style credentials. This subroutine generates credentials without using the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) authentication program.

Parameters
xdrs Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
app Points to the structure that contains the UNIX-style authentication credentials.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
The eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdr_double Subroutine

Purpose
Translates between C language double-precision numbers and their external representations.
Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdr_double (xdrs, dp)
XDR *xdrs;
double *dp;

Description
The xdr_double subroutine is a filter primitive that translates between C language double-precision numbers and their external representations.

Parameters
xdrs Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
dp Specifies the address of the double-precision number.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Understanding XDR Library Filter Primitives in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xdrmem_create Subroutine

Purpose
Initializes in local memory the XDR stream pointed to by the xdrs parameter.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/xdr.h>
void
xdrmem_create (xdrs, addr, size, op)
XDR *xdrs;
char *addr;
u_int size;
enum xdr_op op;

Description
The xdrmem_create subroutine initializes in local memory the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream pointed to by the xdrs parameter. The XDR stream data is written to or read from a chunk of memory at the location specified by the addr parameter.
Parameters

- **xdrs**: Points to the XDR stream handle.
- **addr**: Points to the memory where the XDR stream data is written to or read from.
- **size**: Specifies the length of the memory in bytes.
- **op**: Specifies the XDR direction. The possible choices are **XDR_ENCODE**, **XDR_DECODE**, or **XDR_FREE**.

Related Information

- eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming in **AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts**.
- Understanding XDR Non-Filter Primitives in **AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts**.

xdrrec_create Subroutine

**Purpose**

Provides an XDR stream that can contain long sequences of records.

**Library**

C Library (**libc.a**)

**Syntax**

```c
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

void xdrrec_create (xdrs, sendsize, recvsize, handle, readit, writeit)
    XDR *xdrs;
    u_int sendsize;
    u_int recvsize;
    char *handle;
    int (*readit) (), (*writeit) ();
```

**Description**

The *xdrrec_create* subroutine provides an eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream that can contain long sequences of records and handle them in both the encoding and decoding directions. The record contents contain data in XDR form. The routine initializes the XDR stream object pointed to by the *xdrs* parameter.

**Note:** This XDR stream implements an intermediate record stream. As a result, additional bytes are in the stream to provide record boundary information.

**Parameters**

- **xdrs**: Points to the XDR stream handle.
- **sendsize**: Sets the size of the input buffer to which data is written. If 0 is specified, the buffers are set to the system defaults.
- **recvsize**: Sets the size of the output buffer from which data is read. If 0 is specified, the buffers are set to the system defaults.
- **handle**: Points to the input/output buffer's handle, which is opaque.
- **readit**: Points to the subroutine to call when a buffer needs to be filled. Similar to the *read* system call.
- **writeit**: Points to the subroutine to call when a buffer needs to be flushed. Similar to the *write* system call.
**Related Information**

- [Related Information](#)
- [Understanding XDR Non-Filter Primitives](#)

---

### xdrrec_endofrecord Subroutine

**Purpose**

Causes the current outgoing data to be marked as a record.

**Library**

C Library (`libc.a`)

**Syntax**

```c
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdrrec_endofrecord (xdrs, sendnow)
XDR *xdrs;
bool_t sendnow;
```

**Description**

The `xdrrec_endofrecord` subroutine causes the current outgoing data to be marked as a record and can only be invoked on streams created by the `xdrrec_create` subroutine. If the value of the `sendnow` parameter is nonzero, the data in the output buffer is marked as a completed record and the output buffer is optionally written out.

**Parameters**

- `xdrs` Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.
- `sendnow` Specifies whether the record should be flushed to the output `tcp` stream.

**Return Values**

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

**Related Information**

The `xdrrec_create` subroutine.

---

### xdrrec_eof Subroutine

**Purpose**

Checks the buffer for an input stream that indicates the end of file (EOF).
Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdrrec_eof (xdrs)
XDR *xdrs;

Description
The xdrrec_eof subroutine checks the buffer for an input stream to see if the stream reached the end of the file. This subroutine can only be invoked on streams created by the xdrrec_create subroutine.

Parameters
xdrs Points to the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) stream handle.

Return Values
After consuming the rest of the current record in the stream, this subroutine returns a value of 1 if the stream has no more input, and a value of 0 otherwise.

Related Information
The xdrrec_create subroutine.

xdrrec_skiprecord Subroutine

Purpose
Causes the position of an input stream to move to the beginning of the next record.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/xdr.h>

xdrrec_skiprecord (xdrs)
XDR *xdrs;

Description
The xdrrec_skiprecord subroutine causes the position of an input stream to move past the current record boundary and onto the beginning of the next record of the stream. This subroutine can only be invoked on streams created by the xdrrec_create subroutine. The xdrrec_skiprecord subroutine tells the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) implementation that the rest of the current record in the stream's input buffer should be discarded.
Parameters

\texttt{xdrs} \hspace{1cm} Points to the XDR stream handle.

Return Values

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information

The \texttt{xdrec\_create} subroutine.

\texttt{eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming} in \textit{AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts}.

\texttt{Understanding XDR Non-Filter Primitives} in \textit{AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts}.

\texttt{xdrstdio\_create Subroutine}

Purpose

Initializes the XDR data stream pointed to by the \texttt{xdrs} parameter.

Library

C Library (\texttt{libc.a})

Syntax

\begin{verbatim}
#include <stdio.h>
#include <rpc/xdr.h>
void xdrstdio_create (xdrs, file, op)
XDR *xdrs;
FILE *file;
enum xdr_op op;
\end{verbatim}

Description

The \texttt{xdrstdio\_create} subroutine initializes the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) data stream pointed to by the \texttt{xdrs} parameter. The XDR stream data is written to or read from the standard input/output stream pointed to by the \texttt{file} parameter.

\textbf{Note:} The destroy routine associated with such an XDR stream calls the \texttt{fflush} function on the \texttt{file} stream, but never calls the \texttt{fclose} function.

Parameters

\texttt{xdrs} \hspace{1cm} Points to the XDR stream handle to initialize.

\texttt{file} \hspace{1cm} Points to the standard I/O device that data is written to or read from.

\texttt{op} \hspace{1cm} Specifies an XDR direction. The possible choices are \texttt{XDR\_ENCODE}, \texttt{XDR\_DECODE}, or \texttt{XDR\_FREE}.

Related Information

\texttt{eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming} in \textit{AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts}.

\texttt{Understanding XDR Non-Filter Primitives} in \textit{AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts}. 
Chapter 4. AIX 3270 Host Connection Program (HCON)

**cfxfer Function**

**Purpose**
Checks the status of the programmatic File Transfer.

**Library**
File Transfer Library (libfxfer.a)

**C Syntax**
```c
#include <fxfer.h>

cfxfer (sxfer)
struct fxs *sxfer;
```

**Pascal Syntax**
```
%include fxfer.inc
%include fxhfile.inc

function pcfxfer (var Sxfer : fxs) : integer; external;
```

**FORTRAN Syntax**
```
INTEGER FCFXFER
EXTERNAL FCFXFER

CHARACTER*XX SRC, DST, TIME

INTEGER BYTCNT, STAT

INTEGER ERRNO

RC = FCFXFER (SRC, DST, BYTCNT,
+ STAT, ERRNO, TIME, RC)
```

**Description**
The *cfxfer* function returns the status of the file transfer request made by the *fxfer* function. This function must be called once for each file transfer request. The *cfxfer* function places the status in the structure specified by the *sxfer* parameter for C and Pascal. For FORTRAN, status is placed in each corresponding parameter.

Each individual file transfer and file transfer status completes the requests in the order the requests are made. If multiple asynchronous requests are made:
- To a single host session, the *cfxfer* function returns the status of each request in the same order the requests are made.
- To more than one host session, the *cfxfer* function returns the status of each request in the order it is completed.

If the file transfer is run asynchronously and the *cfxfer* function is immediately called, the function returns a status not available -2 code. An application performing a file transfer should not call the *cfxfer* function
until an error -1 or ready status 0 is returned. The application program can implement the status check in a **FOR LOOP** or a **WHILE LOOP** and wait for a -1 or 0 to occur.

The **cfxfer** function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).

### C Parameters

**sxfer** Specifies an **fxs** structure as defined in the **fxfer.h** file. The **fxs** C structure is:

```c
define
struct fxs {
  int fxs_bytcnt;
  char *fxs_src;
  char *fxs_dst;
  char *fxs_ctime;
  int fxs_stat;
  int fxs_errno;
}
```

### Pascal Parameters

**Sfxfer** Specifies a record of type **fxs** as defined within the **fxfer.inc** file. The Pascal **fxs** record format is:

```pascal
fxs = record
  fxs_bytcnt : integer;
  fxs_src : stringptr;
  fxs_dst : stringptr;
  fxs_ctime : stringptr;
  fxs_stat : integer;
  fxs_errno : integer;
end;
```

### C and Pascal fxs Field Descriptions

- **fxc_bytcnt** Indicates the number of bytes transferred.
- **fxc_src** Points to a static buffer containing the source file name. The static buffer is overwritten by each call.
- **fxc_dst** Points to a static buffer containing the destination file name. The static buffer is overwritten by each call.
- **fxs_ctime** Specifies the time the destination file is created relative to Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) midnight on January 1, 1970.
- **fxs_stat** Specifies the status of the file transfer request.
- **fxs_errno** Specifies the error number that results from an error in a system call.

### FORTRAN Parameters

- **SRC** Specifies a character array of **XX** length containing the source file name.
- **DST** Specifies a character array of **XX** length containing the destination file name.
- **BYTCNT** Indicates the number of bytes transferred.
- **STAT** Specifies the status of the file transfer request.
- **ERRNO** Specifies the error number that results from an error in a system call.
- **TIME** Specifies the time the destination file is created.
Return Values

The \texttt{cfxf} function returns the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Ready status-success. The structure member \texttt{fxs.fxs_stat} contains status of the \texttt{cfxf} function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-1</td>
<td>Error status. Failure of \texttt{cfxf} function. The \texttt{fxs} structure has NOT been set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Status is not yet available.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The \texttt{fx\_statxxxxxx} status file contains the status of each file transfer request made by the application program. The \texttt{cfxf} function fills in the \texttt{xxxxxx} portion of the \texttt{fx\_stat} file based on random letter generation and places the file in the \texttt{$HOME} directory.

Files

\texttt{$HOME/fx\_statxxxxxx} Temporary file used for status

Related Information

The \texttt{cfxf} command.

The \texttt{cfxf} function, \texttt{g32\_cfxf} function.

\textbf{cfxf Function}

\textbf{Purpose}

Initiates a file transfer from within a program.

\textbf{Library}

File Transfer Library (\texttt{libfxfer.a})

\textbf{C Syntax}

\begin{verbatim}
#include <fxfer.h>

fxfer (xfer*, sessionname) 
struct fxc *xfer;
char *sessionname;
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Pascal Syntax}

\begin{verbatim}
%include /usr/include/fxfer.inc
%include /usr/include/fxhfile.inc
%include /usr/include/fxconst.inc

function pfxfer
(var xfer : fxc; sessionname : stringptr) :
integer; external;
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{FORTRAN Syntax}

\begin{verbatim}
INTEGER FFXFER

EXTERNAL FFXFER
\end{verbatim}
CHARACTER*XX SRCF, DSTF, LOGID, INPUTFLD, CODESET, SESSIONNAME

INT FLAGS, RECL, BLKSIZE, SPACE, INCR, UNIT, RC

RC = FFXFER (SRCF, DSTF, LOGID, FLAGS, RECL, BLKSIZE)
+SPACE, INCR, UNIT, INPUTFLD, CODESET, SESSIONNAME)

Description
The fXfer function transfers a file from a specified source to a specified destination. The file transfer is accomplished as follows:
- In the C or Pascal language, the fXfer or pXfer function transfers a file specified by the fxc_src variable to the file specified by the fxc_dst variable. Both variables are defined in the fxc structure.
- In the FORTRAN language, the FFXFER function transfers a file specified by the SRCF variable to the file specified by the DSTF variable.

The fXfer function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).

The fXfer function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a host.

This function requires one of the following operating system environments to be installed on the mainframe host: VM/SP CMS, VM/XA CMS, MVS/SP™ TSO/E, MVS/XA™, TSO/E, CICS/VS, VSE/ESA™, or VSE/SP.

This function requires that the System/370 Host-Supported File Transfer Program (IND$FILE or its equivalent) be installed on the mainframe host.

The file names are character strings. The local-system file names must be in operating system format. The host file names must conform to the host naming convention, which must be one of the following formats:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VM/CMS</td>
<td>FileName FileType FileMode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MVS/TSO</td>
<td>DatasetName [(MemberName)][\Password]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CICS/VS</td>
<td>FileName (up to 8 characters)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSE/ESA</td>
<td>FileName (up to 8 characters)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The VSE host is not supported in a double-byte character set (DBCS) environment.

C Parameters

fXfer Specifies a pointer to the fxc structure defined in the fxfer.h file.

sessionname Points to the name of a session. The session profile for that session specifies the host connectivity to be used by the file transfer programming interface. The session name is a single character in the range of a through z. Capital letters are interpreted as lowercase letters. Session variables are defined in a HCON session profile. If the value of the sessionname parameter is set to a null value, the fXfer function assumes you are running in an 789 subshell.

Pascal Parameters

fXfer Specifies a record of fxc type within the fxfer.inc file.
Points to the name of a session. The session profile indicated by the `sessionname` parameter defines the host connectivity to be used by the file transfer programming interface. The session name is a single character in the range of a through z. Capital letters are interpreted as lowercase letters. Session variables are defined in an HCON session profile. If the `sessionname` parameter is set to `char(0)`, the `pfxfer` function assumes you are running in an e789 subshell.

**FORTRAN Parameters**

- **SRCF**: Specifies a character array of XX length containing the source file name.
- **DSTF**: Specifies a character array of XX length containing the destination file name.
- **LOGID**: Specifies a character array of XX length containing the host logon ID.
- **SESSIONNAME**: Points to the name of a session. The `SESSIONNAME` parameter names a session profile that defines the host connectivity to be used by the file transfer programming interface. The session name is a single character in the range of a through z. Capital letters are interpreted as lowercase letters. Session variables are defined in a HCON session profile. If the `SESSIONNAME` parameter is set to `char(0)`, the `FFXFER` function assumes you are running in an e789 subshell.
- **FLAGS**: Contains the option flags value, which is the sum of the desired option values:
  - 1 Upload
  - 2 Download
  - 4 Translate on
  - 8 Translate carriage return line feed
  - 16 Replace
  - 32 Append
  - 64 Queue
  - 128 Fixed-length records
  - 256 Variable-length records
  - 512 Undefined length (TSO only)
  - 1024 Host system TSO
  - 2048 Host system CMS
  - 4096 Host system CICS/VSE
  - 8192 Host system VSE/ESA
- **RECL**: Specifies the logical record length.
- **BLKSIZE**: Specifies the block size.
- **SPACE**: Specifies the allocation space.
- **INCR**: Specifies the allocation space increment.
- **UNIT**: Specifies the unit of allocation:
  - -1 Specifies the number of TRACKS.
  - -2 Specifies the number of CYLINDERS.

A positive number indicates the number of bytes to allocate.

- **INPUTFLD**: Specifies the host input table field.
CODESET
Specifies an alternate code set to use for ASCII to EBCDIC and EBCDIC to ASCII translations:

CHAR(0)
Uses current operating-system ASCII code page.

IBM-932
Uses IBM® code page 932 for translation in a DBCS environment.

ISO8859-1
Uses ISO 8859-1 Latin alphabet number 1 code page.

ISO8859-7
Uses ISO 8859-7 Greek alphabet.

ISO8859-9
Uses ISO 8859-9 Turkish alphabet.

IBM-eucJP
Uses IBM Extended UNIX® code for translation in the Japanese Language environment.

IBM-eucKR
Translates Korean language.

IBM-eucTW
Translates traditional Chinese language.

Notes:
1. All FORTRAN character array strings must be terminated by a null character, as in the following example:
   SRCF = 'rtfile'//CHAR(0)
2. The VSE host system is not supported in a DBCS environment.
3. The unique DBCS file-transfer flags are not supported by this function.

Return Values
If the fxfer function is called synchronously, it returns a value of 0 when the transfer is completed. The application program can then issue a cfxfer function call to obtain the status of the file transfer.

If the fxfer function is called asynchronously, it returns 0. The application program can issue a cfxfer function call to determine when the file transfer is completed and to obtain the status of the file transfer. If the status cannot be reported by the cfxfer function due to an I/O error on the fx_statxxxxxx status file, the cfxfer function returns a -1. If the status is not ready, the cfxfer function returns a -2.

The fx_statxxxxxx status file contains the status of each file transfer request made by the application program. The fxfer function fills in the xxxxxx portion of the fx_stat file based on random letter generation and places the file in the $HOME directory.

Related Information
The file-transfer check status function is the cfxfer function.

g32_alloc Function

Purpose
Initiates interaction with a host application.
Libraries

HCON Library
C (libg3270.a)
Pascal (libg3270p.a)
FORTRAN (libg3270f.a)

C Syntax

```c
#include <g32_api.h>

struct g32_api *as;
char *applname;
int mode;

g32_alloc (as, applname, mode)
```

Pascal Syntax

```pascal
function g32alloc (var as: g32_api;
applname: stringptr;
mode: integer): integer;
```

FORTRAN Syntax

```fortran
EXTERNAL G32ALLOC

INTEGER RC, MODE, AS(9), G32ALLOC

CHARACTER* XX NAME

RC = G32ALLOC (AS, NAME, MODE)
```

Description

The `g32_alloc` function initiates interaction with a host application and sets the API mode. The host application program is invoked by entering its name, using the 3270 operatorless interface.

If invocation of the host program is successful and the mode is `API/API` control of the session is passed to the application. If the mode is `API/3270` the emulator retains control of the session. The application communicates with the session by way of the 3270 operatorless interface.

The `g32_alloc` function may be used only after a successful open using the `g32_open` or `g32_openx` function. The `g32_alloc` function must be issued before using any of the message or 3270 operatorless interface functions.

HCON application programs using the Pascal language interface must include and link both the C and Pascal libraries. Applications programs using the FORTRAN language for the HCON API must include and link both the C and FORTRAN libraries.

The `g32_alloc` function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).

The `g32_alloc` function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a host.

CICS® and VSE do not support `API/API` or `API/API_T` modes.

C Parameters

`as` Specifies a pointer to a `g32_api` structure. Status information is returned in this structure.
Specifies a pointer to the name of the host application to be executed. This string should be the entire string necessary to start the application, including any necessary parameters or options. When specifying an applname parameter, place the host application name in double quotes ("Testload") or specify a pointer to a character string.

Specifies the API mode. The types of modes that can be used are contained in the \texttt{g32\_api.h} file and are defined as follows:

**MODE\_3270**

The API/3270 mode lets local system applications act like a 3270 operatorless interface. Applications in this mode use the 3270 operatorless interface to communicate with the host application. In API/3270 mode, if the value of the \texttt{applname} parameter is a null pointer, no host application is started.

**MODE\_API**

The API/API mode is a private protocol for communicating with host applications that assume they are communicating with a program. Applications in this mode use the message interface to communicate with host applications using the host API. The API program must use HCON's API and must have a corresponding host API program that uses HCON's host API for the programs to communicate.

\textbf{Note:} When a session is in this mode, all activity to the screen is stopped until this mode is exited. API/3270 mode functions cannot be used while in the API/API mode. The keyboard is locked.

**MODE\_API\_T**

The API\_T mode is the same as the \texttt{MODE\_API} type except this mode translates messages received from the host from EBCDIC to ASCII, and translates messages sent to the host from ASCII to EBCDIC. The translation tables used are determined by the language characteristic in the HCON session profile.

\textbf{Note:} A host application started in API/API or API/API\_T mode must issue a \texttt{G32ALLOC} function as the API waits for an acknowledgment from the host application, when starting an API/API mode session.

### Pascal Parameters

\texttt{as} Specifies the \texttt{g32\_api} structure.

\texttt{applname} Specifies a stringptr containing the name of the host application to be executed. This string should be the entire string necessary to start the host application, including any necessary parameters and options. A null application name is valid in 3270 mode.

\texttt{mode} Specifies the \texttt{mode} desired for the session.

### FORTRAN Parameters

\texttt{AS} Specifies the \texttt{g32\_api} equivalent structure as an array of integers.

\texttt{NAME} Specifies the name of the application that is to execute on the host.

\texttt{MODE} Specifies the desired \texttt{mode} for the API.

### Return Values

0 Indicates successful completion.

-1 Indicates an error has occurred.

- The \texttt{errcode} field in the \texttt{g32\_api} structure is set to an error code identifying the error.
- The \texttt{xerrinfo} field can be set to give more information about the error.

### Examples

The following example illustrates the use of the \texttt{g32\_alloc} function in C language:
```c
#include <g32_api.h>  /* API include file */

main ()
{
    struct g32_api *as, asx;  /* API status */
    int session_mode = MODE_API  /* api session mode. Other
                                  modes are MODE_API_T
                                  and MODE_3270 */

    char appl_name[20]  /* name of the application to run on the host */
    int return;  /* return code */

    strcpy (appl_name, "APITESTN");  /* name of host application */
    return = g32_alloc(as, appl_name, session_mode);

    return = g32_dealloc(as);
}

---

g32_close Function

Purpose
Detaches from a session.

Libraries
HCON Library
C (libg3270.a)
Pascal (libg3270p.a)
FORTRAN (libg3270f.a)

C Syntax
#include <g32_api.h>

g32_close (as)
struct g32_api *as;

Pascal Syntax
function g32close (var as : g32_api) : integer; external;

FORTRAN Syntax
EXTERNAL G32CLOSE

INTEGER AS(9), G32CLOSE
RC = G32CLOSE(AS)

Description
The g32_close function disconnects from a 3270 session. If the g32_open or g32_openx
function created a session, the g32_close function logs off from the host and terminates the session. A session must be
terminated (using the g32_dealloc function) before issuing the g32_close function.
```
HCON application programs using the Pascal language interface must include and link both the C and Pascal libraries. Application programs using the FORTRAN language for the HCON API must include and link both the C and FORTRAN libraries.

The **g32_close** function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).

The **g32_close** function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a host.

### C Parameters

**as** Specifies a pointer to a **g32_api** structure. Status is returned in this structure.

### Pascal Parameters

**as** Specifies a **g32_api** structure.

### FORTRAN Parameters

**AS** Specifies the **g32_api** equivalent structure as an array of integers.

### Return Values

0 Indicates successful completion.

-1 Indicates an error has occurred.

  - The **errcode** field in the **g32_api** structure is set to an error code identifying the error.
  - The **xerrinfo** field can be set to give more information about the error.

### Examples

The following example fragment illustrates the use of the **g32_close** function in C language:

```c
#include <g32_api.h>    /* API include file */
main()
{
  struct g32_api *as;  /* g32 structure */
  int return;

  return = g32_close(as);
}
```

### g32_dealloc Function

#### Purpose

Ends interaction with a host application.

#### Libraries

**HCON Library**

C (*libg3270.a*)

Pascal (*libg3270p.a*)
FORTRAN (libg3270f.a)

C Syntax
#include <g32_api.h>

g32_dealloc( as
struct g32_api *as;

Pascal Syntax
function g32deal (var as : g32_api) : integer; external;

FORTRAN Syntax
EXTERNAL G32DEALLOC

INTEGER AS(9), G32DEALLOC
RC = G32DEALLOC(AS)

Description
The g32_dealloc function ends interaction with the operating system application and the host application. The function releases control of the session.

HCON application programs using the Pascal language interface must include and link both the C and Pascal libraries. Application programs using the FORTRAN language for the HCON API must include and link both the C and FORTRAN libraries.

The g32_dealloc function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).

The g32_dealloc function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a host.

C Parameters

as    Specifies a pointer to a g32_api structure. Status is returned in this structure.

Pascal Parameters

as    Specifies the g32_api structure.

FORTRAN Parameters

AS    Specifies the g32_api equivalent structure as an array of integers.

Return Values

0     Indicates successful completion.
-1     Indicates an error has occurred.
     • The errcode field in the g32_api structure is set to an error code identifying the error.
     • The xerrinfo field can be set to give more information about the error.
Examples

The following example illustrates the use of the `g32_dealloc` function in C language:

```c
#include<g32_api.h>    /* API include file */
main()
{
    struct g32_api *as, asx; /* asx is statically defined */
    int session_mode = MODE_API; /* api session mode. Other
    modes are MODE_API_T */
    char appl_name [20]; /* name of the application to
    run on the host */
    int return;     /* return code */
    .
    .
    strcpy (appl_name, "APITESTN"); /* name of host application */
    return = g32_alloc(as, appl_name, session_mode);
    .
    .
    return = g32_dealloc(as);
    .
    .
}
```

---

**g32.fxfer Function**

**Purpose**

Invokes a file transfer.

**Libraries**

HCON Library

File Transfer Library (libfxfer.a)

C (libg3270.a)

Pascal (libg3270p.a)

Fortran (libg3270f.a)

**C Syntax**

```c
#include<g32_api.h>
#include<fxfer.h>

g32_fxfer (as, xfer)
struct g32_api *as;
struct fxc *xfer;
```

**Pascal Syntax**

```pascal
const
%include /usr/include/g32const.inc
%include /usr/include/g32fxconst.inc
type
%include /usr/include/g32types.inc
%include/usr/include/fxhfile.inc
function g32fxfer(var as : g32_api; var xfer : fxc) : integer; external;
```
FORTRAN Syntax

INTEGER G32FXFER, RC, AS(9)
EXTERNAL G32FXFER
CHARACTER*XX SRCF, DSTF, INPUTFLD, CODESET
INTEGER FLAGS,RECL,BLKSIZE,SPACE,INCR,UNIT

RC = G32FXFER(AS,SRCF, DSTF, FLAGS, RECL, BLKSIZE, SPACE, + 
* INCR, UNIT, INPUTFLD, CODESET)

Description

The g32_fxfer function allows a file transfer to take place within an API program without the API program having to invoke a [g32_close] and relinquish the link. The file transfer is run in a programmatic fashion, meaning the user must set up the flag options, the source file name, and the destination file name using either the programmatic [fxfer fxc] structure for C and Pascal or the numerous variables for FORTRAN. The g32_fxfer function will detach from the session without terminating it, run the specified file transfer, and then reattach to the session.

If a [g32_alloc] function has been issued before invoking the g32_fxfer command, be sure that the corresponding [g32_dealloc] function is incorporated into the program before the g32_fxfer function is called.

The status of the file transfer can be checked by using the [cfxfer] file-transfer status check function after the g32_fxfer function has been invoked.

HCON application programs using the Pascal language interface must include and link both the C and Pascal libraries. Application programs using the FORTRAN language for the HCON API must include and link both the C and FORTRAN libraries.

The g32_fxfer function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).

The g32_fxfer function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a host.

This function requires that the Host-Supported File Transfer Program (IND$FILE or its equivalent) be installed on the host.

C Parameters

as Specifies a pointer to the g32_api structure. Status is returned in this structure.

xfer Specifies a pointer to the fxc structure defined in the fxfer.h file.

Pascal Parameters

as Specifies a record of type g32_api.

xfer Specifies a record of type fxc within the fxfer.inc file.

FORTRAN Parameters

AS Specifies the g32_api equivalent structure as an array of integers.

SRCF Specifies a character array of XX length containing the source file name.

DSTF Specifies a character array of XX length containing the destination file name.
**FLAGS**

Contains the option flags value, which is the sum of the desired option values listed below:

- **1** Upload
- **2** Download
- **4** Translate On
- **8** Translate Carriage Return Line Feed
- **16** Replace
- **32** Append
- **64** Queue. This option may be specified by the user, but it is blocked by the G32FXFER command.
- **128** Fixed Length Records
- **256** Variable Length Records
- **512** Undefined Length (TSO only)
- **1024** Host System TSO
- **2048** Host System CMS
- **4096** Host System CICS/VS
- **8192** Host System VSE/ESA

**RECL**

Specifies the logical record length.

**BLKSIZE**

Specifies the block size (TSO only).

**SPACE**

Specifies the allocation space (TSO only).

**INCR**

Specifies the allocation space increment (TSO only).

**UNIT**

Specifies the unit of allocation (TSO only), which is:

- **-1** Number of TRACKS
- **-2** Number of CYLINDERS.

A positive number indicates the number of blocks to be allocated.

**INPUTFLD**

Specifies the host input table field.
CODESET Specifies an alternate code set to use for ASCII to EBCDIC and EBCDIC to ASCII translations. The following code sets are supported:

CHAR(0) Uses current operating system ASCII code page.

IBM850 Uses IBM code page 850 for translation in a single byte code set (SBCS) environment.

IBM932 Uses IBM code page 932 for translation in a double byte code set (DBCS) environment.

ISO8859-1 Uses ISO 8859-1 Latin alphabet number 1 code page.

ISO8859-7 Uses ISO 8859-7 Greek alphabet.

ISO8859-9 Uses ISO 8859-9 Turkish alphabet.


IBMeucKR Korean language.

IBMeucTW Traditional Chinese language.

Notes:
1. All FORTRAN character array strings must be null-terminated. For example:
   SRCF = 'rtfile'//CHAR(0)
2. The Host System VSE is not supported in the DBCS environment.
3. The unique DBCS file transfer flags are not supported by this function.

Return Values
0 Indicates successful completion. The user may call the cfxfcr function to get the status of the file transfer.
1 Indicates the file transfer did not complete successfully. The user may call the cfxfcr function to get the status of the file transfer.
-1 Indicates the g32_fxfer command failed while accessing the link. The errcode field in the g32_api structure is set to an error code identifying the error. The xerrinfo field can be set to give more information about the error.

Examples
The following example fragment illustrates the use of the g32_fxfer function in an api_3270 mode program in C language:

```c
#include <g32_api.h> /* API include file */
#include <fxfer.h>    /* file transfer include file */
main()
{
    struct g32_api *as, asx;
    struct fxc *xfer; struct fxs sxfer;
    int session_mode=MODE_3270;
    char *aixfile="/etc/motd";
    char *hostfile="test file a";
    char sessionname[30], uid[30], pw[30];
    int mlog=0, ret=0;
    as = &asx;
```
The following example fragment illustrates the use of the g32_fxfer function in an api_3270 mode program in Pascal language.

```
program test1(input,output);
const%include /usr/include/g32const.inc
%include /usr/include/fxconst.inc

%include /usr/include/g32hfile.inc
%include /usr/include/g32types.inc
%include /usr/include/fxhfile.inc

var
  as:g32_api;
  xfer:fxc;
  sxfer:fxs;
  ret,sess_mode,flag:integer;
  session,timeout,uid,pw:stringptr;
  source,destination:stringptr;
begin
  sess_mode = MODE_3270;
  flag := 0;
```

The following example fragment illustrates the use of the `g32_fxfer` function in an `api_3270` mode program in FORTRAN language:

```fortran
INTEGER G32OPENX,G32FXFER,G32CLOSE,FCFXFER
INTEGER RET,'AS(9)FLAG
EXTERNAL G32OPENX
EXTERNAL G32FXFER
EXTERNAL G32CLOSE
EXTERNAL FCFXFER
CHARACTER*8 UID
CHARACTER*8 PW
CHARACTER*2 SESSION
CHARACTER*8 TIMEOUT
CHARACTER*256 SRCF
CHARACTER*256 DSTF
CHARACTER*256 SRC
CHARACTER*256 DST
CHARACTER*64 INPUTFLD
```
C Set up all FORMAT statements
1 FORMAT("THE G32OPENX RETURN CODE = ",I4)
2 FORMAT("THE G32FXFER RETURN CODE = ",I4)
3 FORMAT("THE G32CLOSE RETURN CODE = ",I4)
4 FORMAT("THE FCFXFER RETURN CODE = ",I4)
5 FORMAT("--------------------------------------")

C Set up all character values for the G32OPENX command
UID = CHAR(0)
PW = CHAR(0)
SESSION = 'z'//CHAR(0)
TIMEOUT = '60'//CHAR(0)
FLAG = 0
SRCF = 'testcase1'//CHAR(0)
DSTF = '/home/test.case1'//CHAR(0)

C Source and Destination files for the fcfxfer status check
C check command
SRC = CHAR(0)
DST = CHAR(0)

C Set Input Field to NULL
INPUTFLD = CHAR(0)

C Set Alternate AIX codeset to NULL
CODESET = CHAR(0)

C Set the G32FXFER file transfer flags and options
C and take the defaults for logical record length, block size, and space
RECL = 0
BLKSIZE = 0
SPACE = 0

C Set FLAGS to download (2), translate(4), and Host TSO(1024)
FLAGS = 1030

C Call G32OPENX
RET = G32OPENX(AS,FLAG,UID,PW,sessionname,TIMEOUT)
WRITE(*,1) RET
.
.
.

C Call G32FXFER
RET = G32FXFER(AS,SRCF,DSTF,FLAGS,RECL,BLKSIZE,SPACE + INCR,UNIT,INPUTFLD,CODESET)
WRITE(*,2) RET
.
.
.

C Call G32CLOSE
RET = G32CLOSE(AS)
WRITE(*,3) RET

C Call FCFXFER for file transfer status output
RET = FCFXFER(SRC,DST,BYTCNT,STAT,ERRNO,TIME)
WRITE(*,4) RET
WRITE(*,5)
WRITE(*,10) SRC
WRITE(*,11) DST
WRITE(*,12) BYTCNT
WRITE(*,13) TIME
WRITE(*,14) STAT
### g32_get_cursor Function

**Purpose**
Sets the row and column components of the `g32_api` structure to the current cursor position in a presentation space.

**Libraries**
**HCON Library**
- C (`libg3270.a`)
- Pascal (`libg3270p.a`)
- FORTRAN (`libg3270f.a`)

**C Syntax**
```c
#include <g32_api.h>

g32_get_cursor (as);

struct g32_api as
```

**Pascal Syntax**
```pascal
function g32curs (var as : g32_api) : integer; external;
```

**FORTRAN Syntax**
```fortran
EXTERNAL G32GETCURSOR

INTEGER AS(9), G32GETCURSOR
RC = G32GETCURSOR(AS)
```

**Description**
The `g32_get_cursor` function obtains the row and column address of the cursor and places these values in the `as` structure. An application can only use the `g32_get_cursor` function in API/3270 mode.

HCON application programs using the Pascal language interface must include and link both the C and Pascal libraries. Applications programs using the FORTRAN language for the HCON API must include and link both the C and FORTRAN libraries.

The `g32_get_cursor` function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).

The `g32_get_cursor` function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a host.

**C Parameters**
- `as` Specifies a pointer to the `g32_api` structure. This structure contains the row (`row`) and column (`column`) address of the cursor. Status information is also set in this structure.
Pascal Parameters

\( as \) \quad \text{Specifies the } g32\textunderscore api \text{ structure.}

FORTRAN Parameters

\( AS \) \quad \text{Specifies the } g32\textunderscore api \text{ equivalent structure as an array of integers.}

Return Values

\[ 0 \] \quad \text{Indicates successful completion.}

- The corresponding \textit{row} element of the \textit{as} structure is the row position of the cursor.

- The corresponding \textit{column} element of the \textit{as} structure is the column position of the cursor.

\[ -1 \] \quad \text{Indicates an error has occurred.}

- The \textit{errcode} field in the \textit{g32\textunderscore api} structure is set to the error code identifying the error.

- The \textit{xerrinfo} field can be set to give more information about the error.

Examples

\textbf{Note:} The following example is missing the required \textit{g32\_open} and \textit{g32\_alloc} functions which are necessary for every HCON Workstation API program.

The following example fragment illustrates, in C language, the use of the \textit{g32\_get\_cursor} function in an \textit{api\_3270} mode program:

\begin{verbatim}
#include <g32_api.h>    /* API include file */
#include <g32_keys.h>
main()
{
    struct g32_api *as;    /* g32 structure */
    char *buffer;           /* pointer to char string */
    int return;             /* return code */
    char *malloc();         /* C memory allocation function*/
    
    return = g32_notify(as,1);  /* Turn notification on */
    buffer = malloc(10);
    return = g32_get_cursor(as);  /* get location of cursor */
    printf("The cursor position is row: \%d col: \%d/n", 
        as->row, as->column);
    /* Get data from host starting at the current row and column */
    as->length = 10;       /* length of a pattern on host */
    return = g32_get_data(as,buffer); /* get data from host */
    printf("The data returned is <\%s>\n",buffer);
    /* Try to search for a particular pattern on host */
    as->row = 1;           /* row to start search */
    as->column = 1;        /* column to start search */
    return = g32_search(as,"PATTERN");
    /*Send a clear key to the host */
    return = g32_send_keys(as,CLEAR);
    /* Turn notification off */
    return = g32_notify(as,0);
    
    
}
\end{verbatim}
g32_get_data Function

Purpose
Obtains current specified display data from the presentation space.

Libraries
HCON Library
C (libc3270.a)
Pascal (libc3270p.a)
FORTRAN (libc3270f.a)

C Syntax
#include <g32_api.h>

g32_get_data (as, buffer)
struct g32_api *as;
char *buffer;

Pascal Syntax
function g32data (var as : g32_api;
buffer : integer) : integer; external;

FORTRAN Syntax
EXTERNAL G32GETDATA

INTEGER AS(9), G32GETDATA

CHARACTER *XX Buffer
RC = G32GETDATA(AS, Buffer)

Description
The g32_get_data function obtains current display data from the presentation space. The transfer continues until either the transfer length is exhausted or the starting point is reached. If the transfer length is greater than the presentation space, then the g32_get_data function only reads data that equals one presentation space and leaves the rest of the buffer unchanged.

The g32_get_data function can only be used in API/3270 session mode.

HCON application programs using the Pascal language interface must include and link both the C and Pascal libraries. Applications programs using the FORTRAN language for the HCON API must include and link both the C and FORTRAN libraries.

The g32_get_data function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).

The g32_get_data function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a host.

In a double-byte character set (DBCS) environment, the g32_get_data function only obtains SBCS data from the presentation space even if Kanji or Katakana characters are displayed on the screen. The DBCS data are not available.
C Parameters

**as** Specifies a pointer to the g32_api structure containing the row (row) and column (column) address where the data begins, and the length (length) of data to return. Status information is also returned in this structure.

**buffer** Specifies a pointer to a buffer where the data is placed.

Pascal Parameters

**as** Specifies the g32_api structure.

**buffer** Specifies an address of a character-packed array. The array must be the same length or greater than the length field in the g32_api structure.

**Note:** The address of a packed array can be obtained by using the *addr()* system call:

```pascal
buffer := addr (<message array name> [1]).
```

FORTRAN Parameters

**AS** Specifies the g32_api equivalent structure as an array of integers.

**buffer** Specifies the character array that receives the retrieved data. The array must be the same length or greater than the length field in the g32_api structure.

**Note:** If the size of the buffer is smaller than AS(LENGTH), a memory fault may occur.

Return Values

**0** Indicates successful completion.

**-1** Indicates an error has occurred.

- The *errcode* field in the g32_api structure is set to the error code identifying the error.
- The *xerrinfo* field can be set to give more information about the error.

Examples

The following example fragment illustrates the use of the g32_get_data function in an api_3270 mode program in C language.

**Note:** The following example is missing the required g32_open and g32_alloc functions which are necessary for every HCON Workstation API program.

```c
#include <g32_api.h>  // API include file
#include <g32_keys.h>

main()
{
  struct g32_api *as;  // g32 structure
  char *buffer;        // pointer to char string
  int return;          // return code
  char *malloc();      // C memory allocation function

  return = g32_notify(as,1);  // Turn notification on
  buffer = malloc(10);
  return = g32_get_cursor(as);  // get location of cursor
  printf(" The Cursor position is row: %d col: %d/n", 
         as->row, as->column);
  return = g32_alloc(as,buffer);  // get data from host
  printf("The data returned is \\
```
/* Try to search for a particular pattern on host */
as->row = 1;  /* row to start search */
as->column = 1;  /* column to start search */
return = g32_search(as,"PATTERN");
/*Send a clear key to the host */
return = g32_send_keys(as,CLEAR);
/* Turn notification off */
return = g32_notify(as,0);
.
.
.

**g32_get_status Function**

**Purpose**
Returns status information of the logical path.

**Libraries**
HCON Library
C (libg3270.a)
Pascal (libg3270p.a)
FORTRAN (libg3270f.a)

**C Syntax**

```c
#include <g32_api.h>

g32_get_status ( as )
struct g32_api *as;
```

**Pascal Syntax**

```pascal
function g32stat (var as: g32_api) : integer; external;
```

**FORTRAN Syntax**

```fortran
EXTERNAL G32GETSTATUS
INTEGER AS(9),G32GETSTATUS
RC = G32GETSTATUS( AS)
```

**Description**
The **g32_get_status** function obtains status information about the communication path. The function is called after an API application determines that an error has occurred while reading from or writing to the communication path or after a timeout. The HCON session profile specifies the communication path.

The **g32_get_status** function can only be used in API/API, API/API_T, and API/3270 modes.

HCON application programs using the Pascal language interface must include and link both the C and Pascal libraries. Application programs using the FORTRAN language for the HCON API must include and link both the C and FORTRAN libraries.

The **g32_get_status** function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).

The **g32_get_status** function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a host.
C Parameters

\textit{as} Specifies a pointer to a \texttt{g32_api} structure; status is returned in this structure.

Pascal Parameters

\textit{as} Specifies the \texttt{g32_api} structure.

FORTRAN Parameters

\textit{AS} Specifies a \texttt{g32_api} equivalent structure as an array of integers.

Note: This function is used to determine the condition or status of the link. It should not be used to determine whether the previous I/O operation was successful or unsuccessful (the return code will provide this information).

Return Values

0 Indicates successful completion.

Error Codes

The values of \texttt{errcode} are as follows:

\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline
Error Code & Description \\
\hline
G32\_NO\_ERROR & 0, indicates no error has occurred. \\
G32\_COMM\_CHK & -1, indicates a communications check has occurred. \\
G32\_PROG\_CHK & -2, indicates a program check has occurred within the emulator. \\
G32\_MACH\_CHK & -3, indicates a machine check has occurred. \\
G32\_FATAL\_ERROR & -4, indicates a fatal error has occurred within the emulator. \\
G32\_COMM\_REM & -5, indicates a communications check reminder has occurred. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

If \texttt{errcode} is anything other than G32\_NO\_ERROR, then \texttt{xerrinfo} contains an emulator program error code.

Value Description

-1 Indicates an error has occurred.

\begin{itemize}
\item The \texttt{errcode} field in the \texttt{g32_api} structure is set to the error code identifying the error.
\item The \texttt{xerrinfo} field can be set to give more information about the error.
\end{itemize}

Examples

The following example fragment illustrates the use of the \texttt{g32\_get\_status} function in C language:

```c
#include <g32_api.h>    /* API include file */
main()
{
    struct g32_api *as;    /* g32 structure */
    int return;
    return = g32_write(as, msg, length);
    /* see if unsuccessful */
    if (return < 0) {
        return = g32_get_status(as);
        printf("Return From g32_get_status = \%d \n",return);
    }
}
```

162 Technical Reference: Communications, Volume 1
Implementation Specifics

g32_notify Function

Purpose
Turns data notification on or off.

Libraries
HCON Library
C (libg3270.a)
Pascal (libg3270p.a)
FORTRAN (libg3270f.a)

C Syntax
#include <g32_api.h>

g32_notify (as, note)
struct g32_api *as;
int note;

Pascal Syntax
subroutine g32note (var as : g32_api;
                   note : integer) : integer; external;

FORTRAN Syntax
EXTERNAL G32NOTIFY

INTEGER AS(9), Note, G32NOTIFY
RC = G32NOTIFY(AS, Note)

Description
The g32_notify subroutine is used to turn notification of data arrival on or off. The g32_notify subroutine may be used only by applications in an API/3270 session mode.

If an application wants to know when the emulator receives data from the host, it turns notification on. This causes the emulator to send a message to the application whenever it receives data from the host. The message is sent to the IPC message queue whose file pointer is stored in the eventf field of the as data structure. The application may then use the poll system call to wait for data from the host. Once notified the application should clear notification messages from the IPC queue, using the msgrcv subroutine. When the application no longer wants to be notified, it should turn notification off with another g32_notify call.

HCON application programs using the Pascal language interface must include and link both the C and Pascal libraries. Application programs using the FORTRAN language for the HCON API must include and link both the C and FORTRAN libraries.
The `g32_notify` function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).

The `g32_notify` function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a host.

**C Parameters**

- `as` Specifies a pointer to the `g32_api` structure. Status is returned in this structure.
- `note` Specifies to turn notification off (if the `note` parameter is zero) or on (if the `note` parameter is nonzero).

**Pascal Parameters**

- `as` Specifies a `g32_api` structure.
- `note` Specifies an integer that signals whether to turn notification off (if the `note` parameter is zero) or on (if the `note` parameter is nonzero).

**FORTRAN Parameters**

- `AS` Specifies a `g32_api` equivalent structure as an array of integers.
- `Note` Specifies to turn notification off (if the `Note` parameter is zero) or on (if the `Note` parameter is nonzero).

**Return Values**

- 0 Indicates successful completion.
- -1 Indicates an error has occurred.
  - The `errcode` field in the `g32_api` structure is set to the error code identifying the error.
  - The `xerrinfo` field can be set to give more information about the error.

**Examples**

**Note:** The following example is missing the required `g32_open` and `g32_alloc` functions, which are necessary for every HCON Workstation API program.

The example fragment illustrates, in C language, the use of the `g32_notify` function in an `api_3270` mode program:

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/ipc.h>
#include <sys/poll.h>
#include <sys/msg.h>
#include "g32_api.h"
```

Note that the following function is an example of `g32_notify` function use. It is meant to be called from an API application program that has already performed a `g32_open()` or `g32_openx()` and a `g32_alloc()` function call. The function will accept the `as` structure, a search pattern, and a timeout (in seconds) as arguments. The purpose for calling this function is to search for a certain pattern on the "screen" within a given amount of time. As soon as the host updates the screen (presentation space), the notification is sent (the poll returns with a success). This data may not be your desired pattern, so this routine will retry until the timeout is reached. The function will poll on the message queue and search the presentation space each time the API is notified. If the pattern is found, a success is returned. If the pattern is not found in the specified timeout period, a failure (-1) is returned. The application should pass the timeout value in seconds.

...
search_pres_space (as,pattern,timeout)

struct g32_api *as;  /* Pointer to api structure */
char *pattern;        /* Pattern to search for in presentation space */
int timeout;         /* The maximum time to wait before returning a failure */
{
    char done=0;     /* Flag used to test if loop is finished */
    int rc;          /* return code */
    long smsg;       /* message buffer */
    unsigned long nfdmsgs; /* Specified number of file descriptors and number of message queues to check. Low order 16 bits is the number of elements in array of pollfd. High order 16 bits is number of elements in array of pollmsg.*/

    struct pollmsg msglstptr; /* structure defined in poll.h contains message queue id, requested events, and returned events */

    timeout *= 1000; /* convert to milliseconds for poll call */

    g32_notify (as, 1); /* turn on the notify */
    rc = g32_search (as, pattern); /* search the presentation space for the pattern */

    if (rc == 0) {
        done = 1;
    }

    /*Loop while the pattern not found and the timeout has not been reached */
    /* Note that this is done in 500 ms. increments */
    while ( !(done) && (timeout > 0) ) {
        /* wait a max of 500 ms for a response from the host */
        /* This is done via the poll system call */
        nfdmsgs = (1<<16); /* One element in the msglstptr array. Since the low order bits are zero, they will be ignored by the poll */

        msglstptr.msgid = as->eventf; /* The message queue id */
        msglstptr.reqevents = POLLIN; /*Set flag to check if input is present on message queue */

        /* poll on the message queue. A return code of 1 signifies data from the host. An rc of 0 signifies a timeout. An rc < 0 signifies an error */
        rc = poll (&msglstptr,nfdmsgs,(long)500);
        rc = rc >> 16; /* shift return code into low order bits */

        /* If the poll found something, do another search */
        if (rc == 1) {
            /* call msgrcv system call, retrying until success */
            /* This is done to flush the IPC queue */
            do {
                rc = msgrcv (as->eventf,(struct msgbuf *)&smsg,
                            (size_t)0,(long)1,IPC_NOWAIT|IPC_NOERROR);
            } while ( rc == G32ERROR);

            rc = g32_search (as,pattern); /* Search for pattern */
            /* if pattern is found, set done flag to exit loop */
            if (rc == 0) {
                done = 1;
            }
        }
        timeout -= 500; /* decrement the timeout by 500ms */
    }
g32_notify (as, 0); /* turn the notify off again */
if (done) {
    return (0); /* search was successful */
}
else {
    return (-1); /* failure */
}
}

---

**g32_open Function**

**Purpose**
Attaches to a session. If the session does not exist, the session is started.

**Libraries**
HCON Library
C (libg3270.a)
Pascal (libg3270p.a)
FORTRAN (libg3270f.a)

**C Syntax**
#include <g32_api.h>
g32_open (as, flag, uid, pw, sessionname)

struct g32_api * as;
int flag;
char * uid;
char * pw;
char * sessionname;

**Pascal Syntax**
function g32open(var as: g32_api; flag: integer;
uid: stringptr;
pw: stringptr;
sessionname: stringptr) : integer; external;

**FORTRAN Syntax**
INTEGER G32OPEN, RC, AS(9), FLAG
EXTERNAL G32OPEN

CHARACTER*XX UID, PW, SESSIONNAME
RC = G32OPEN(AS, FLAG, UID, PW, SESSIONNAME)
Description
The `g32_open` function attaches to a session with the host. If the session does not exist, the session is started automatically. The user is logged on to the host if requested. This function is a subset of the capability provided by the `g32_openx` function. An application program must call the `g32_open` or `g32_openx` function before calling any other API function. If an API application is running implicitly, an automatic login is performed.

The `g32_open` function can be nested for multiple opens as long as a distinct `as` structure is created and passed to each open. Corresponding API functions will map to each open session according to the `as` structure passed to each.

HCON application programs using the Pascal language interface must include and link both the C and Pascal libraries. Application programs using the FORTRAN language for the HCON API must include and link both the C and FORTRAN libraries.

The `g32_open` function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).

The `g32_open` function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a host.

CICS/VS and VSE/ESA do not support API/API or API/API_T modes.

C Parameters

- **as**: Specifies a pointer to the `g32_api` structure. Status is returned in this structure.
- **flag**: Signals whether the login procedure should be performed. Flag values are as follows:
  - If the emulator is running and the user is logged in to the host, the value of the `flag` parameter must be 0.
  - If the emulator is running, the user is not logged in to the host, and the API logs in to the host, the value of the `flag` parameter must be set to 1.
  - If the emulator is not running and the API application executes an automatic login/logoff procedure, the value of the `flag` parameter is ignored.
- **uid**: Specifies a pointer to the login ID string if the `g32_open` function logs in to the host. If the login ID is a null string, the login procedure prompts the user for both the login ID and the password unless the host login ID is specified in the session profile in which case the user is prompted only for a password. The login ID is a string consisting of the host user ID and, optionally, a list of comma-separated AUTOLOG variables, which is passed to the implicit procedure. The following is a sample list of AUTOLOG variables:
  
  `userid, node_id, trace, time=n,...`

- **pw**: Specifies a pointer to the password string associated with the login ID string. The following usage considerations apply to the `pw` parameter:
  - If no password is to be specified, the user can specify a null string.
  - If no value is provided and the program is running implicitly, the login procedure prompts the user for the password.
  - If the `uid` parameter is a null string, the `pw` parameter is ignored.
- **sessionname**: Specifies a pointer to the name of a session. The session name is a single character in the range of a through z. Capital letters are interpreted as lowercase letters.

Pascal Parameters

- **as**: Specifies the `g32_api` structure.
flag  Signals whether the login procedure should be performed.
  • If the emulator is running, the user is logged in to the host, and the API application executes
    as a subshell of the emulator, the value of the flag parameter must be 0.
  • If the emulator is running, the user is not logged in to the host, and the API application
    executes as a subshell of the emulator and the application is to perform an automatic
    login/logoff procedure, the value of the flag parameter must be set to 1.
  • If the emulator is not running and the API application executes an automatic login/logoff
    procedure, the value of the flag parameter is ignored.

uid  Specifies a pointer to the login ID string. If the user ID is a null string, the login procedure
  prompts the user for both the user ID and the password unless the host login ID is specified in
  the session profile. In the latter case, the user is prompted only for a password.

pw  Specifies a pointer to the password string associated with the login ID string. If it points to a
  null string, the login procedure prompts the user for the password. This parameter is ignored if
  the uid parameter is a null string.

sessionname  Specifies a pointer to the name of a session, which indicates the host connectivity to be used
  by the API application. The session name is a single character in the range of a through z.
  Capital letters are interpreted as lowercase letters.

FORTRAN Parameters
When creating strings in FORTRAN that are to be passed as parameters, the strings must be terminated
by with a null character, CHAR(0).

Parameter | Description
--- | ---
AS | Specifies the g32_api equivalent structure as an array of integers.
FLAG | Signals whether the login procedure should be performed.
UID | Specifies a pointer to the login ID string. If the user ID is a null string, the login procedure
  prompts the user for both the user ID and the password unless the host login ID is specified in
  the session profile. In the latter case, the user is prompted only for a password.
PW | Specifies a pointer to the password string associated with the login ID string. If the parameter
  specifies a null string, the login procedure prompts the user for the password. This parameter is
  ignored if the uid parameter is a null string.
SESSIONNAME | Specifies the name of a session, which indicates the host connectivity to be used by the API
  application. The session name is a single character in the range of a through z. Capital letters
  are interpreted as lowercase letters.

Return Values
Upon successful completion:
  • A value of 0 is returned.
  • The lpid field in the g32_api structure is set to the session ID.

Upon unsuccessful completion:
  • A value of -1 is returned.
  • The errcode field in the g32_api structure is set to an error code identifying the error.
  • The xerrinfo field can be set to give more information about the error.

Examples
The following example fragment illustrates the use of the g32_open function in an api_3270 mode
program in C language:
```c
#include <g32_api.h>
main()
{
  struct g32_api *as, asx; /* asx is statically
  declared*/
```
int flag=0;
int ret;
as = &asx; /* as points to an
    allocated structure */
ret=g32_open(as,flag,"mike","mypassword","a");
.
.
}

The following example fragment illustrates the use of the `g32_open` function in an `api_3270` mode program in Pascal language:

```pascal
program apitest (input, output);
const
%include /usr/include/g32const.inc
type
%include /usr/include/g32types.inc
var
    as : g32_api;
    rc : integer;
    flag : integer;
    sn : stringptr;
    ret : integer;
    uid, pw : stringptr;
%include /usr/include/g32hfile.inc
begin
    flag := 0;
    new(uid,20);
    uid@ := chr(0);
    new (pw,20);
    pw@ := chr(0);
    new (sn,1);
    sn@ := 'a';
    ret := g32open(as,flag,uid,pw,sn);
    .
    .
end.
```

The following example fragment illustrates the use of the `g32_open` function in an `api_3270` mode program in FORTRAN language:

```fortran
INTEGER G32OPEN
INTEGER RC, AS(9), FLAG
CHARACTER=20 UID
CHARACTER=10 PW
CHARACTER=2 SN
EXTERNAL G32OPEN
UID = CHAR(0)
PW = CHAR(0)
SN = 'a'/CHAR(0)
FLAG = 0
RC = G32OPEN(AS, FLAG, UID, PW, SN)
.
.
```

---

**g32_openx Function**

**Purpose**

Attaches to a session and provides extended open capabilities. If the session does not exist, the session is started.
Libraries
HCON Library
C (libg3270.a)
Pascal (libg3270p.a)
FORTRAN (libg3270f.a)

C Syntax
#include <g32_api.h>
g32_openx (as, flag, uid, pw, sessionname, timeout)

struct g32_api * as;
int    flag;
char *  uid;
char *  pw;
char *  sessionname;
char *  timeout;

Pascal Syntax
function g32openx(var as : g32_api; flag: integer;

    uid : stringptr;
    pw : stringptr;
    sessionname : stringptr;
    timeout : stringptr) : integer; external;

FORTRAN Syntax
INTEGER G32OPENX, RC, AS(9), FLAG
EXTERNAL G32OPENX

CHARACTER* XX UID, PW, SESSIONNAME

RC = G32OPENX (AS, FLAG, UID, PW, SESSIONNAME, TIMEOUT)

Description
The g32_openx function attaches to a session. If the session does not exist, the session is started. This is
an automatic login. The user is logged in to the host if requested. The g32_openx function provides
additional capability beyond that of the g32_open function. An application program must call g32_openx
or g32_open before any other API function.

If an API application is run automatically, the function performs an automatic login.

The g32_openx function can be nested for multiple opens as long as a distinct as structure is created and
passed to each open. Corresponding API functions will map to each open session according to the as
structure passed to each.
HCON application programs using the Pascal language interface must include and link both the C and Pascal libraries. Applications programs using the FORTRAN language for the HCON API must include and link both the C and FORTRAN libraries.

The **g32_openx** function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).

The **g32_openx** function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a host.

CICS and VSE do not support **API/API** or **API/API_T** modes.

**C Parameters**

The **g32_openx** function allows for a varying number of parameters after the **flag** parameter. The **as** and **flag** parameters are required; the **uid**, **pw**, **session**, and **timeout** parameters are optional.

With the **g32_open** function, the **timeout** parameter does not exist and the parameters for **uid**, **pw**, and **session** are not optional. The reason for making the last four parameters optional is that the system either prompts for the needed information (**uid and pw**) or defaults with valid information (**session or timeout**).

Unless all of the parameters are defined for this function, the parameter list in the calling statement must be terminated with the integer 0 (like the **exec** function). Providing an integer of 1 forces a default on a parameter. Use the default to provide a placeholder for optional parameters that you do not need to supply.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>as</strong></td>
<td>Specifies a pointer to the <strong>g32_api</strong> structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>flag</strong></td>
<td>Requires one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Set the <strong>flag</strong> parameter to 0, if the emulator is running and the user is logged on to host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Set the <strong>flag</strong> parameter to 1 if the emulator is running, the user is not logged on to host, and the API application is to perform the login/logoff procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The <strong>g32_openx</strong> function ignores the <strong>flag</strong> parameter, if the emulator is not running and the API application executes an automatic login/logoff procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>uid</strong></td>
<td>Specifies a pointer to the login ID string. If the login ID is a null string, the login procedure prompts the user for both the login ID and the password, unless the host login ID is specified in the session profile. In the latter case the user is prompted only for a password. The login ID is a string consisting of the host user ID and an optional list of additional variables separated by commas, as shown in the example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>userid, var1, var2, ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In this example, <strong>var1</strong> is the login script name (when using AUTOLOG) and <strong>var2</strong> is the optional trace and time values. The list is passed to the automatic procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pw</strong></td>
<td>Specifies a pointer to the password string associated with the login ID string. The following usage considerations apply to the <strong>pw</strong> parameter:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If no password is to be specified, the user can specify a null string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If no value is provided and the program is running automatically, the login procedure prompts the user for the password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the <strong>uid</strong> parameter is a null string, the <strong>pw</strong> parameter is ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sessionname</strong></td>
<td>Points to the name of a session. The session name is a single character in the range of a through z. Capital letters are interpreted as lowercase letters. Parameters for each session are specified in a per session profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>timeout</strong></td>
<td>Specifies a pointer to a numerical string that specifies the amount of nonactive time in seconds allowed to occur between the workstation and the host operations (that is, <strong>g32_read</strong> and <strong>G32WRITE</strong>). This parameter is optional. If no value is provided in the calling statement, the default value is 15. The minimum value allowed is 1. There is no maximum value limitation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pascal Parameters

When using C as a programming language, you can make use of the feature of variable numbered parameters. In Pascal, however, this feature is not allowed. Therefore, calls to the `g32_openx` function must contain all six parameters.

To use defaults for the four optional parameters of C, provide a variable whose value is a null string.

Note: The use of the integer 1 is not allowed in the Pascal version of the `g32_openx` function. Space must be allocated for any string pointers prior to calling the `g32_openx` function.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>as</td>
<td>Specifies the <code>g32_api</code> structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flag</td>
<td>Signals whether the login procedure should be performed:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Set the <code>flag</code> parameter to 0. If the emulator is running, the user is logged on to host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Set the <code>flag</code> parameter to 1. If the emulator is running, the user is not logged on to host, and the API application performs the login/logoff procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the emulator is not running and the API application executes an automatic login/logoff procedure, the value of <code>flag</code> is ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uid</td>
<td>Specifies a pointer to the login ID string. If the login ID is a null string, the login procedure prompts the user for both the login ID and the password, unless the host login ID is specified in the session profile. In the latter case the user is prompted only for a password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pw</td>
<td>Specifies a pointer to the password string associated with the login ID string. The following usage considerations apply to the <code>pw</code> parameter:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If no password is to be specified, the user can specify a null string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If no value is provided and the program is running automatically, the login procedure prompts the user for the password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the <code>uid</code> parameter is a null string, the <code>pw</code> parameter is ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sessionname</td>
<td>Points to the name of a session. The session name is a single character in the range of a through z. Capital letters are interpreted as lowercase letters. Parameters for each session are specified in a per session profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>Specifies a pointer to a numerical string that specifies the amount of nonactive time in seconds allowed to occur between the workstation and the host operations (that is, <code>g32_read</code> and <code>g32WRITE</code>). This parameter is optional. If no value is provided in the calling statement, the default value is 15. The minimum value allowed is 1. There is no maximum value limitation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FORTRAN Parameters

FORTRAN calls to `G32_OPENX` must contain all six parameters. To use defaults for the four optional parameters of C language, provide a variable whose value is a null string. Note that the use of the integer 1 is not allowed in the FORTRAN version of this function. When creating strings in FORTRAN that are to pass as parameters, the strings must be linked with a null character, `CHAR(0)`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Specifies the <code>g32_api</code> equivalent structure as an array of integers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLAG</td>
<td>Signals that the login procedure should be performed:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Set the <code>FLAG</code> parameter to 0, if the emulator is running, the user is logged on to host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Set the <code>FLAG</code> parameter to 1, if the emulator is running, the user is not logged on to host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the emulator is not running and the API application executes an automatic login/logoff procedure, the value of the <code>FLAG</code> parameter is ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UID</td>
<td>Specifies a pointer to the login ID string. If the login ID is a null string, the login procedure prompts the user for both the login ID and the password, unless the host login ID is specified in the session profile. In the latter case the user is prompted only for a password.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Parameter          | Description
-----------------|--------------------------------------------------
PW               | Specifies a pointer to the password string associated with the login ID string. The following usage considerations apply to the pw parameter:
                  | • If no password is to be specified, the user can specify a null string.
                  | • If no value is provided and the program is running automatically, the login procedure prompts the user for the password.
                  | • If the uid parameter is a null string, the pw parameter is ignored.
SESSIONNAME      | Specifies the name of a session. The session name is a single character in the range of a through z. Capital letters are interpreted as lowercase letters. Parameters for each session are specified in a per session profile.
TIMEOUT          | Specifies a numerical string that specifies the amount of nonactive time in seconds allowed to occur between the workstation and the host operations (that is, g32_read/g32WRITE). There is no maximum to this, but the minimum is 1.

Return Values

0 | Indicates successful completion. The lpid field in the g32_api structure is set to the session ID.
-1 | Indicates an error has occurred.
                  | • The errcode field in the g32_api structure is set to an error code identifying the error.
                  | • The xerrinfo field can be set to give more information about the error.

Examples

1. To use the g32_openx function with fewer than four optional string constant parameters specified and with AUTOLOG, enter:
   ```c
   g32_openx (AS, 0, "john, tso, trace", "j12hn");
   ```
2. To use the g32_openx function with fewer than four optional string constant parameters specified and with the automatic login facility, enter:
   ```c
   g32_openx (AS, 1, "john", "j12hn", "Z", 0);
   ```
3. To use the g32_openx function with all optional parameters not specified, enter:
   ```c
   g32_openx (AS, 1, 0);
   OR
   g32_openx (AS, 0, 0);
   ```
4. To use the g32_openx function with four variable optional parameters, enter:
   ```c
   g32_openx (AS, 0, UID, Pw, Sessionname, TimeOut);
   ```
5. To use the g32_openx function with fewer than four variable optional parameters, enter:
   ```c
   g32_openx (AS, 1, UID, Pw, 0);
   ```
6. To use the g32_openx function with two default optional parameters, enter:
   ```c
   g32_openx (AS, 0, 1, 1, 1, "60");
   ```
7. To use the g32_openx function with a mixture:
   ```c
   g32_openx (AS, 0, 1, 1, Session, 0);
   ```
8. To use the g32_openx function within a program segment in the C language:
   ```c
   #include <g32_api.h>
   main()
   {
   struct g32_api *as, asx; /* asx is a temporary struct */
   /* g32.api so that storage */
   /* is allocated */
   int flag=0;
   int ret;
   ```
sn = &nm;
as = &asx;  /* as points to an allocated structure */
ret = g32_openx(as, flag, "mike", "mypassword", "a", "60");
.
.
.
}

Note: Only the first two parameters are mandatory. The remaining parameters can be terminated with a 0. For example:
ret = g32_openx(as.flag, 0);

Null characters may be substituted for any of the string values if profile or command values are desired.

9. To use the g32_openx function within a program segment in the Pascal language:
program apitest (input, output);
const
%include /usr/include/g32const.inc
type
%include /usr/include/g32types.inc
var
  as : g32_api;
  rc : integer;
  flag : integer;
  sn : stringptr;
  timeout : stringptr;
  ret : integer;
  uid, pw : stringptr;
%include /usr/include/g32hfile.inc
begin
  flag := 0;
  new(uid, 20);
  uid@ := chr(0);
  new(pw, 20);
  pw@ := chr(0);
  new(sn, 1);
  sn@ := 'a';
  new(timeout, 32);
  timeout@ := '60';
  ret := g32openx(as, flag, uid, pw, sn, timeout);
  .
  .
  .
end.

10. To use the g32_openx function within a program segment in the FORTRAN language:
INTEGER G32OPENX
INTEGER RC, AS(9), FLAG
CHARACTER*20 UID
CHARACTER*10 PW
CHARACTER*10 TIMEOUT
CHARACTER*1 SN
EXTERNAL G32OPENX
UID = CHAR(0)
TIMEOUT = CHAR(0)
MODEL = CHAR(0)
PW = CHAR(0)
SN = 'a'/CHAR(0)
TIMEOUT = '60'/CHAR(0)
FLAG = 0
RC = G32OPENX(AS, FLAG, UID, PW, SN, TIMEOUT)
.
.
.
g32_read Function

Purpose
Receives a message from a host application.

Libraries
HCON Library
C (libg3270.a)
Pascal (libg3270p.a)
FORTRAN (libg3270f.a)

C Syntax
#include "g32_api.h"

g32_read (as, msgbuf, msglen)
struct g32_api *as;
char **msgbuf;
int *msglen;

Pascal Syntax
function g32read (var as : g32_api;
var buffer : stringptr;
var msglen : integer) : integer; external;

FORTRAN Syntax
EXTERNAL G32READ
INTEGER AS(9), BufLen, G32READ
CHARACTER *XX MSGBUF
RC= G32READ (AS, MSGBUF, BufLen)

Description
The g32_read function receives a message from a host application. The g32_read function may only be used by those applications having API/API or API/API_T mode specified with the g32_alloc function.

- In C or Pascal, a buffer is obtained, a pointer to the buffer is saved, and the message from the host is read into the buffer. The length of the message and the address of the buffer are returned to the user application.

- In FORTRAN, the calling procedure must pass a buffer large enough for the incoming message. The BufLen parameter must be the actual size of the buffer. The G32READ function uses the BufLen parameter as the upper array bound. Therefore, any messages larger than BufLen are truncated to fit the buffer.

HCON application programs using the Pascal language interface must include and link both the C and Pascal libraries. Application programs using the FORTRAN language for the HCON API must include and link both the C and FORTRAN libraries.

The g32_read function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).

The g32_read function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a host.
In a DBCS environment, the `g32_read` function only reads SBCS data from a host in the `MODE_API_T` mode.

**C Parameters**

`as` Specifies a pointer to a `g32_api` structure.

`msgbuf` Specifies a pointer to a buffer where a message from the host is placed. The API obtains space for this buffer by using the `malloc` library subroutine, and the user is responsible for releasing it by issuing a `free` call after the `g32_read` function.

`msglen` Specifies a pointer to an integer where the length, in bytes, of the `msgbuf` parameter is placed. The message length must be greater than 0 but less than or equal to the maximum I/O buffer size parameter specified in the HCON session profile.

**Pascal Parameters**

`as` Specifies the `g32_api` structure.

`buffer` Specifies a `stringptr` structure. The API obtains space for this buffer by using the `malloc` C library subroutine, and the user is responsible for releasing it by issuing a `dispose` subroutine after the `g32_read` function.

`msglen` Specifies an integer where the number of bytes read is placed. The message length must be greater than 0 (zero) but less than or equal to the maximum I/O buffer size parameter specified in the HCON session profile.

**FORTRAN Parameters**

`AS` Specifies the `g32_api` equivalent structure.

`BUFLEN` Specifies the size, in bytes, of the value contained in the `MSGBUF` parameter. The message length must be greater than 0 and less than or equal to the maximum I/O buffer size parameter specified in the HCON session profile.

`MSGBUF` Specifies the storage area for the character data read from the host.

**Return Values**

-1 Indicates an error has occurred.

- The `errcode` field in the `g32_api` structure is set to the error code identifying the error.
- The `xerrinfo` field can be set to give more information about the error.

**Examples**

The following example illustrates the use of the `g32_read` function in C language.

```c
#include <g32_api> /* API include file */
main()
{
 struct g32_api *as, asx /* g32_api structure */
 char **msg.buf; /* pointer to host msg buffer */
 char *messg; /* pointer to character string */
 int msg_len; /* pointer to host msg length */
 char *malloc(); /* C memory allocation function */
 int return; /* return code is no. of bytes read */
 .
 .
 .
```

176 Technical Reference: Communications, Volume 1
as = &asx;
msg_buff = &messg;  /* point to a string */
return = g32_read(as, msg_buff, &msg_len);
.
.
free (*msg_buff);
.
.
---

**g32_search Function**

**Purpose**

Searches for a character pattern in a presentation space.

**Libraries**

HCON Library
C (libg3270.a)
Pascal (libg3270p.a)
FORTRAN (libg3270f.a)

**C Syntax**

```c
#include <g32_api.h>

g32_search (as, pattern)
struct g32_api *as;
char *pattern;
```

**Pascal Syntax**

```pascal
function g32srch(var as : g32_api;
    pattern : stringptr) : integer; external;
```

**FORTRAN Syntax**

```fortran
EXTERNAL G32SEARCH

INTEGER AS(9), G32SEARCH

CHARACTER *XX PATTERN
RC = G32SEARCH(AS, PATTERN)
```

**Description**

The `g32_search` function searches for the specified byte pattern in the presentation space associated with the application.

**Note:** The `g32_search` function can only be used in API/3270 mode.

The search is performed from the row and column given in the `g32_api` structure to the end of the presentation space. Note that the row and column positions start at 1 (one) and not 0. If you start at 0 for row and column, an invalid position error will result.

The `g32_search` function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).
The **g32_search** function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a host.

In a DBCS environment, the **g32_search** function only searches the presentation space for an SBCS character pattern. This function does not support Katakana or DBCS characters.

**Pattern Matching**

In any given search pattern, the following characters have special meaning:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>?</td>
<td>The question mark is the arbitrary character, matching any one character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>The asterisk is the wildcard character, matching any sequence of zero or more characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\</td>
<td>The backslash is the escape character meaning the next character is to be interpreted literally.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The pattern cannot contain two consecutive wildcard characters.

**Pattern Matching Example**

The string AB?DE matches any of ABCDE, AB9DE, ABxDE, but does not match ABCD, ABCCDE, or ABDE.

The string AB*DE matches any of ABCDE, AB9DE, ABCCDE, ABDE, but does not match ABCD, ABCDF, or ABC.

**Pattern Matching in C and Pascal**

If the pattern needs to contain either a question mark or an asterisk as a literal character, these symbols must be preceded by two escape characters (\? or \*). For example, to search for the string, *How are you today?*, the pattern might be:

```c
How are you today \\
```

The backslash can be used as a literal character by specifying four backslash characters (\\\) in the pattern. For example, to search for the string, *We found the \.*, the pattern might be:

```c
We found the \\
```

**Pattern Matching in FORTRAN**

If the pattern needs to contain either a question mark or an asterisk as a literal character, these symbols must be preceded by one escape character (? or asterisk). For example, to search for the string, *How are you today?*, the pattern might be:

```fortran
How are you today?
```

The backslash can be used as a literal character by specifying two backslash characters (\) in the pattern. For example, to search for the string, *We found the \.*, the pattern might be:

```fortran
We found the \
```

HCON application programs using the Pascal language interface must include and link both the C and Pascal libraries. Application programs using the FORTRAN language for the HCON API must include and link both the C and FORTRAN libraries.

**C Parameters**

- **as**: Specifies a pointer to a **g32_api** structure. It also contains the row and column where the search should begin. Status information is returned in this structure.
- **pattern**: Specifies a pointer to a byte pattern, which is searched for in the presentation space.
Pascal Parameters

\[\text{as}\]  Specifies the \texttt{g32_api} structure.
\[\text{pattern}\]  Specifies a pointer to a string containing the pattern to search for in the presentation space. The string must be at least as long as the length indicated in the \texttt{g32_api} structure.

FORTRAN Parameters

\[\text{AS}\]  Specifies a \texttt{g32_api} equivalent structure as an array of integers.
\[\text{PATTERN}\]  Specifies a string that is searched for in the presentation space.

Return Values

0  Indicates successful completion.
  - The corresponding row field of the as structure is the row position of the beginning of the matched string.
  - The corresponding column field of the as structure is the column position of the beginning of the matched string.
  - The corresponding length field of the as structure is the length of the matched string.
-1  Indicates an error has occurred.
  - The errcode field in the \texttt{g32_api} structure is set to the error code identifying the error.
  - The xerrinfo field can be set to give more information about the error.

Examples

Note: The following example is missing the required \texttt{g32_open} and \texttt{g32 Alloc} functions which are necessary for every HCON Workstation API program.

The following example fragment illustrates the use of the \texttt{g32_search} function in an \texttt{api_3270} mode program in C language:

```c
#include <g32_api.h>  /* API include file */
#include <g32_keys.h>
main()
{
  struct g32_api *as;  /* g32 structure */
  char *buffer;  /* pointer to char string */
  int return;  /* return code */
  char *malloc();  /* C memory allocation function */

  return = g32_notify(as,1);  /* Turn notification on */
  buffer = malloc(10);  return = g32_get_cursor(as);  /* get location of cursor */
  printf("The cursor position is row: \%d col: \%d/n",  
         as->row, as->column);
  printf("Get data from host starting at the current row and column */
  as->length = 10;  /* length of a pattern on host */
  return = g32_get_data(as,buffer);  /* get data from host */
  printf("The data returned is \%s\n",buffer);

  /* Try to search for a particular pattern on host */
  as->row = 1;  /* row to start search */
  as->column = 1;  /* column to start search */
  return = g32_search(as,"PATTERN");
  /*Send a clear key to the host */

  return = g32_notify(as,0);  /* Turn notification off */
}
```
return = g32_send_keys(as,CLEAR);
/* Turn notification off */
return = g32_notify(as,0);
.
.
.
---

**g32_send_keys Function**

**Purpose**
Sends key strokes to the terminal emulator.

**Libraries**

HCON Library
C (libg3270.a)
Pascal (libg3270p.a)
FORTRAN (libg3270f.a)

**C Syntax**

```c
#include <g32_api.h>
#include <g32_keys.h>

g32_send_keys (as, buffer)
struct g32_api *as;
char *buffer;
```

**Pascal Syntax**

```pascal
const
%include /usr/include/g32keys.inc

function g32sdky (var as : g32_api;
  buffer : stringptr) : integer; external;
```

**FORTRAN Syntax**

```fortran
EXTERNAL G32SENDKEYS
INTEGER AS(9), G32SENDKEYS
CHARACTER *XX BUFFER

RC = G32SENDKEYS( AS, BUFFER)
```

**Description**
The **g32_send_keys** function sends one or more key strokes to a terminal emulator as though they came from the keyboard. ASCII characters are sent by coding their ASCII value. Other keys (such as Enter and the cursor-movement keys) are sent by coding their values from the **g32_keys.h** file (for C programs) or **g32keys.inc** file (for Pascal programs). FORTRAN users send other keys by passing the name of the key through the **G32SENDKEYS** buffer.

**Note:** The **g32_send_keys** function can only send 128 characters per call. The **g32_send_keys** function can be chained when more than 128 characters must be sent.

The **g32_send_keys** function can only be used in API/3270 mode.
The \texttt{g32\_send\_keys} function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).

The \texttt{g32\_send\_keys} function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a host.

In a DBCS environment, the \texttt{g32\_send\_keys} function only sends SBCS keystrokes, including ASCII characters, to a terminal emulator. DBCS characters are ignored.

\section*{C Parameters}

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{as} \quad Specifies a pointer to the \texttt{g32\_api} structure. Status is returned in this structure.
\item \textit{buffer} \quad Specifies a pointer to a buffer of key stroke data.
\end{itemize}

\section*{Pascal Parameters}

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{as} \quad Specifies the \texttt{g32\_api} structure. Status is returned in this structure.
\item \textit{buffer} \quad Specifies a pointer to a string containing the keys to be sent to the host. The string must be at least as long as indicated in the \texttt{g32\_api} structure.
\end{itemize}

\section*{FORTRAN Parameters}

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{AS} \quad Specifies the \texttt{g32\_api} equivalent structure as an array of integers.
\item \textit{BUFFER} \quad The character array containing the key sequence to send to the host. A special emulator key can be sent by the \texttt{g32\_send\_keys} function as follows:

\begin{verbatim}
BUFFER = 'ENTER'//CHAR(0)
RC = G32SENDKEYS (AS,BUFFER)
\end{verbatim}
\end{itemize}

The special emulator strings recognized by the \texttt{g32\_send\_keys} function are as follows:

\begin{verbatim}
CLEAR  DELETE  DUP     ENTER
EOF    ERASE    FMARK   HOME
INSERT  NEWLINE  RESET   SYSREQ
LEFT    RIGHT    UP      DOWN
LLEFT   RRIGHT   UUP     DDOWN
TAB     BTAB     ATTN
PA1     PA2      PA3
PF1     PF2      PF3     PF4
PF5     PF6      PF7     PF8
PF9     PF10     PF11    PF12
PF13    PF14     PF15    PF16
PF17    PF18     PF19    PF20
PF21    PF22     PF23    PF24
                  CURSEL
\end{verbatim}

\section*{Return Values}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{0} \quad Indicates successful completion.
\item \texttt{-1} \quad Indicates an error has occurred.
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item The \texttt{errcode} field in the \texttt{g32\_api} structure is set to the error code identifying the error.
\item The \texttt{xerrinfo} field can be set to give more information about the error.
\end{itemize}

\section*{Examples}

\textbf{Note:} The following example is missing the required \texttt{g32\_open} and \texttt{g32\_alloc} functions which are necessary for every HCON workstation API program.
The following example fragment illustrates, in C language, the use of the `g32_send_keys` function in an `api_3270` mode program:

```c
#include <g32_api.h>  /* API include file */
#include <g32_keys.h>
main()
{
    struct g32_api *as;  /* g32 structure */
    char *buffer;  /* pointer to char string */
    int return;  /* return code */
    char *malloc();  /* C memory allocation function */

    return = g32_notify(as,1);  /* Turn notification on */
    buffer = malloc(10);
    return = g32_get_cursor(as);  /* get location of cursor */
    printf("The cursor position is row: \%d col: \%d/n", as->row, as->column);
    /* Get data from host starting at the current row and column */
    as->length = 10;  /* length of a pattern on host */
    return = g32_get_data(as,buffer);  /* get data from host */
    printf("The data returned is <%s>\n",buffer);
    /* Try to search for a particular pattern on host */
    as->row = 1;  /* row to start search */
    as->column = 1;  /* column to start search */
    return = g32_search(as,"PATTERN");  /*Send a clear key to the host */
    return = g32_send_keys(as,CLEAR);  /* Turn notification off */
    return = g32_notify(as,0);
}
```

---

### g32_write Function

**Purpose**

Sends a message to a host application.

**Libraries**

HCON Library

C (`libg3270.a`)

Pascal (`libg3270p.a`)

FORTRAN (`libg3270f.a`)

**C Syntax**

```c
#include <g32_api.h>

g32_write (as, msgbuf, msglen)
struct g32_api *as;
char *msgbuf;
int msglen;
```

**Pascal Syntax**

```pascal
function g32write (var as : g32_api;
    buffer : integer;
    msglen : integer) : integer; external;
```
FORTRAN Syntax

EXTERNAL G32WRITE

INTEGER AS(9), MSGLEN, G32WRITE

CHARACTER* XX MSGBUF

RC = G32WRITE(AS, MSGBUF, MSGLEN)

Description

The g32_write function sends the message pointed to by the msgbuf parameter to the host. This function may only be used by those applications having API/API or API/API_T mode specified by the g32_alloc command.

HCON application programs using the Pascal language interface must include and link both the C and Pascal libraries. Applications programs using the FORTRAN language for the HCON API must include and link both the C and FORTRAN libraries.

The g32_write function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).

The g32_write function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a host.

In a DBCS environment, the g32_write function only sends SBCS data to a host in the MODE_API_T mode.

C Parameters

as Specifies the pointer to a g32_api structure.

msgbuf Specifies a pointer to a message, which is a byte string.

msglen Specifies the length, in bytes, of the message pointed to by the msgbuf parameter. The value of the msglen parameter must be greater than 0 and and less than or equal to the maximum I/O buffer size specified in the HCON session profile.

Pascal Parameters

as Specifies the g32_api structure.

buffer Specifies an address of a character-packed array.

Note: The address of a packed array can be obtained by the addr() function call: buffer := addr (<msg array name> [1]).

msglen Specifies an integer indicating the length of the message to send to the host. The msglen parameter must be greater than 0 and less than or equal to the maximum I/O buffer size specified in the HCON session profile.

FORTRAN Parameters

AS Specifies the g32_api equivalent structure as an array of integers.

MSGBUF Specifies a character array containing the data to be sent to the host.

MSGLEN Specifies the number of bytes to be sent to the host. The MSGLEN parameter must be greater than 0 and less than or equal to the maximum I/O buffer size specified in the HCON session profile.

Return Values

> 0 (greater than or equal to zero) Indicates successful completion.
The errcode field in the g32_api structure is set to the error code identifying the error.

The xerrinfo field can be set to give more information about the error.

Examples
The following example illustrates, in C language, the use of the g32_write function:

```c
#include <g32_api> /* API include */
main()
{
    struct g32_api *as; /* the g32 structure */
    char *messg; /* pointer to a character string to
                   send to the host */
    int length; /* Number of bytes sent */
    char *malloc(); /* C memory allocation function */
    int return; /* return code is no. of bytes sent */
    
    messg = malloc(30); /* allocate 30 bytes for the string */
    /* initialize message string with information */
    strcpy(messg,"string to be sent to host/0");
    length = strlen(messg); /* length of the message */
    return = g32_write(as,messg,length);
}
```

G32ALLOC Function

Purpose
Starts interaction with an API application running simultaneously on the local system.

Syntax
G32ALLOC

Description
The G32ALLOC function starts a session with an application program interface (API) application by sending a message to the g32_alloc system call indicating that the allocation is complete. The G32ALLOC function is a HCON API function that can be called by a 370 Assembler application program.

The G32ALLOC function is part of the Host Connection Program (HCON).

The G32ALLOC function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a mainframe host.

Return Values
This call sets register 0 to the following values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 0</td>
<td>Indicates a normal return or a successful call. The value returned indicates the maximum number of bytes that may be transferred to an operating system application by way of G32WRITE or received from an operating systems application by way of G32READ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 0</td>
<td>Indicates less than 0. Host API error condition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples
The following 370 Assembler code example illustrates the use of the host G32ALLOC function:

```assembly
L R11,=v(G32DATA)
USING G32DATAD,R11
G32ALLOC /* Allocate a session */
LTR R0,R0
BNM OK /* Normal completion */
C R0,G32ESESS /* Session error */
BE SESSERR
C R0,G32ESYS /* System error */
BE SYSERR
```

Related Information
Session control subroutines are the g32_alloc subroutine, g32_close subroutine, g32_dealloc subroutine, g32_open subroutine, and g32_openx subroutine.

Message interface subroutines are the g32_get_status subroutine, g32_read subroutine, and g32_write subroutine.

Additional host interface functions are the G32DLLOC function, G32READ function, and G32WRITE function.

G32DLLOC Function

Purpose
Terminates interaction with an API application running simultaneously on the local system.

Syntax
G32DLLOC

Description
The G32DLLOC function ends interaction with an API application. The G32DLLOC function is a HCON API function that can be called by a 370 Assembler applications program.

The G32DLLOC function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a mainframe host.

Return Values
This call sets register 0 (zero) to the following values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Indicates a normal return or a successful call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 0</td>
<td>Indicates less than zero. An error condition exists.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples
The following 370 Assembler code example illustrates the use of the host G32DLLOC function:

```assembly
L R11,=v(G32DATA)
USING G32DATAD,R11
G32DLLOC /* Deallocate a session */
C R0,G32ESESS /* Check for G32 error */
BE SESSERR /* Branch if error */
C R0,G32ESYS /* Check for system error */
```
Related Information
Session control subroutines are the \texttt{g32_alloc} subroutine, \texttt{g32_close} subroutine, \texttt{g32_dealloc} subroutine, \texttt{g32_open} subroutine, and \texttt{g32_openx} subroutine.

Message interface subroutines are the \texttt{g32_read} subroutine, \texttt{g32_get_status} subroutine, and \texttt{g32_write} subroutine.

Additional host interface functions are the \texttt{G32ALLOC} function, \texttt{G32READ} function, and \texttt{G32WRITE} function.

G32READ Function

Purpose
Receives a message from the API application running simultaneously on the local system.

Syntax
\texttt{G32READ}

Description
The \texttt{G32READ} function receives a message from an application programming interface (API) application. The \texttt{G32READ} function returns when a message is received. The status of the transmission is returned in register zero (R0).

The \texttt{G32READ} function returns the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Return</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R0</td>
<td>Indicates the number of bytes read.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
<td>Indicates the address of the message buffer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In VM/CMS, storage for the \texttt{read} command is obtained using the \texttt{DMSFREE} macro. R0 contains the number of bytes read. R1 contains the address of the buffer. It is the responsibility of the host application to release the buffer with a \texttt{DMSFRET} call. Assuming the byte count and address are in R0 and R1, respectively, the following code fragment should be used to free the buffer:

```
SRL R0,3
A R0,'F'1'
DMSFRET DWORDS=(0),LOC=(1)
```

In MVS/TSO, storage for the \texttt{READ} command is obtained using the \texttt{GETMAIN} macro. R0 contains the number of bytes read. R1 contains the address of the buffer. The host application must release the buffer with a \texttt{FREEMAIN} call.

```
Attention: In MVS/TSO, when programming an API assembly language application, you must be careful with the \texttt{TPUT} macro. If it is used in a sequence of \texttt{G32READ} and \texttt{G32WRITE} subroutines, it
```
will interrupt the API/API mode and switch the host to the API/3270 mode to exit. You will not be able to get the API/API mode back until you send the Enter key.

Return Values
The G32READ function sets register zero (R0) to the following values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 0</td>
<td>Normal return. Indicates the length of the message as the number of bytes read.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 0</td>
<td>Less than zero. Indicates a host API error condition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples
The following 370 Assembler code example illustrates the use of the host G32READ function:

```assembly
MEMORY    L 12,=v(G32DATA)     /* SET POINTER TO API DATA AREA */

L 2,="F:2'
G32READ  /* RECEIVE MESSAGE FROM AIX */
ST 1,ADDR  /* STORE ADDRESS OF MESSAGE */
ST 0,LEN  /* STORE LENGTH OF MESSAGE */
BAL 14,CHECK
```

Related Information
For documentation on the DMSFREE and DMSFRET macros, consult the VM/SP Entry System Programmer's Guide.

For documentation on the GETMAIN and FREEMAIN macros, consult the MVS/XA System Macros and Facilities, Volume 2 or MVS/XA Supervisor Services and Macros.

G32WRITE Function

Purpose
Sends a message to an API application running simultaneously on the local system.

Syntax
```
G32WRITE  MSG, LEN
```

Description
The G32WRITE function sends a message to an API application. The maximum number of bytes that may be transferred is specified by the value returned in register zero (R0) after a successful completion of the G32ALLOC function.

The G32WRITE function is a HCON API function that can be called by a 370 Assembler applications program.

The G32WRITE function requires one or more adapters used to connect to a mainframe host.
Parameters

**MSG**
Gives the address of the message to be sent. It may be:

- **Label**
  A label on a DC or DS statement declaring the message.
- **0(reg)**
  A register containing the address of the message.

**LEN**
Specifies the length, in bytes, of the message. It is a full word, whose contents cannot exceed the value returned by the `G32ALLOC` function in R0. It must be:

- **Label**
  The address of a full word containing the length of the message.

Return Values

The `G32WRITE` function sets register 0 to the following values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Indicates a normal return; call successful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 0</td>
<td>Less than 0. Indicates a host API error condition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

The following 370 Assembler code example illustrates the use of the host `G32WRITE` function:

```assembly
L R11,=v(G32DATA)
USING G32DATA0,R11
G32WRITE MSG1, LEN1    /* write "Hello" to AIX */
LTR R0,R0
BE WRITEOK            /* if good, go to write */
( error code )
.
.
MSG1 DC C 'HELLO'
LEN1 DC AL4(=*-MSG1)
```
Chapter 5. Network Computing System (NCS)

lb_$lookup_interface Library Routine (NCS)

Purpose
Looks up information about an interface in the Global Location Broker (GLB) database.

Syntax
void lb_$lookup_interface (object_interface, lookup_handle);
void lb_$lookup_interface (max_results, num_results, results, status);

uuid_$t *object_interface;
lb_$lookup_handle_t *lookup_handle;
unsigned long max_results;
unsigned long *num_results;
lb_$entry_t results [];
status_$t *status;

Description
The lb_$lookup_interface routine returns GLB database entries whose fields in the object_interface parameters match the specified interface. It returns information about all replicas of all objects that can be accessed through that interface.

The lb_$lookup_interface routine cannot return more than the number of matching entries specified by the max_results parameter at one time. The lookup_handle parameter directs this routine to do sequential lookup calls to find all matching entries.

Notes:
1. The Location Broker does not prevent modification of the database between lookup calls, which can cause the locations of entries relative to a lookup_handle value to change. If multiple calls are made to find all matching results in the database, the returned information may skip or duplicate entries from the database.
2. It is also possible for the results of a single lookup call to skip or duplicate entries. This can occur if the size of the results exceeds the size of a remote procedure call (RPC) packet (64KB).

Parameters
Input
object_interface Points to the Universal Unique Identifier (UUID) of the interface being looked up.
max_results Specifies the maximum number of matching entries that can be returned by a single call. This should be the number of elements in the results parameter array.

Input/Output
lookup_handle Specifies a location in the database. On input, the lookup_handle value indicates the location in the database where the search begins. An input value of lb_Sdefault_lookup_handle specifies that the search starts at the beginning of the database.
On return, the lookup_handle parameter indicates the next unsearched part of the database (that is, the point at which the next search should begin). A return value of lb_Sdefault_lookup_handle indicates that the search reached the end of the database.
Any other value indicates that the search found the number of matching entries specified by the max_results parameter before it reached the end of the database.
Output

`num_results`  Points to the number of entries that are returned in the `results` parameter array.
`results`     Specifies the array that contains the matching GLB database entries, up to the number specified in the `max_results` parameter. If the array contains any entries for servers on the local network, those entries appear first.
`status`      Points to the completion status.

Examples

To look up information in the GLB database about a matrix multiplication interface, enter:

```c
lb_lookup_interface (&matrix_if_id, &lookup_handle,
    results_array_size, &num_results,
    &matrix_if_results_array, &status);
```

Related Information

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

lb_lookup_object Library Routine (NCS)

Purpose

Looks up information about an object in the Global Location Broker (GLB) database.

Syntax

```c
void lb_lookup_object (object, lookup_handle);
void lb_lookup_object (max_results, num_results, results, status);
uuid_st *object;
lb_lookup_handle_t *lookup_handle;
unsigned long max_results;
unsigned long *num_results;
lb_entry_t results [ ];
status_st *status;
```

Description

The `lb_lookup_object` routine returns GLB database entries whose fields in the `object` parameter match the specified object. It returns information about all replicas of an object and all interfaces to the object.

The `lb_lookup_object` routine cannot return more than the number of matching entries specified by `max_results` parameter at one time. The `lookup_handle` parameter directs this routine to do sequential lookup calls to find all matching entries.

Notes:

1. The Location Broker does not prevent modification of the database between lookup calls, which can cause the locations of entries relative to a value of the `lookup_handle` parameter to change. If multiple calls are made to find all matching results in the database, the returned information may skip or duplicate entries from the database.

2. It is also possible for the results of a single lookup call to skip or duplicate entries. This can occur if the size of the results exceeds the size of a remote procedure call (RPC) packet (64KB).
Parameters

Input

**object**
Points to the Universal Unique Identifier (UUID) of the object being looked up.

**max_results**
Specifies the maximum number of matching entries that can be returned by a single call. This should be the number of elements in the **results** parameter array.

Input/Output

**lookup_handle**
Specifies a location in the database. On input, the value of the **lookup_handle** parameter indicates the location in the database where the search begins. An input value of **lb_$default_lookup_handle** specifies that the search starts at the beginning of the database.

On return, the **lookup_handle** parameter indicates the next unsearched part of the database (that is, the point at which the next search should begin). A return value of **lb_$default_lookup_handle** indicates that the search reached the end of the database. Any other value indicates that the search found at most the number of matching entries specified by the **max_results** parameter before it reached the end of the database.

Output

**num_results**
Points to the number of entries that were returned in the **results** parameter array.

**results**
Specifies the array that contains the matching GLB database entries, up to the number specified in the **max_results** parameter. If the array contains any entries for servers on the local network, those entries appear first.

**status**
Points to the completion status.

Examples

To look up GLB database entries for the bank **bank_id**, enter:

```c
lb_$lookup_object(&bank_id, &lookup_handle, MAX_LOCS, &n_locs, bank_loc, &st);
```

Related Information

[Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS)] in **AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts**.

**lb_$lookup_object_local** Library Routine

**Purpose**

Looks up information about an object in a Local Location Broker (LLB) database.

**Syntax**

```c
void lb_$lookup_object_local ()object, sockaddr, slength, lookup_handle);
void lb_$lookup_object_local (max_results, num_results, results, status);
uuid_$t *object;
socket_$addr_t *sockaddr;
unsigned long slength;
lb_$lookup_handle_t *lookup_handle;
unsigned long max_results;
unsigned long *num_results;
lb_$entry_t results [];
status_$t *status;
```
Description

The \texttt{lb\_lookup\_object\_local} routine searches the specified LLB database and returns all entries whose fields in the \texttt{object} parameter match the specified object. It returns information about all replicas of an object and all interfaces to the object that are located on the specified host.

The \texttt{lb\_lookup\_interface} routine cannot return more than the number of matching entries specified by the \texttt{max\_results} parameter at one time. The \texttt{lookup\_handle} parameter directs this routine to do sequential lookup calls to find all matching entries.

Notes:
1. The Location Broker does not prevent modification of the database between lookup calls. This can cause the locations of entries relative to a value of the \texttt{lookup\_handle} parameter to change. If multiple calls are made to find all matching results in the database, the returned information may skip or duplicate entries from the database.
2. It is also possible for the results of a single lookup call to skip or duplicate entries. This can occur if the size of the results exceeds the size of a remote procedure call (RPC) packet (64KB).

Parameters

Input

- \texttt{object} Points to the Universal Unique Identifier (UUID) of the object being looked up.
- \texttt{sockaddr} Specifies the location of the LLB database to be searched. The socket address must specify the network address of a host. However, the port number in the socket address is ignored. The lookup request is always sent to the host’s LLB port.
- \texttt{slength} Specifies the length, in bytes, of the socket address specified by the \texttt{sockaddr} parameter.
- \texttt{max\_results} Specifies the maximum number of matching entries that can be returned by a single call. This should be the number of elements in the \texttt{results} parameter array.

Input/Output

- \texttt{lookup\_handle} Specifies a location in the database. On input, the value of the \texttt{lookup\_handle} parameter indicates the location in the database where the search begins. An input value of \texttt{lb\_Default\_lookup\_handle} specifies that the search starts at the beginning of the database.
  
  On return, the \texttt{lookup\_handle} specifies the next unsearched part of the database (that is, the point at which the next search should begin). A return value of \texttt{lb\_Default\_lookup\_handle} indicates that the search reached the end of the database. Any other value indicates that the search found at most the number of matching entries specified by the \texttt{max\_results} parameter before it reached the end of the database.

Output

- \texttt{num\_results} Points to the number of entries that were returned in the \texttt{results} parameter array.
- \texttt{results} Specifies the array that contains the matching GLB database entries, up to the number specified in the \texttt{max\_results} parameter. If the array contains any entries for servers on the local network, those entries appear first.
- \texttt{status} Points to the completion status.

Examples

In the following example, the \texttt{repob} object is replicated, with only one replica located on any host. To look up information about the \texttt{repob} object, enter:

\begin{verbatim}
.lb\_lookup\_object\_local (&repob_id, &location, location_length,
 &lookup\_handle, 1, &num\_results, myob\_entry, &st);
\end{verbatim}
Since there is only one replica located on any host, the routine returns at most one result.

Related Information

ib_$lookup_range Library Routine

Purpose
Looks up information in a Global Location Broker (GLB) or Local Location Broker (LLB) database.

Syntax

```c
void lb_$lookup_range (object, object_type, object_interface, location, lookup_handle)
void lb_$lookup_range (location_length, max_results, num_results, results, status)
```

```c
uuid_$t *object;
uuid_$t *object_type;
uuid_$t *object_interface;
socket_$addr_t *location;
unsigned long location_length;
lb_$lookup_handle_t *lookup_handle;
unsigned long max_results;
unsigned long *num_results;
lb_$entry_t results [];
status_$t *status;
```

Description
The `lb_$lookup_range` routine returns database entries that contain matching `object`, `obj_type`, and `obj_interface` identifiers. A value of `uuid_$nil` in any of these input parameters acts as a wildcard and matches all values in the corresponding entry field. You can include wild cards in any combination of these parameters.

The `lb_$lookup_interface` routine cannot return more than the number of matching entries specified by the `max_results` parameter at one time. The `lookup_handle` parameter directs this routine to do sequential lookup calls to find all matching entries.

Notes:
1. The Location Broker does not prevent modification of the database between lookup calls, which can cause the locations of entries relative to a value of the `lookup_handle` parameter value to change. If multiple calls are made to find all matching results in the database, the returned information may skip or duplicate entries from the database.
2. The results of a single lookup call can possibly skip or duplicate entries. This can occur if the size of the results exceeds the size of a remote procedure call (RPC) packet (64KB).

Parameters

Input

- `object` Points to the Universal Unique Identifier (UUID) of the object being looked up.
- `object_type` Points to the UUID of the type being looked up.
- `object_interface` Points to the UUID of the interface being looked up.
- `location` Points to the location of the database to be searched. If the value of the `location_length` parameter is 0, the GLB database is searched. Otherwise, the LLB database at the host specified by the socket address is searched. If the LLB database is searched, the port number in the socket address is ignored, and the lookup request is sent to the LLB port.
location_length

Specifies the length, in bytes, of the socket address indicated by the location parameter. A value of 0 indicates that the GLB database is to be searched.

max_results

Specifies the maximum number of matching entries that can be returned by a single call. This should be the number of elements in the results array.

Input/Output

lookup_handle

Specifies a location in the database. On input, the value of the lookup_handle parameter indicates the location in the database where the search begins. An input value of lb_default_lookup_handle specifies that the search starts at the beginning of the database.

On return, the lookup_handle parameter indicates the next unsearched part of the database (that is, the point at which the next search should begin). A return value of lb_default_lookup_handle indicates that the search reached the end of the database.

Any other value indicates that the search found the number of matching entries specified by the max_results parameter before it reached the end of the database.

Output

num_results

Points to the number of entries that were returned in the results parameter array.

results

Specifies the array that contains the matching GLB database entries, up to the number specified in the max_results parameter. If the array contains any entries for servers on the local network, those entries appear first.

status

Points to the completion status.

Examples

To look up information in the GLB database about the change_if interface to the proc_db2 object (which is of the proc_db type), enter:

```
lb_lookup_range (&proc_db2_id, &proc_db_id, &change_if_id,
    glb, 0, &lookup_handle, 10, &num_results, results, &st);
```

The name glb is defined elsewhere as a null pointer. The results parameter is a 10-element array of the lb_entry_t type.

Related Information

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

lb_lookup_type Library Routine

Purpose

Looks up information about a type in the Global Location Broker (GLB) database.

Syntax

```
void lb_lookup_type ( uuid_t *object_type,
    lb_lookup_handle_t *lookup_handle,
    unsigned long max_results);
void lb_lookup_type ( unsigned long *num_results,
    lb_entry_t results[]);
```

Description

The `lb_$lookup_type` routine returns GLB database entries whose fields in the `object_type` parameter match the specified type. It returns information about all replicas of all objects of that type and about all interfaces to each object.

The `lb_$lookup_type` routine cannot return more than the number of matching entries specified by the `max_results` parameter at one time. The `lookup_handle` parameter directs this routine to do sequential lookup calls to find all matching entries.

Notes:
1. The Location Broker does not prevent modification of the database between lookup calls, which can cause the locations of entries relative to a value of the `lookup_handle` parameter to change. If multiple calls are made to find all matching results in the database, the returned information may skip or duplicate entries from the database.
2. It is also possible for the results of a single lookup call to skip or duplicate entries. This can occur if the size of the results exceeds the size of a remote procedure call (RPC) packet (64KB).

Parameters

Input

- `object_type` Points to the Universal Unique Identifier (UUID) of the type being looked up.
- `max_results` Specifies the maximum number of matching entries that can be returned by a single call. This should be the number of elements in the `results` parameter array.

Input/Output

- `lookup_handle` Specifies a location in the database. On input, the value of the `lookup_handle` parameter indicates the location in the database where the search begins. An input value of `lb_$default_lookup_handle` specifies that the search starts at the beginning of the database.

  On return, the `lookup_handle` parameter indicates the next unsearched part of the database (that is, the point at which the next search should begin). A return value of `lb_$default_lookup_handle` indicates that the search reached the end of the database. Any other value indicates that the search found at most the number of matching entries specified by the `max_results` parameter before it reached the end of the database.

Output

- `num_results` Points to the number of entries that were returned in the `results` parameter array.
- `results` Specifies the array that contains the matching GLB database entries, up to the number specified in the `max_results` parameter. If the array contains any entries for servers on the local network, those entries appear first.
- `status` Points to the completion status.

Examples

To look up information in the GLB database about the `array_proc` type, enter:

```
  lb_$lookup_type (&array_proc_id, &lookup_handle, 10,
                 &num_results, &results, &st)
```

The `results` parameter is a 10-element array of the `lb_Sentry_t` type.
Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

lb_$register Library Routine (NCS)

Purpose
Registers an object and an interface with the Location Broker.

Syntax
void lb_$register (object, object_type, object_interface, flags, annotation);
void lb_$register (sockaddr, slength, entry, status);

Description
The lb_$register routine registers with the Location Broker a specific interface to an object and the location of a server that exports that interface. This routine replaces an existing entry in the Location Broker database that matches the object, object_type, and object_interface parameters as well as both the address family and host in the socket address specified by the sockaddr parameter. If no such entry exists, the routine adds a new entry to the database.

If the flags parameter has a value of lb_$server_flag_local, the entry is registered only in the Local Location Broker (LLB) database at the host where the call is issued. Otherwise, the entry is registered in both the LLB and the Global Location Broker (GLB) databases.

Parameters

Input
object Points to the Universal Unique Identifier (UUID) of the object being looked up.
object_type Points to the UUID of the type being looked up.
object_interface Points to the UUID of the interface being looked up.
flags Points to the server that implements the interface. The value must be 0 or lb_$server_flag_local.
annotation Specifies information, such as textual descriptions of the object and the interface. It is set in a 64-character array.
sockaddr Points to the socket address of the server that exports the interface to the object.
slength Specifies the length, in bytes, of the socket address (sockaddr) parameter.

Output
entry Points to the copy of the entry that was entered in the Location Broker database.
status Points to the completion status.
Examples
To register the bank interface to the bank_id object, enter:

```c
lb_$register (&bank_id, &bank_$uuid, &bank_$if_spec.id, 0,
    BankName, &saddr, slen, &entry, &st);
```

Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

lb_$unregister Library Routine

Purpose
Removes an entry from the Location Broker database.

Syntax
```c
void lb_$unregister (entry, status)
```

```c
lb_$entry_t *entry;
status_$t *status;
```

Description
The lb_$unregister routine removes from the Location Broker database the entry that matches the value supplied in the entry parameter. The value of the entry parameter should be identical to that returned by the lb_$register routine when the database entry was created. However, the lb_$unregister routine does not compare all of the fields in the entry parameter. It ignores the flags field, the annotation field, and the port number in the saddr field.

This routine removes the entry from the Local Location Broker (LLB) database on the local host (the host that issues the call). If the flags field of the entry parameter is not the value lb_$server_flag_local, this routine also removes the entry from all replicas of the Global Location Broker (GLB) database.

Parameters

Input

- `entry` Points to the entry being removed from the Location Broker database.

Output

- `status` Points to the completion status.

Examples
To unregister the entry specified by the BankEntry results structure, which was obtained from a previous call to the lb_$register routine, enter:
```
lb_$unregister (&BankEntry, &st);
```

Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
pfm_$cleanup Library Routine

Purpose
Establishes a cleanup handler.

Syntax
#include <idl/c/base.h>
#include <idl/c/pfm.h>

status_$t
pfm_$cleanup( cleanup_record )
pfm_$cleanup_rec *clean-up_record;

Description
The pfm_$cleanup routine establishes a cleanup handler that is executed when a fault occurs. A cleanup handler is a piece of code executed before a program exits when a signal is received by the process. The cleanup handler begins with a call to the pfm_$cleanup routine. This routine registers an entry point with the system where program execution resumes when a fault occurs. When a fault occurs, execution resumes after the most recent call to the pfm_$cleanup routine.

There can be more than one cleanup handler in a program. Multiple cleanup handlers are executed consecutively on a last-in-first-out basis (LIFO), starting with the most recently established handler and ending with the first cleanup handler. The system provides a default cleanup handler established at program invocation. The default cleanup handler is always called last, just before a program exits, and releases any system resources still held before returning control to the process that invoked the program.

When called to establish a cleanup handler, the pfm_$cleanup routine returns the pfm_$cleanup_set status to indicate that the cleanup handler was successfully established. When the cleanup handler is entered in response to a fault signal, the pfm_$cleanup routine effectively returns the value of the fault that triggered the handler.

Note: Cleanup handler code runs with asynchronous faults inhibited. When the pfm_$cleanup routine returns something other than pfm_$cleanup_set status, which indicates that a fault has occurred, there are four possible ways to leave the cleanup code:

- The program can call the pfm_$signal routine to start the next cleanup handler with a different fault signal.
- The program can call the pfm_$exit routine to start the next cleanup handler with the same fault signal.
- The program can continue with the code following the cleanup handler. It should generally call the pfm_Senable routine to re-enable asynchronous faults. Execution continues from the end of the cleanup handler code; it does not resume where the fault signal was received.
- The program can re-establish the handler by calling the pfm_Sreset_cleanup routine before proceeding.

Parameters

Input

cleanup_record A record of the context in which the pfm_$cleanup routine is called. A program should treat this as an opaque data structure and not try to alter or copy its contents. It is needed by the pfm_$cleanup and pfm_Sreset_cleanup routines to restore the context of the calling process at the cleanup handler entry point.
Examples
To establish a cleanup handler for a routine, use the following:

\[ \text{fst} = \text{pfm\_cleanup}(\text{crec}) \]

where \( \text{fst} \) is of type \texttt{status\_st} and \( \text{crec} \) is of type \texttt{pfm\_s\_cleanup\_crec}.

Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

pfm\_enable Library Routine

Purpose
Enables asynchronous faults.

Syntax

```c
#include <idl/c/base.h>
#include <idl/c/pfm.h>

void
pfm\_enable (void)
```

Description
The \texttt{pfm\_enable} routine enables asynchronous faults after they have been inhibited by a call to the \texttt{pfm\_inhibit} routine. The \texttt{pfm\_enable} routine causes the operating system to pass asynchronous faults on to the calling process.

While faults are inhibited, the operating system holds at most one asynchronous fault. Consequently, when the \texttt{pfm\_enable} subroutine returns, there can be at most one fault waiting on the process. If more than one fault was received between calls to the \texttt{pfm\_inhibit} and \texttt{pfm\_enable} routines, the process receives the first asynchronous fault received while faults were inhibited.

Examples
To enable asynchronous interrupts to occur after a call to the \texttt{pfm\_inhibit} routine, use the following:

\[ \text{pfm\_enable}(); \]

Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

pfm\_enable\_faults Library Routine

Purpose
Enables asynchronous faults.

Syntax

```c
#include <idl/c/base.h>
#include <idl/c/pfm.h>

void
pfm\_enable\_faults (void)
```

---
Description
The `pfm_$enable_faults` routine enables asynchronous faults after they have been inhibited by a call to the `pfm_$inhibit_faults` routine. The `pfm_$enable_faults` routine causes the operating system to pass asynchronous faults on to the calling process.

While faults are inhibited, the operating system holds at most one asynchronous fault. Consequently, when `pfm_$enable_faults` returns, there can be at most one fault waiting on the process. If more than one fault was received between calls to the `pfm_$inhibit_faults` and `pfm_$enable_faults` routines, the process receives the first asynchronous fault received while faults were inhibited.

Examples
To enable faults to occur after a call to `pfm_$inhibit_faults`, use the following:
```c
pfm_$enable_faults();
```

Related Information
[Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS)] in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

pfm_$inhibit Library Routine

Purpose
Inhibits asynchronous faults.

Syntax
```c
#include <idl/c/base.h>
#include <idl/c/pfm.h>

void
pfm_$inhibit (void)
```

Description
The `pfm_$inhibit` routine prevents asynchronous faults from being passed to the calling process. While faults are inhibited, the operating system holds at most one asynchronous fault. Consequently, a call to the `pfm_$inhibit` routine can result in the loss of some signals. For that and other reasons, it is good practice to inhibit faults only when absolutely necessary.

Note: This routine has no effect on the processing of synchronous faults, such as access violations or floating-point and overflow exceptions.

Examples
To prevent asynchronous interrupts from occurring in a critical portion of a routine, use the following:
```c
pfm_$inhibit();
```

Related Information
[Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS)] in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

pfm_$inhibit_faults Library Routine

Purpose
Inhibits asynchronous faults, but allows task switching.
Syntax
#include <idl/c/base.h>
#include <idl/c/pfm.h>
void 
 pfm_$inhibit_faults (void)

Description
The pfm_$inhibit routine prevents asynchronous faults, except for time-sliced task switching, from being passed to the calling process. While faults are inhibited, the operating system holds at most one asynchronous fault. Consequently, a call to the pfm_$inhibit_faults routine can result in the loss of some signals. For that and other reasons, it is good practice to inhibit faults only when absolutely necessary.

Note: This routine has no effect on the processing of synchronous faults, such as access violations or floating-point and overflow exceptions.

Examples
To prevent faults from occurring in a critical portion of a routine, use the following:

pfm_$inhibit_faults();

Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

pfm_$init Library Routine

Purpose
Initializes the program fault management (PFM) package.

Syntax
#include <idl/c/base.h>
#include <idl/c/pfm.h>

void 
 pfm_$init (flags)
unsigned long flags;

Description
The pfm_$init routine initializes the PFM package. Applications that use the PFM package should invoke the pfm_$init routine before invoking any other Network Computing System (NCS) routines.

Parameters

Input
flags Indicates which initialization activities to perform. Currently only one value is valid:

pfm_$init_signal_handlers. This causes C signals to be intercepted and converted to PFM signals. The signals intercepted are SIGINT, SIGILL, SIGFPE, SIGTERM, SIGHUP, SIGQUIT, SIGTRAP, SIGBUS, SIGSEGV, and SIGSYS.
**Examples**

To initialize the PFM subsystem, enter:

```
pfm_$init(pfm_$init_signal_handlers);
```

**Related Information**

[Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.](#)

---

**pfm_$reset_cleanup Library Routine**

**Purpose**

Resets a cleanup handler.

**Syntax**

```
#include <idl/c/base.h>
#include <idl/c/pfm.h>

void pfm_$reset_cleanup (cleanup_record, status)

    pfm$_cleanup_rec *cleanup_record;
    status_t *status;
```

**Description**

The `pfm_$reset_cleanup` routine re-establishes the cleanup handler last entered so that any subsequent errors enter it first. This procedure should only be used within cleanup handler code.

**Parameters**

**Input**

`cleanup_record` Indicates a record of the context at the cleanup handler entry point. It is supplied by the `pfm_$cleanup` routine when the cleanup handler is first established.

**Output**

`status` Points to the completion status.

**Examples**

To re-establish a cleanup handler, enter:

```
pfm_$reset_cleanup(crec, st);
```

where the `crec` cleanup record is a valid cleanup handler.

**Related Information**

[Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.](#)
pfm_$rls_cleanup Library Routine

Purpose
Releases cleanup handlers.

Syntax
#include <idl/c/base.h>
#include <idl/c/pfm.h>

void pfm_$rls_cleanup(cleanup_record, status)
pfm_$cleanup_rec *cleanup_record;
status_$t *status;

Description
The pfm_$rls_cleanup routine releases the cleanup handler associated with the cleanup_record parameter and all cleanup handlers established after it.

Parameters
Input

cleanup_record Indicates the cleanup record for the first cleanup handler to release.

Output

status Points to the completion status. If the status parameter has a value of pfm_$bad_rls_order, it means that the caller attempted to release a cleanup handler before releasing all handlers established after it. This status is only a warning. The intended cleanup handler is released, along with all cleanup handlers established after it.

Examples
To release an established cleanup handler, enter:
pfm_$rls_cleanup(crec, st);

where crec is a valid cleanup record established by the pfm_$cleanup routine.

Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

pfm_$signal Library Routine (NCS)

Purpose
Signals the calling process.

Syntax
#include <idl/c/base.h>
#include <idl/c/pfm.h>
void
pfm_$signal (fault_signal)
status_$t *fault_signal;

Description
The pfm_$signal routine signals the fault specified by the fault_signal parameter to the calling process. It is usually called to leave cleanup handlers.

Note: This routine does not return when successful.

Parameters

Input
fault_signal Indicates a fault code.

Examples
To send the calling process a fault signal, enter:
pfm_$signal(fst);

where fst is a valid PFM fault.

Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

description

Description
The rpc_$alloc_handle routine creates an unbound RPC handle that identifies a particular object but not a particular server or host. A remote procedure call made using an unbound handle is broadcast to all Local Location Brokers (LLBs) on the local network. If the call's interface and the object identified by the handle are both registered with any LLB, that LLB forwards the request to the registering server. The client RPC runtime library returns the first response that it receives and binds the handle to the server.

Note: This routine is used by clients only.
Parameters

Input

*object_id*  
Points to the Universal Unique Identifier (UUID) of the object to be accessed. If there is no specific object, specify *uuid_$nil* as the value.

*family*  
Specifies the address family to use in communications to access the object.

Output

*status*  
Points to the completion status.

Return Values

Upon successful completion, the **rpc$_alloc_handle** routine returns an RPC handle identifying the remote object in the form *handle_t*. This handle is used as the first input parameter to remote procedure calls with explicit handles.

Examples

The following statement allocates a handle that identifies the Acme company’s payroll database object:

```
handle = rpc$_alloc_handle (&acme_pay_id, socket$_dds, &st);
```

Related Information

[Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS)] in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

### rpc$_bind Library Routine

**Purpose**

Allocates an Remote Procedure Call (RPC) handle and sets its binding to a server.

**Syntax**

```
handle_t rpc$_bind ( object_id, sockaddr, slength, status)
```

- `uuid_t *object_id;`
- `socket$_addr_t *sockaddr;`
- `unsigned long slength;`
- `us_t *status;`

**Description**

The **rpc$_bind** function creates a fully bound RPC handle that identifies a particular object and server. This routine is equivalent to an **rpc$_alloc_handle** routine followed by an **rpc$_set_binding** routine.

**Note:** This routine is used by clients only.

**Parameters**

**Input**

*object_id*  
Points to the Universal Unique Identifier (UUID) of the object to be accessed. If there is no specific object, specify *uuid$_nil* as the value.

*sockaddr*  
Points to the socket address of the server.

*slength*  
Specifies the length, in bytes, of the socket address (sockaddr) parameter.
Output

status 
Points to the completion status.

Return Values

Upon successful completion, this routine returns an RPC handle (handle_t) that identifies the remote object. This handle is used as the first input parameter to remote procedure calls with explicit handles.

Examples

The following example binds a banking client program to the specified object and socket address:

```c
h = rpc_bind(&bank_id, &bank_loc[0].saddr, bank_loc[0].saddr_len, &st);
```

The bank_loc structure is the results parameter of a previous Location Broker lookup call.

Related Information

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

rpc$_clear_binding Library Routine

Purpose

Unsets the binding between a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) handle and a host and server.

Syntax

```c
void rpc$_clear_binding (handle_t handle, status_t *status);
```

Description

The rpc$_clear_binding routine removes any association between an RPC handle and a particular server and host, but does not remove the association between the handle and an object. This routine saves the RPC handle so that it can be reused to access the same object, either by broadcasting or after resetting the binding to another server.

A remote procedure call made using an unbound handle is broadcast to all Local Location Brokers (LLBs) on the local network. If the call’s interface and the object identified by the handle are both registered with any LLB, that LLB forwards the request to the registering server. The client RPC runtime library returns the first response that it receives and binds the handle to the server.

The rpc$_clear_binding routine reverses an rpc$_set_binding routine.

Parameters

Input

handle 
Specifies the RPC handle from which the binding is being cleared.

Output

status 
Points to the completion status.
Note: This routine is used by clients only.

Examples
To clear the binding represented in a handle, enter:
rpc_$clear_binding(handle, &st);

Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

rpcl clear server binding Library Routine

Purpose
Unsets the binding between a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) handle and a server.

Syntax
void rpc_sclear_server binding (handle, status)
handle_t handle;
status_t *status;

Description
The rpc_sclear_server binding routine removes the association between an RPC handle and a particular server (which is a particular port number), but does not remove the associations with an object and a host. For example, the routine unmaps the handle to the port number, but it leaves the object and host associated through a network address.

This routine replaces a fully bound handle with a bound-to-host handle. A bound-to-host handle identifies an object located on a particular host, but does not identify a server exporting an interface to the object.

If a client uses a bound-to-host handle to make a remote procedure call, the call is sent to the Local Location Broker (LLB) forwarding port at the host identified by the handle. If the call’s interface and the object identified by the handle are both registered with the host’s LLB, the LLB forwards the request to the registering server. When the client RPC runtime library receives a response, it binds the handle to the server. Subsequent remote procedure calls that use this handle are then sent directly to the bound server’s port.

The rpc_sclear_server binding routine is used for client error recovery when a server terminates. The port that a server uses when it restarts is not necessarily the same port that it used previously. Therefore, the binding that the client was using may not be correct. This routine enables the client to unbind from the nonfunctioning server while retaining the binding to the host. When the client sends a request, the binding is automatically set to the server’s new port.

Note: This routine is used by clients only.

Parameters

Input
handle Specifies the RPC handle from which the server binding is being cleared.
Output

status  Points to the completion status.

Examples
To clear the server binding represented in a handle, enter:

rpc_$clear_server_binding(handle, &st);

Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

rpc_$dup_handle Library Routine

Purpose
Makes a copy of a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) handle.

Syntax

```c
handle_t rpc_$dup_handle (handle, status)
handle_t handle;
status_$t *status;
```

Description
The rpc_$dup_handle routine returns a copy of an existing RPC handle. Both handles can then be used in the client program for concurrent multiple accesses to a binding. Because all duplicates of a handle reference the same data, a call to the rpc_$set_binding, rpc_$clear_binding, or rpc_$clear_server_binding routine made on any one duplicate affects all duplicates. However, an RPC handle is not freed until the rpc_$free_handle routine is called on all copies of the handle.

Note: This routine is used by clients only.

Parameters

Input
handle  Specifies the RPC handle to be copied.

Output
status  Points to the completion status.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this routine returns the duplicate handle (handle_t).

Examples
To create a copy of a handle, enter:

```c
thread_2_handle = rpc_$dup_handle(handle, &st);
```

The copy is called thread_2_handle.
Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

rpc_free_handle Library Routine

Purpose
Frees a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) handle.

Syntax

```c
void rpc_free_handle (handle, status)
handle_t handle;
status_t *status;
```

Description
The `rpc_free_handle` routine frees an RPC handle by clearing the association between the handle and a server or an object, and then releasing the resources identified by the RPC handle. The client program cannot use a handle after it is freed.

To make multiple RPC calls using the same interface but different socket addresses, replace the binding in an existing handle with the `rpc_set_binding` routine instead of creating a new handle with the `rpc_free_handle` and `rpc_bind` routines.

To free copies of RPC handles created by the `rpc_dup_handle` routine, use the `rpc_free_handle` routine once for each copy of the handle. However, the RPC runtime library does not differentiate between calling the `rpc_free_handle` routine several times on one copy of a handle and calling it one time for each of several copies of a handle. Therefore, if you use duplicate handles, you must ensure that no thread inadvertently makes multiple `rpc_free_handle` calls on a single handle.

Note: This routine is used by clients only.

Parameters

Input
`handle` Specifies the RPC handle to be freed.

Output
`status` Points to the completion status.

Examples
To free two copies of a handle, enter:
```
rpc_free_handle(handle, &st);
rpc_free_handle(thread_2_handle, &st);
```

Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
**rpc$_inq_binding Library Routine (NCS)**

**Purpose**
Returns the socket address represented by a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) handle.

**Syntax**
```c
void rpc$_inq_binding (handle_t handle,
socket$_addr_t *sockaddr,
slength_t *slength,
status_t *status);
handle_t handle;
socket$_addr_t *sockaddr;
sunsigned long *slength;
status_t *status;
```

**Description**
The **rpc$_inq_binding** routine enables a client to determine the socket address, and therefore the server, identified by an RPC handle. It can be used to determine which server is responding to a remote procedure call when a client uses an unbound handle in the call.

**Note:** This routine is used by clients only.

**Parameters**

**Input**
- `handle` Specifies an RPC handle.

**Output**
- `sockaddr` Points to the socket address represented by the `handle` parameter.
- `slength` Points to the length, in bytes, of the socket address (`sockaddr`).
- `status` Points to the completion status.

**Return Values**
The **rpc$_inq_binding** routine fails if the following is true:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rpc$_unbound_handle</td>
<td>The handle is not bound and does not represent a specific host address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**
The Location Broker administrative tool, **lb_admin**, uses the following statement to determine the particular GLB that responded to a lookup request:

```c
rpc$_inq_binding(glb$_handle, &global_broker_addr,
    &global_broker_addr_len, &status);
```

**Related Information**
- [Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS)](AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts)
rpc_$inq_object Library Routine (NCS)

Purpose
Returns the object Universal Unique Identifier (UUID) represented by a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) handle.

Syntax
```c
void rpc_$inq_object (handle, object_id, status)
handle_t handle;
uuid_t *object_id;
status_t *status;
```

Description
The `rpc_$inq_object` routine enables a server to determine the particular object that a client is accessing. A server must use the `rpc_$inq_object` routine if it exports an interface through which multiple objects may be accessed.

A server can make this call only if the interface uses explicit handles (that is, if each operation in the interface has a handle argument). If the interface uses an implicit handle, the handle identifier is not passed to the server.

Note: This routine is used by servers only.

Parameters

Input
- **handle** Specifies an RPC handle.

Output
- **object_id** Points to the UUID of the object identified by the `handle` parameter.
- **status** Points to the completion status.

Examples
A database server that manages multiple databases must determine the particular database to be accessed whenever it receives a remote procedure call. Each manager routine therefore makes the following call:
```c
rpc_$inq_object(handle, &db_uuid, &st);
```

The routine then uses the returned UUID to identify the database to be accessed.

Related Information
- Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

rpc_$listen Library Routine

Purpose
Listens for and handles remote procedure call packets.
Syntax

```c
void rpc_$listen (max_calls, status);
```

```c
unsigned long max_calls;
```

```c
status_t *status;
```

Description

The `rpc_$listen` routine dispatches incoming remote procedure call requests to manager procedures and returns the responses to the client. You must issue an `rpc_$use_family` or `rpc_$use_family_wk` routine before you use the `rpc_$listen` routine.

Note: This routine is used by servers only.

Parameters

Input

`max_calls` Specifies the maximum number of calls (in the range 1 through 10) that a server is allowed to process concurrently. Although concurrent processes are not supported in this operating system's implementation of Network Computing System (NCS), this parameter is provided for compatibility with other NCS implementations.

Output

`status` Points to the completion status.

Return Values

This routine normally does not return.

Examples

To have a server listen for incoming remote procedure call requests, enter:

```c
rpc_$listen(5, &status);
```

Note: The `max_calls` parameter, which is set at 5 in the example, is insignificant because this implementation of NCS does not support concurrent processes. The parameter is provided for compatibility with other implementations.

Related Information

[Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS)] in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

**rpc_$name_to_sockaddr Library Routine**

**Purpose**

Converts a host name and port number to a socket address.

**Syntax**

```c
void rpc_$name_to_sockaddr (name, nlength, port, family, sockaddr, slength, status);
```

```c
char *name;
```

```c
unsigned long nlength;
```

```c
unsigned long port;
```

```c
unsigned long family;
```
socket_addr_t *sockaddr;
unsigned long *slen;
status_t *status;

Description
The rpc_name_to_sockaddr routine provides the socket address for a socket, given the host name, the port number, and the address family.

You can specify the socket address information either as one text string in the name parameter, or by passing each of the three elements as a separate parameter. When three separate elements are passed, the name parameter should contain only the host name.

Parameters

Input
name Points to a host name, and optionally, a port and an address family, in the form: family:port]. The family: and [port] parameters are optional. If you specify a family variable as part of the name parameter, you must specify socket_unspec in the family parameter. The only supported value for the family variable is ip. The host parameter specifies the host name, and port specifies a port number in integer form.

nlength Specifies the number of characters in the name parameter.

port Specifies the socket port number. If you are not specifying a well-known port, this parameter should have the value socket_unspec_port. The returned socket address will specify the Local Location Broker (LLB) forwarding port at the host. If you specify the port number in the name parameter, this parameter is ignored.

family Specifies the address family to use for the socket address. This value corresponds to the communications protocol used to access the socket and determines how the socket address (sockaddr) parameter is expressed. If you specify the address family in the name parameter, this parameter must have the value socket_unspec.

Output
sockaddr Points to the socket address corresponding to the name, port, and family parameters.

slen Points to the length, in bytes, of the socket address (specified by the sockaddr parameter).

status Points to the completion status.

Examples
To place in the sockaddr structure a socket address that specifies the LLB forwarding port at the host identified by host_name, enter:

rpc_name_to_sockaddr(host_name, strlen(host_name),
    socket_unspec_port, socket_dds, &sockaddr, &slen, &st);

Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

rpc_register Library Routine

Purpose
Registers an interface at a server.
Syntax

```c
void rpc_register (if_spec, epv, status);
```

```c
rpc_if_spec_t *if_spec;
rpc_epv_t epv;
status_t *status;
```

Description

The `rpc_register` routine registers an interface with the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) runtime library. After an interface is registered, the RPC runtime library passes requests for that interface to the server.

You can call `rpc_register` multiple times with the same interface (for example, from various subroutines of the same server), but each call must specify the same entry point vector (EPV). Each registration increments a reference count for the registered interface. An equal number of calls to the `rpc_unregister` routine are then required to unregister the interface.

Parameters

Input

- `if_spec` Points to the interface being registered.
- `epv` Specifies the EPV for the operations in the interface.

Output

- `status` Points to the completion status.

Note: This routine is used by servers only.

Return Values

The `rpc_register` routine fails if one or more of the following is true:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rpc_too_many_ifs</td>
<td>The maximum number of interfaces is already registered with the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpc_illegal_register</td>
<td>You are trying to register an interface that is already registered, and you are using an EPV different from the one used when the interface was first registered.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

To register a `bank` interface with the bank server host's RPC runtime library, enter:

```c
rpc_register(&bank_if_spec, bank_server_epv, &st);
```

Related Information

[Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS)](AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts)

**rpc_set_binding** Library Routine

Purpose

Associates a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) handle with a server.
Syntax

```c
rpc_set_binding ( handle, sockaddr, slength, status)
```

```c
struct handle_t *handle;
struct socket_addr_t *sockaddr;
int slength;
struct status_t *status;
```

Description

The `rpc_set_binding` routine sets the binding of an RPC handle to the specified server. The handle then identifies a specific object at a specific server. Any subsequent remote procedure calls that a client makes using the handle are sent to this destination. This routine can also replace an existing binding in a fully bound handle, or set the binding in an unbound handle.

**Note:** This routine is used by clients only.

Parameters

**Input**

- `handle` Specifies an RPC handle.
- `sockaddr` Specifies the socket address of the server with which the handle is being associated.
- `slength` Specifies the length, in bytes, of the socket address (`sockaddr`) parameter.

**Output**

- `status` Specifies the completion status.

Examples

To set the binding on the `m_handle` handle to the first server in the `results` array, which was returned by a previous Location Broker lookup call, enter:

```c
rpc_set_binding(m_handle, &lb_results[0].saddr, 
                &lb_results[0].saddr_len, &st);
```

Related Information

[Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS)] in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

**rpc_sockaddr_to_name Library Routine**

Purpose

Converts a socket address to a host name and port number.

Syntax

```c
void rpc_sockaddr_to_name ( sockaddr, slength, name, nlength, port, status)
```

```c
socket_addr_t *sockaddr;
unsigned long slength;
unsigned long *nlength;
char *name;
unsigned long *port;
status_t *status;
```
Description
The rpc_$sockaddr_to_name routine provides the address family, the host name, and the port number identified by the specified socket address.

Parameters

Input
sockaddr Points to a socket address.
slength Specifies the length, in bytes, of socket address (sockaddr) parameter.

Input/Output
nlength On input, points to the length of the name parameter in the buffer. On output, points to the number of characters returned in the name parameter.

Output
name Points to a character string that contains the host name and the address family in the format: family: host. The value of the family parameter must be ip.
port Points to the socket port number.
status Points to the completion status.

Examples
To take the bank server's socket address, return the server's host name and port, and then print the information, enter:

rpc_$sockaddr_to_name(&saddr, slen, name, &namelen, &port, &st);
printf("(bankd) name=\%s, port=\d\n", name, namelen, port);

Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

rpc_$unregister Library Routine

Purpose
Unregisters an interface.

Syntax

void rpc_$unregister ( if_spec, status)
rpc_$if_spec_t *if_spec;
status_$t *status;

Description
The rpc_$unregister routine unregisters an interface that the server previously registered with the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) runtime library. After an interface is unregistered, the RPC runtime library does not pass requests for that interface to the server.

If a server uses multiple calls to the rpc_Register routine to register an interface more than once, then the server must call the rpc_Unregister routine an equal number of times to unregister the interface.
Parameters

Input

if_spec  
Points to the interface being unregistered.

Output

status  
Points to the completion status.

Note:  This routine is used by servers only.

Examples

To unregister a matrix arithmetic interface, use the following:

```
rpc_unregister (&matrix_if_spec, &st);
```

Related Information

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

**rpc_use_family Library Routine**

**Purpose**

Creates a socket of a specified address family for a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) server.

**Syntax**

```
void rpc_use_family (family, sockaddr, slength, status)

unsigned long family;
socket_addr_t *sockaddr;
unsigned long *slength;
status_t *status;
```

**Description**

The `rpc_use_family` routine creates a socket for a server without specifying its port number. (The RPC runtime software assigns the port number.) Use this routine to create the server socket unless the server must listen on a particular well-known port. If the socket must listen on a specific well-known port, use the `rpc_use_family_wk` routine to create the socket.

A server can listen on more than one socket. However, a server normally does not listen on more than one socket for each address family, regardless of the number of interfaces that it exports. Therefore, most servers should make this call once for each supported address family.

Note:  This routine is used by servers only.

**Parameters**

Input

family  
Specifies the address family of the socket to be created. This value corresponds to the communications protocol used to access the socket and determines how the socket address (`sockaddr`) parameter is expressed.
sockaddr
Points to the socket address of the socket on which the server listens.

slen
Points to the length, in bytes, of the socket address (sockaddr) parameter.

status
Points to the completion status.

Return Values
The rpc$_use_family routine can fail if one or more of the following is true:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rpc$_cant_create_sock</td>
<td>The RPC runtime library is unable to create a socket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpc$_cant_bind_sock</td>
<td>The RPC runtime library created a socket but is unable to bind it to a socket address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpc$_too_many_sockets</td>
<td>The server is trying to use more than the maximum number of sockets allowed. The server has called the rpc$_use_family or rpc$_use_family_wk routines too many times.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples
To create the bank server's socket, enter:
rpc$_use_family(atoi(argv[1]), &saddr, &slen, &st);

The numeric value of the address family to be used is supplied as an argument to the program.

Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

rpc$_use_family_wk Library Routine

Purpose
Creates a socket with a well-known port for a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) server.

Syntax

```
void rpc$_use_family_wk (family, if_spec, sockaddr, slength, status);
```

Description

The rpc$_use_family_wk routine creates a socket that uses the port specified with the if_spec parameter. Use this routine to create a socket if a server must listen on a particular well-known port. Otherwise, create the socket with the rpc$_use_family routine.

A server can listen on more than one socket. However, a server normally does not listen on more than one socket for each address family, regardless of the number of interfaces that it exports. Therefore, most servers that use well-known ports should make this call once for each supported address family.

Note: This routine is used by servers only.
Parameters

Input

family Specifies the address family of the socket to be created. This value corresponds to the communications protocol used to access the socket and determines how the socket address (sockaddr) parameter is expressed.

if_spec Points to the interface that will be registered by the server. The well-known port is specified as an interface attribute.

Output

sockaddr Points to the socket address of the socket on which the server listens.

slen Points to the length, in bytes, of the socket address (sockaddr) parameter.

status Points to the completion status.

Return Values

The rpc_$use_family_wk routine fails if one of the following is true:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rpc_cant_create_sock</td>
<td>The RPC runtime library is unable to create a socket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpc_cant_bind_sock</td>
<td>The RPC runtime library created a socket but is unable to bind it to a socket address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpc_too_many_sockets</td>
<td>The server is trying to use more than the maximum number of sockets allowed. The server has called the rpc_Suse_family or rpc_Suse_family_wk routines too many times.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpc_addr_in_use</td>
<td>The specified address and port are already in use. This is caused by multiple calls to the rpc_$use_family_wk routine with the same well-known port.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

To create a well-known socket for an array processor server, enter:
rpc $use_family_wk (socket$internet, &matrix$if_spec, &sockaddr, slen, &st);

Related Information

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

uuid$_decode Library Routine (NCS)

Purpose

Converts a character-string representation of a Universal Unique Identifier (UUID) into a UUID.

Syntax

```c
void uuid$_decode (char *uuid_string, uuid, status)
char *uuid_string;
uuid$_t *uuid;
status$_t *status;
```
Description
The `uuid_decode` routine returns the UUID corresponding to a valid character-string representation of a UUID.

Parameters
Input

`uuid_string` Points to the character-string representation of a UUID in the form `uuid_string_t`.

Output

`uuid` Points to the UUID that corresponds to the character string represented in the `uuid_string` parameter.
`status` Points to the completion status.

Examples
The following call returns as `my_uuid` the UUID corresponding to the character-string representation in `my_uuid_rep`:

```c
uuid_decode (my_uuid_rep, &my_uuid, &status);
```

Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

**uuid_encode** Library Routine (NCS)

Purpose
Converts a Universal Unique Identifier (UUID) into its character-string representation.

Syntax

```c
void uuid_encode (uuid, uuid_string);
```

`uuid *uuid;`
`char *uuid_string;`

Description
The `uuid_encode` call returns the character-string representation of a UUID.

Parameters
Input

`uuid` Points to the UUID.

Output

`uuid_string` Points to the character-string representation of a UUID, in the form `uuid_string_t`. 
Examples
The following call returns as my_uuid_rep the character-string representation for the UUID my_uuid:

```c
uuid_encode (&my_uuid, my_uuid_rep);
```

Related Information
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

**uuid_gen Library Routine (NCS)**

**Purpose**
Generates a new Universal Unique Identifier (UUID).

**Syntax**

```c
void uuid_gen ( uuid_t *uuid);
```

**Description**
The `uuid_gen` routine returns a new UUID.

**Parameters**

**Output**

`uuid` Points to the new UUID in the form of `uuid_t`.

**Examples**
The following call returns as my_uuid a new UUID:

```c
uuid_gen (&my_uuid);
```

**Related Information**
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Runtime Library (NCS) in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
Chapter 6. Network Information Services (NIS) and Network Information Services+ (NIS+)

nis_add_entry (NIS+ API)

Purpose
Used to add the NIS+ object to the NIS+ table_name.

Syntax
cc [ flag . . . ] file . . . -lnsl [ library . . ]
#include <rpcsvc/nis.h>

nis_result * nis_add_entry(nis_name table_name, nis_object object, u_long* flags);

Description
One of a group of NIS+ APIs that is used to search and modify NIS+ tables, nis_add_entry() is used to add the NIS+ object to the NIS+ table_name.

Entries within a table are named by NIS+ indexed names. An indexed name is a compound name that is composed of a search criteria and a simple NIS+ name that identifies a table object. A search criteria is a series of column names and their associated values enclosed in bracket [ ] characters. Indexed names have the following form:
[ colname=value,...], tablename

nis_add_entry() will add the NIS+ object to the NIS+ table_name. The flags parameter is used to specify the failure semantics for the add operation:

0 The default (flags = 0) is to fail if the entry being added already exists in the table.

ADD_OVERWRITE Specifies that the existing object is to be overwritten if it exists (a modify operation), or added if it does not exist. With the ADD_OVERWRITE flag, this function will fail with the error NIS_PERMISSION if the existing object does not allow modify privileges to the client.

RETURN_RESULT Specifies that the server will return a copy of the resulting object if the operation was successful. To succeed, nis_add_entry() must inherit the PAF_TRUSTED_PATH attribute.

Return Values
These functions return a pointer to a structure of type nis_result:

struct nis_result {
    nis_error status;
    struct {
        u_int objects_len;
        nis_object * objects_val;
    } objects;
    netobj cookie;
    u_long zticks;
    u_long dticks;
    u_long aticks;
    u_long cticks;
};

The status member contains the error status of the the operation. A text message that describes the error can be obtained by calling the function nis_sperrno().
The objects structure contains two members: objects_val is an array of nis_object structures; objects_len is the number of cells in the array. These objects will be freed by a call to nis_freeresult(). If you need to keep a copy of one or more objects, they can be copied with the function nis_clone_object() and freed with the function nis_destroy_object().

The various ticks contain details of where the time (in microseconds) was taken during a request. They can be used to tune one’s data organization for faster access and to compare different database implementations.

zticks The time spent in the NIS+ service itself, this count starts when the server receives the request and stops when it sends the reply.

dticks The time spent in the database backend, this time is measured from the time a database call starts until a result is returned. If the request results in multiple calls to the database, this is the sum of all the time spent in those calls.

aticks The time spent in any accelerators or caches. This includes the time required to locate the server needed to resolve the request.

cticks The total time spent in the request, this clock starts when you enter the client library and stops when a result is returned. By subtracting the sum of the other ticks values from this value you can obtain the local overhead of generating an NIS+ request.

Subtracting the value in dticks from the value in zticks will yield the time spent in the service code itself. Subtracting the sum of the values in zticks and aticks from the value in cticks will yield the time spent in the client library itself.

Note: All of the tick times are measured in microseconds.

Errors
The client library can return a variety of error returns and diagnostics. Following are some of the more pertinent ones:

NIS_BADATTRIBUTE
   The name of an attribute did not match up with a named column in the table, or the attribute did not have an associated value.

NIS_BADNAME
   The name passed to the function is not a legal NIS+ name.

NIS_BADREQUEST
   A problem was detected in the request structure passed to the client library.

NISCACHEEXPIRED
   The entry returned came from an object cache that has expired. This means that the time to live value has gone to zero and the entry may have changed. If the flag NO_CACHE was passed to the lookup function, the lookup function will retry the operation to get an unexpired copy of the object.

NIS_CBERROR
   An RPC error occurred on the server while it was calling back to the client. The transaction was aborted at that time and any unsent data was discarded.

NIS_CBRESULTS
   Even though the request was successful, all of the entries have been sent to your callback function and are thus not included in this result.

NIS_FOREIGNNS
   The name could not be completely resolved. When the name passed to the function would resolve
in a namespace that is outside the NIS+ name tree, this error is returned with a NIS+ object of
type DIRECTORY. The returned object contains the type of namespace and contact information
for a server within that namespace.

NIS_INVALIDOBJ
The object pointed to by object is not a valid NIS+ entry object for the given table. This could
occur if it had a mismatched number of columns, or a different data type (for example, binary or
text) than the associated column in the table.

NIS_LINKNAMEERROR
The name passed resolved to a LINK type object and the contents of the object pointed to an
invalid name.

NIS_MODFAIL
The attempted modification failed.

NIS_NAMEEXISTS
An attempt was made to add a name that already exists. To add the name, first remove the
existing name and then add the new name or modify the existing named object.

NIS_NAMEUNREACHABLE
This soft error indicates that a server for the desired directory of the named table object could not
be reached. This can occur when there is a network partition or the server has crashed.
Attempting the operation again may succeed. See the HARD_LOOKUP flag.

NIS_NOCALLBACK
The server was unable to contact the callback service on your machine. This results in no data
being returned.

NIS_NOMEMORY
Generally a fatal result. It means that the service ran out of heap space.

NIS_NOSUCHNAME
This hard error indicates that the named directory of the table object does not exist. This occurs
when the server that should be the parent of the server that serves the table does not know about
the directory in which the table resides.

NIS_NOSUCHTABLE
The named table does not exist.

NIS_NOT_ME
A request was made to a server that does not serve the given name. Normally this will not occur;
however, if you are not using the built in location mechanism for servers, you may see this if your
mechanism is broken.

NIS_NOTFOUND
No entries in the table matched the search criteria. If the search criteria was null (return all
entries), then this result means that the table is empty and may safely be removed by calling the
nis_remove( ). If the FOLLOW_PATH flag was set, this error indicates that none of the tables in
the path contain entries that match the search criteria.

NIS_NOTMASTER
A change request was made to a server that serves the name, but it is not the master server. This
can occur when a directory object changes and it specifies a new master server. Clients that have
cached copies of the directory object in the /var/nis/NIS_SHARED_DICACHE file will need to
have their cache managers restarted (use nis_cachemgr -i to flush this cache).

NIS_NOTSAMEOBJ
An attempt to remove an object from the namespace was aborted because the object that would
have been removed was not the same object that was passed in the request.

NIS_NOTSEARCHABLE
The table name resolved to a NIS+ object that was not searchable.
NIS_PARTIAL
This result is similar to NIS_NOTFOUND, except that it means the request succeeded but resolved to zero entries. When this occurs, the server returns a copy of the table object instead of an entry so that the client may then process the path or implement some other local policy.

NIS_RPCERROR
This fatal error indicates the RPC subsystem failed in some way. Generally there will be a syslog(3) message indicating why the RPC request failed.

NIS_S_NOTFOUND
The named entry does not exist in the table; however, not all tables in the path could be searched, so the entry may exist in one of those tables.

NIS_S_SUCCESS
Even though the request was successful, a table in the search path was not able to be searched, so the result may not be the same as the one you would have received if that table had been accessible.

NIS_SUCCESS
The request was successful.

NIS_SYSTEMERROR
Some form of generic system error occurred while attempting the request. Check the syslog(3) record for error messages from the server.

NIS_TOOMANYATTRS
The search criteria passed to the server had more attributes than the table had searchable columns.

NIS_TRYAGAIN
The server connected to was too busy to handle your request. add_entry(), remove_entry(), and modify_entry() return this error when the master server is currently updating its internal state. It can be returned to nis_list() when the function specifies a callback and the server does not have the resources to handle callbacks.

NIS_TYPEMISMATCH
An attempt was made to add or modify an entry in a table, and the entry passed was of a different type than the table.

Summary of Trusted
To succeed, nis_add_entry() must inherit the PAF_TRUSTED_PATH attribute.

Related Information
nis_first_entry, nis_list, nis_local_directory, nis_lookup, nis_modify_entry, nis_next_entry, nis_perror, nis_remove_entry, and nis_perror

Network Information Services+ and NIS+ Namespace and Structure in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Network Information Services (NIS and NIS+) Guide.

TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS and NIS+ Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

nis_first_entry (NIS+ API)

Purpose
Used to fetch entries from a table one at a time.
Syntax

cc [ flag . . . ] file . . . -lnsl [ library . . . ]

#include <rpcsvc/nis.h>

nis_result * nis_first_entry(nis_name table_name)

Description

One of a group of NIS+ APIs that is used to search and modify NIS+ tables, nis_first_entry( ) is used to
fetch entries from a table one at a time.

Entries within a table are named by .NIS+ indexed names. An indexed name is a compound name that is
composed of a search criteria and a simple NIS+ name that identifies a table object. A search criteria is a
series of column names and their associated values enclosed in bracket [ ] characters. Indexed names
have the following form:

[ colname=value,...],tablename

nis_first_entry( ) fetches entries from a table one at a time. This mode of operation is extremely
inefficient and callbacks should be used instead whenever possible. The table containing the entries of
interest is identified by name. If a search criteria is present in name it is ignored. The value of cookie
within the nis_result structure must be copied by the caller into local storage and passed as an argument
to nis_next_entry( ).

Return Values

These functions return a pointer to a structure of type nis_result:

struct nis_result {
    nis_error status;
    struct {
        u_int objects_len;
        nis_object * objects_val;
    } objects;
    netobj cookie;
    u_long zticks;
    u_long dticks;
    u_long aticks;
    u_long cticks;
};

The status member contains the error status of the the operation. A text message that describes the error
can be obtained by calling the function nis_sperrno( ).

The objects structure contains two members: objects_val is an array of nis_object structures;
objects_len is the number of cells in the array. These objects will be freed by a call to nis_freeresult( ). If
you need to keep a copy of one or more objects, they can be copied with the function nis_clone_object( )
and freed with the function nis_destroy_object( ).

The various ticks contain details of where the time (in microseconds) was taken during a request. They
can be used to tune one’s data organization for faster access and to compare different database
implementations.

zticks The time spent in the NIS+ service itself, this count starts when the server receives the request
and stops when it sends the reply.

dticks The time spent in the database backend, this time is measured from the time a database call
starts, until a result is returned. If the request results in multiple calls to the database, this is the
sum of all the time spent in those calls.
aticks  The time spent in any accelerators or caches. This includes the time required to locate the server needed to resolve the request.

cticks  The total time spent in the request, this clock starts when you enter the client library and stops when a result is returned. By subtracting the sum of the other ticks values from this value you can obtain the local overhead of generating an NIS+ request.

Subtracting the value in dticks from the value in zticks will yield the time spent in the service code itself. Subtracting the sum of the values in zticks and aticks from the value in cticks will yield the time spent in the client library itself.

**Note:** All of the tick times are measured in microseconds.

**Errors**
The client library can return a variety of error returns and diagnostics. Following are some of the more pertinent ones:

**NIS_BADATTRIBUTE**
The name of an attribute did not match up with a named column in the table, or the attribute did not have an associated value.

**NIS_BADNAME**
The name passed to the function is not a legal NIS+ name.

**NIS_BADREQUEST**
A problem was detected in the request structure passed to the client library.

**NIS_CACHEEXPIRED**
The entry returned came from an object cache that has expired. This means that the time to live value has gone to zero and the entry may have changed. If the flag NO_CACHE was passed to the lookup function, the lookup function will retry the operation to get an unexpired copy of the object.

**NIS_CBERROR**
An RPC error occurred on the server while it was calling back to the client. The transaction was aborted at that time and any unsent data was discarded.

**NIS_CBRESULTS**
Even though the request was successful, all of the entries have been sent to your callback function and are thus not included in this result.

**NIS_FOREIGNNS**
The name could not be completely resolved. When the name passed to the function would resolve in a namespace that is outside the NIS+ name tree, this error is returned with aNIS+ object of type DIRECTORY. The returned object contains the type of namespace and contact information for a server within that namespace.

**NIS_INVALIDOBJ**
The object pointed to by object is not a valid NIS+ entry object for the given table. This could occur if it had a mismatched number of columns, or a different data type (for example, binary or text) than the associated column in the table.

**NIS_LINKNAMEERROR**
The name passed resolved to a LINK type object and the contents of the object pointed to an invalid name.

**NIS_MODFAIL**
The attempted modification failed.
NIS_NAMEEXISTS
An attempt was made to add a name that already exists. To add the name, first remove the existing name and then add the new name or modify the existing named object.

NIS_NAMEUNREACHABLE
This soft error indicates that a server for the desired directory of the named table object could not be reached. This can occur when there is a network partition or the server has crashed. Attempting the operation again may succeed. See the [HARD_LOOKUP] flag.

NIS_NOCALLBACK
The server was unable to contact the callback service on your machine. This results in no data being returned.

NIS_NOMEMORY
Generally a fatal result. It means that the service ran out of heap space.

NIS_NOSUCHNAME
This hard error indicates that the named directory of the table object does not exist. This occurs when the server that should be the parent of the server that serves the table does not know about the directory in which the table resides.

NIS_NOSUCHTABLE
The named table does not exist.

NIS_NOT_ME
A request was made to a server that does not serve the given name. Normally this will not occur; however, if you are not using the built in location mechanism for servers, you may see this if your mechanism is broken.

NIS_NOTFOUND
No entries in the table matched the search criteria. If the search criteria was null (return all entries), then this result means that the table is empty and may safely be removed by calling the nis_remove(). If the FOLLOW_PATH flag was set, this error indicates that none of the tables in the path contain entries that match the search criteria.

NIS_NOTMASTER
A change request was made to a server that serves the name, but it is not the master server. This can occur when a directory object changes and it specifies a new master server. Clients that have cached copies of the directory object in the /var/nis/NIS_SHARED_DIRCACHE file will need to have their cache managers restarted (use nis_cachemgr -i to flush this cache).

NIS_NOTSAMEOBJ
An attempt to remove an object from the namespace was aborted because the object that would have been removed was not the same object that was passed in the request.

NIS_NOTSEARCHABLE
The table name resolved to a NIS+ object that was not searchable.

NIS_PARTIAL
This result is similar to NIS_NOTFOUND, except that it means the request succeeded but resolved to zero entries. When this occurs, the server returns a copy of the table object instead of an entry so that the client may then process the path or implement some other local policy.

NIS_RPCERROR
This fatal error indicates the RPC subsystem failed in some way. Generally there will be a syslog(3) message indicating why the RPC request failed.

NIS_S_NOTFOUND
The named entry does not exist in the table; however, not all tables in the path could be searched, so the entry may exist in one of those tables.
NIS_S_SUCCESS  
    Even though the request was successful, a table in the search path was not able to be searched, so the result may not be the same as the one you would have received if that table had been accessible.

NIS_SUCCESS  
    The request was successful.

NIS_SYSTEMERROR  
    Some form of generic system error occurred while attempting the request. Check the syslog(3) record for error messages from the server.

NIS_TOOMANYATTRS  
    The search criteria passed to the server had more attributes than the table had searchable columns.

NIS_TRYAGAIN  
    The server connected to was too busy to handle your request. add_entry(), remove_entry(), and modify_entry() return this error when the master server is currently updating its internal state. It can be returned to nis_list() when the function specifies a callback and the server does not have the resources to handle callbacks.

NIS_TYPEMISMATCH  
    An attempt was made to add or modify an entry in a table, and the entry passed was of a different type than the table.

Related Information

nis_add_entry, nis_list, nis_local_directory, nis_lookup, nis_modify_entry, nis_next_entry, nis_perror, nis_remove_entry, and nis_sperror.

Network Information Services+ and NIS+ Namespace and Structure in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Network Information Services (NIS and NIS+) Guide.

TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS and NIS+ Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

nis_list (NIS+ API)

Purpose
    Used to search a table in the NIS+ namespace.

Syntax

  cc [ flag ... ] file ... -lnsl [ library ... ]
  #include <rpcsvc/nis.h>

  nis_result * nis_list(name, flags, callback userdata);
  nis_name name;
  u_long flags;
  int (*callback)();
  void userdata;

230   Technical Reference: Communications, Volume 1
Description

One of a group of NIS+ APIs that is used to search and modify NIS+ tables, \texttt{nis_list()} is used to search a table in the NIS+ namespace.

Entries within a table are named by NIS+ indexed names. An indexed name is a compound name that is composed of a search criteria and a simple NIS+ name that identifies a table object. A search criteria is a series of column names and their associated values enclosed in bracket \([ \) \] characters. Indexed names have the following form:

\[ \text{[ colname=value,...]}.tablename \]

The list function, \texttt{nis_list()}, takes an indexed name as the value for the \texttt{name} parameter. Here, the tablename should be a fully qualified NIS+ name unless the \texttt{EXPAND_NAME} flag is set. The second parameter, \texttt{flags}, defines how the function will respond to various conditions. The value for this parameter is created by logically OR ing together one or more flags from the following list:

\textbf{FOLLOW LINKS}

If the table specified in \texttt{name} resolves to be a LINK type object, this flag specifies that the client library follow that link and do the search at that object. If this flag is not set and the name resolves to a link, the error \texttt{NIS_NOTSEARCHABLE} will be returned.

\textbf{FOLLOW_PATH}

This flag specifies that if the entry is not found within this table, the list operation should follow the path specified in the table object. When used in conjunction with the \texttt{ALL_RESULTS} flag, it specifies that the path should be followed regardless of the result of the search. When used in conjunction with the \texttt{FOLLOW_LINKS} flag, named tables in the path that resolve to links will be followed until the table they point to is located. If a table in the path is not reachable because no server that serves it is available, the result of the operation will be either a "soft" success or a "soft" failure to indicate that not all tables in the path could be searched. If a name in the path names is either an invalid or non-existent object, then it is silently ignored.

\textbf{HARD_LOOKUP}

This flag specifies that the operation should continue trying to contact a server of the named table until a definitive result is returned (such as \texttt{NIS_NOTFOUND}).

\textbf{Warning:} Use the flag \texttt{HARD_LOOKUP} carefully since it can cause the application to block indefinitely during a network partition.

\textbf{ALL_RESULTS}

This flag can only be used in conjunction with \texttt{FOLLOW_PATH} and a callback function. When specified, it forces all of the tables in the path to be searched. If \texttt{name} does not specify a search criteria (imply that all entries are to be returned), then this flag will cause all of the entries in all of the tables in the path to be returned.

\textbf{NO_CACHE}

This flag specifies that the client library should bypass any client object caches and get its information directly from either the master server or a replica server for the named table.

\textbf{MASTER_ONLY}

This flag is even stronger than \texttt{NO_CACHE} as it specifies that the client library should \textit{only} get its information from the master server for a particular table. This guarantees that the information will be up-to-date. However, there may be severe performance penalties associated with contacting the master server directly on large networks. When used in conjunction with the \texttt{HARD_LOOKUP} flag, this will block the list operation until the master server is up and available.

\textbf{EXPAND_NAME}

When specified, the client library will attempt to expand a partially qualified name by calling \texttt{nis_getnames()}, which uses the environment variable \texttt{NIS_PATH}.
This flag is used to specify that a copy of the returning object be returned in the `nis_result` structure if the operation was successful.

The third parameter to `nis_list()`, `callback`, is an optional pointer to a function that will process the `ENTRY` type objects that are returned from the search. If this pointer is `NULL`, then all entries that match the search criteria are returned in the `nis_result` structure; otherwise, this function will be called once for each entry returned. When called, this function should return 0 when additional objects are desired, and 1 when it no longer wishes to see any more objects.

The fourth parameter, `userdata`, is simply passed to callback function along with the returned entry object. The client can use this pointer to pass state information or other relevant data that the callback function might need to process the entries.

### Return Values

These functions return a pointer to a structure of type `nis_result`:

```c
struct nis_result {
    nis_error status;
    struct {
        u_int objects_len;
        nis_object *objects_val;
    } objects;
    netobj cookie;
    u_long zticks;
    u_long dticks;
    u_long aticks;
    u_long cticks;
};
```

The `status` member contains the error status of the the operation. A text message that describes the error can be obtained by calling the function `nis_sperrno()`.

The `objects` structure contains two members: `objects_val` is an array of `nis_object` structures; `objects_len` is the number of cells in the array. These objects will be freed by a call to `nis_freeresult()`. If you need to keep a copy of one or more objects, they can be copied with the function `nis_clone_object()` and freed with the function `nis_destroy_object()`.

The various ticks contain details of where the time (in microseconds) was taken during a request. They can be used to tune one’s data organization for faster access and to compare different database implementations.

- **zticks** The time spent in the NIS+ service itself, this count starts when the server receives the request and stops when it sends the reply.
- **dticks** The time spent in the database backend, this time is measured from the time a database call starts, until a result is returned. If the request results in multiple calls to the database, this is the sum of all the time spent in those calls.
- **aticks** The time spent in any accelerators or caches. This includes the time required to locate the server needed to resolve the request.
- **cticks** The total time spent in the request, this clock starts when you enter the client library and stops when a result is returned. By subtracting the sum of the other ticks values from this value you can obtain the local overhead of generating anNIS+ request.

Subtracting the value in `dticks` from the value in `zticks` will yield the time spent in the service code itself. Subtracting the sum of the values in `zticks` and `aticks` from the value in `cticks` will yield the time spent in the client library itself.
Note: All of the tick times are measured in microseconds.

Errors
The client library can return a variety of error returns and diagnostics. Following are some of the more pertinent ones:

**NIS_BADATTRIBUTE**
The name of an attribute did not match up with a named column in the table, or the attribute did not have an associated value.

**NIS_BADNAME**
The name passed to the function is not a legal NIS+ name.

**NIS_BADREQUEST**
A problem was detected in the request structure passed to the client library.

**NIS_CACHEEXPIRED**
The entry returned came from an object cache that has *expired*. This means that the time to live value has gone to zero and the entry may have changed. If the flag **NO_CACHE** was passed to the lookup function, the lookup function will retry the operation to get an unexpired copy of the object.

**NIS_CBERROR**
An RPC error occurred on the server while it was calling back to the client. The transaction was aborted at that time and any unsent data was discarded.

**NIS_CBRESULTS**
Even though the request was successful, all of the entries have been sent to your callback function and are thus not included in this result.

**NIS_FOREIGNNS**
The name could not be completely resolved. When the name passed to the function would resolve in a namespace that is outside the NIS+ name tree, this error is returned with a NIS+ object of type **DIRECTORY**. The returned object contains the type of namespace and contact information for a server within that namespace.

**NIS_INVALIDOBJ**
The object pointed to by `object` is not a valid NIS+ entry object for the given table. This could occur if it had a mismatched number of columns, or a different data type (for example, binary or text) than the associated column in the table.

**NIS_LINKNAMEERROR**
The name passed resolved to a `LINK` type object and the contents of the object pointed to an invalid name.

**NIS_MODFAIL**
The attempted modification failed.

**NIS_NAMEEXISTS**
An attempt was made to add a name that already exists. To add the name, first remove the existing name and then add the new name or modify the existing named object.

**NIS_NAMEUNREACHABLE**
This soft error indicates that a server for the desired directory of the named table object could not be reached. This can occur when there is a network partition or the server has crashed. Attempting the operation again may succeed. See the **HARD_LOOKUP** flag.

**NIS_NOCALLBACK**
The server was unable to contact the callback service on your machine. This results in no data being returned.
NIS_NOMEMORY
Generally a fatal result. It means that the service ran out of heap space.

NIS_NOSUCHNAME
This hard error indicates that the named directory of the table object does not exist. This occurs when the server that should be the parent of the server that serves the table does not know about the directory in which the table resides.

NIS_NOSUCHTABLE
The named table does not exist.

NIS_NOT_ME
A request was made to a server that does not serve the given name. Normally this will not occur; however, if you are not using the built in location mechanism for servers, you may see this if your mechanism is broken.

NIS_NOTFOUND
No entries in the table matched the search criteria. If the search criteria was null (return all entries), then this result means that the table is empty and may safely be removed by calling the nis_remove(). If the FOLLOW_PATH flag was set, this error indicates that none of the tables in the path contain entries that match the search criteria.

NIS_NOTMASTER
A change request was made to a server that serves the name, but it is not the master server. This can occur when a directory object changes and it specifies a new master server. Clients that have cached copies of the directory object in the /var/nis/NIS_SHARED_DIRCACHE file will need to have their cache managers restarted (use nis_cachemgr -i to flush this cache).

NIS_NOTSAMEOBJ
An attempt to remove an object from the namespace was aborted because the object that would have been removed was not the same object that was passed in the request.

NIS_NOTSEARCHABLE
The table name resolved to a NIS+ object that was not searchable.

NIS_PARTIAL
This result is similar to NIS_NOTFOUND except that it means the request succeeded but resolved to zero entries. When this occurs, the server returns a copy of the table object instead of an entry so that the client may then process the path or implement some other local policy.

NIS_RPCERROR
This fatal error indicates the RPC subsystem failed in some way. Generally there will be a syslog(3) message indicating why the RPC request failed.

NIS_S_NOTFOUND
The named entry does not exist in the table; however, not all tables in the path could be searched, so the entry may exist in one of those tables.

NIS_S_SUCCESS
Even though the request was successful, a table in the search path was not able to be searched, so the result may not be the same as the one you would have received if that table had been accessible.

NIS_SUCCESS
The request was successful.

NIS_SYSTEMERROR
Some form of generic system error occurred while attempting the request. Check the syslog(3) record for error messages from the server.

NIS_TOOMANYATTRS
The search criteria passed to the server had more attributes than the table had searchable columns.
NIS_TRYAGAIN
The server connected to was too busy to handle your request. \texttt{add\_entry( )}, \texttt{remove\_entry( )}, and \texttt{modify\_entry( )} return this error when the master server is currently updating its internal state. It can be returned to \texttt{nis\_list( )} when the function specifies a callback and the server does not have the resources to handle callbacks.

NIS_TYPEMISMATCH
An attempt was made to add or modify an entry in a table, and the entry passed was of a different type than the table.

Environment

NIS\_PATH
When set, this variable is the search path used by \texttt{nis\_list( )} if the flag \texttt{EXPAND\_NAME} is set.

Notes:
- The path used when the flag \texttt{FOLLOW\_PATH} is specified is the one present in the \texttt{first} table searched. The path values in tables that are subsequently searched are ignored.
- It is legal to call functions that would access the nameservice from within a list callback. However, calling a function that would itself use a callback, or calling \texttt{nis\_list( )} with a callback from within a list callback function, is not currently supported.

Related Information

\texttt{nis\_add\_entry}, \texttt{nis\_first\_entry}, \texttt{nis\_local\_directory}, \texttt{nis\_lookup}, \texttt{nis\_modify\_entry}, \texttt{nis\_next\_entry}, \texttt{nis\_perror}, \texttt{nis\_remove\_entry}, and \texttt{nis\_serror}

Network Information Services+ and NIS+ Namespace and Structure in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Network Information Services (NIS and NIS+) Guide.

TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS and NIS+ Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

\texttt{nis\_local\_directory (NIS+ API)}

Purpose
Returns the name of the NIS+ domain for this machine.

Syntax
\begin{verbatim}
cc [ flag . . . ] file . . . -lnsl [ library. . . ]
#include <rpcsvc/nis.h>

nis\_name nis\_local\_directory(void)
\end{verbatim}

Description
One of a group of NIS+ APIs that return several default NIS+ names associated with the current process, \texttt{nis\_local\_directory( )} returns the name of the NIS+ domain for this machine. This is currently the same as the Secure RPC domain returned by the \texttt{sysinfo(2)} system call.

Note: The result returned by this routine is a pointer to a data structure with the NIS+ library, and should be considered a "read-only" result and should not be modified.
Environment

nis_group

This variable contains the name of the local NIS+ group. If the name is not fully qualified, the value returned by nis_local_directory( ) will be concatenated to it.

Related Information
nis_add_entry, nis_first_entry, nis_list, nis_lookup, nis_modify_entry, nis_next_entry, nis_perror, nis_remove_entry, and nis_sperror

Network Information Services+ and NIS+ Namespace and Structure in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Network Information Services (NIS and NIS+) Guide.

TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS and NIS+ Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

nis_lookup (NIS+ API)

Purpose
Used to resolve an NIS+ name and return a copy of that object from an NIS+ server.

Syntax
cc [ flag . . . ] file . . . -lnsl [ library . . . ]
#include <rpcsvc/nis.h>
nis_result * nis_lookup(nis_name name, u_long flags);
void nis_freeresult(nis_result * result);

Description
One of a group of NIS+ APIs that is used to locate and manipulate all NIS+ objects except the NIS+ entry objects, nis_lookup( ) resolves an NIS+ name and returns a copy of that object from an NIS+ server.

This function should be used only with names that refer to an NIS+Directory, NIS+Table, NIS+Group, or NIS+Private object. If a name refers to an NIS+ entry object, the functions listed in nis_subr(3N) should be used.

nis_lookup returns a pointer to a nis_result structure that must be freed by calling nis_freeresult( ) when you have finished using it. If one or more of the objects returned in the structure need to be retained, they can be copied with nis_clone_object(3N).

nis_lookup( ) takes two parameters, the name of the object to be resolved in name, and a flags parameter, flags. The object name is expected to correspond to the syntax of a non-indexed NIS+ name. The nis_lookup( ) function is the only function from this group that can use a non-fully qualified name. If the parameter name is not a fully qualified name, then the flag EXPAND_NAME must be specified in the call. If this flag is not specified, the function will fail with the error NIS+BADNAME.

The flags parameter is constructed by logically ORing zero or more flags from the following list:

EXPAND_NAME
When specified, the client library will attempt to expand a partially qualified name by calling the function nis_getnames(), which uses the environment variable nis_path.
FOLLOW_LINKS
When specified, the client library will “follow” links by issuing another NIS+ lookup call for the object named by the link. If the linked object is itself a link, then this process will iterate until either an object is found that is not a link type object, or the library has followed 16 links.

HARD_LOOKUP
When specified, the client library will retry the lookup until it is answered by a server. Using this flag will cause the library to block until at least one NIS+ server is available. If the network connectivity is impaired, this can be a relatively long time.

MASTER_ONLY
When specified, the client library will bypass any object caches and any domain replicas and fetch the object from the NIS+ master server for the object’s domain. This insures that the object returned is up-to-date at the cost of a possible performance degradation and failure if the master server is unavailable or physically distant.

NO_CACHE
When specified, the client library will bypass any object caches and will get the object from either the master NIS+ server or one of its replicas.

The status value may be translated to ascii text using the function nis_sperrno().

On return, the objects array in the result will contain one and possibly several objects that were resolved by the request. If the FOLLOW_LINKS flag was present, on success the function could return several entry objects if the link in question pointed within a table. If an error occurred when following a link, the objects array will contain a copy of the link object itself.

Return Values
These functions return a pointer to a structure of type nis_result:

```c
struct nis_result {
    nis_error status;
    struct {
        u_int objects_len;
        nis_object * objects_val;
    } objects;
    netobj cookie;
    u_long zticks;
    u_long dticks;
    u_long aticks;
    u_long cticks;
};
```

The status member contains the error status of the the operation. A text message that describes the error can be obtained by calling the function nis_sperrno().

The objects structure contains two members: objects_val is an array of nis_object structures; objects_lenis the number of cells in the array. These objects will be freed by a call to nis_freeresult(). If you need to keep a copy of one or more objects, they can be copied with the function nis_clone_object() and freed with the function nis_destroy_object().

The various ticks contain details of where the time (in microseconds) was taken during a request. They can be used to tune one’s data organization for faster access and to compare different database implementations.

zticks The time spent in the NIS+ service itself, this count starts when the server receives the request and stops when it sends the reply.

dticks The time spent in the database backend, this time is measured from the time a database call starts, until a result is returned. If the request results in multiple calls to the database, this is the sum of all the time spent in those calls.
aticks  The time spent in any accelerators or caches. This includes the time required to locate the server needed to resolve the request.

cticks  The total time spent in the request, this clock starts when you enter the client library and stops when a result is returned. By subtracting the sum of the other ticks values from this value you can obtain the local overhead of generating an NIS+ request.

Subtracting the value in dticks from the value in zticks will yield the time spent in the service code itself. Subtracting the sum of the values in zticks and aticks from the value in cticks will yield the time spent in the client library itself.

Note: All of the tick times are measured in microseconds.

Errors
The client library can return a variety of error returns and diagnostics. Following are some of the more pertinent ones:

NIS_BADNAME  The name passed to the function is not a legal NIS+ name.

NIS_CACHEEXPIRED  The object returned came from an object cache that has expired. This means that the time to live value has gone to zero and the entry may have changed. If the flag NO_CACHE was passed to the lookup function, the lookup function will retry the operation to get an unexpired copy of the object.

NIS_FOREIGNNS  The name could not be completely resolved. When the name passed to the function would resolve in a namespace that is outside the NIS+ name tree, this error is returned with a NIS+ object of type DIRECTORY. The returned object contains the type of namespace and contact information for a server within that namespace.

NIS_INVALIDOBJ  The object pointed to by obj is not a valid NIS+ object.

NIS_LINKNAMEERROR  The name passed resolved to a LINK type object and the contents of the object pointed to an invalid name.

NIS_MODFAIL  The attempted modification failed.

NIS_NAMEEXISTS  An attempt was made to add a name that already exists. To add the name, first remove the existing name and then add the new name or modify the existing named object.

NIS_NAMEUNREACHABLE  A server for the directory of the named object could not be reached. This can occur when there is a network partition or all the server s have crashed. Attempting the operation again may succeed. See the HARD_LOOKUP flag.

NIS_NOMEMORY  Generally a fatal result. It means that the service ran out of heap space.

NIS_NOSUCHNAME  This hard error indicates that the named directory of the table object does not exist. This occurs when the server that should be the parent of the server that serves the table does not know about the directory in which the table resides.

NIS_NOSUCHTABLE  The named table does not exist.
NIS_NOT_ME
A request was made to a server that does not serve the given name. Normally this will not occur; however, if you are not using the built-in location mechanism for servers, you may see this if your mechanism is broken.

NIS_NOTFOUND
The named object does not exist in the namespace.

NIS_NOTMASTER
An attempt was made to update the database on a replica server.

NIS_NOTSAMEOBJ
An attempt to remove an object from the namespace was aborted because the object that would have been removed was not the same object that was passed in the request.

NIS_RPCERROR
This fatal error indicates the RPC subsystem failed in some way. Generally there will be a syslog(3) message indicating why the RPC request failed.

NIS_S_SUCCESS
The request was successful; however, the object returned came from an object cache and not directly from the server. If you want to see objects from object caches, you must specify the flag NO_CACHE when you call the lookup function.

NIS_SUCCESS
The request was successful.

NIS_SYSTEMERROR
A generic system error occurred while attempting the request. Most commonly the server has crashed or the database has become corrupted. Check the syslog record for error messages from the server.

NIS_TRYAGAIN
The server connected to was too busy to handle your request. For the add, remove, and modify operations this is returned when either the master server for a directory is unavailable or it is in the process of checkpointing its database. It can also be returned when the server is updating its internal state or, in the case of nis_list( ), if the client specifies a callback and the server does not have the resources to handle callbacks.

NIS_UNKNOWNOBJ
The object returned is of an unknown type.

Environment

NIS_PATH
If the flag EXPAND_NAME is set, this variable is the search path used by nis_lookup( ).

Related Information
nis_add_entry, nis_first_entry, nis_list, nis_local_directory, nis_modify_entry, nis_next_entry, nis_perror
nis_remove_entry, and nis_serror

Network Information Services+ and NIS+ Namespace and Structure in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Network Information Services (NIS and NIS+) Guide.

TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS and NIS+ Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
nis_modify_entry (NIS+ API)

Purpose
Used to modify an NIS+ object identified by name.

Syntax
cc [ flag . . . ] file . . . -lnsl [ library. . . ]
#include <rpcsvc/nis.h>

nis_remove_entry * nis_remove_entry(nis_name name, nis_object * object, u_long flags);

Description
One of a group of NIS+ APIs that is used to search and modify NIS+ tables; nis_modify_entry( ) is used to remove the identified entry from the table or a set of entries identified by table_name.

Entries within a table are named by NIS+ indexed names. An indexed name is a compound name that is composed of a search criteria and a simple NIS+ name that identifies a table object. A search criteria is a series of column names and their associated values enclosed in bracket [ ] characters. Indexed names have the following form:
[ colname=value,...], tablename

nis_modify_entry( ) modifies an object identified by name. The parameter object should point to an entry with the EN_MODIFIED flag set in each column that contains new information.

The owner, group, and access rights of an entry are modified by placing the modified information into the respective fields of the parameter, object: zo_owner, zo_group, and zo_access.

These columns will replace their counterparts in the entry that is stored in the table. The entry passed must have the same number of columns, same type, and valid data in the modified columns for this operation to succeed.

If the flags parameter contains the flag MODSAMEOBJ, the object pointed to by object is assumed to be a cached copy of the original object. If the OID of the object passed is different than the OID of the object the server fetches, then the operation fails with the NIS_NOTSAMEOBJ error. This can be used to implement a simple read-modify-write protocol that will fail if the object is modified before the client can write the object back.

If the flag RETURN_RESULT has been specified, the server will return a copy of the resulting object if the operation was successful.

To succeed, nis_modify_entry( ) must inherit the PAF_TRUSTED_PATH attribute.

Return Values
These functions return a pointer to a structure of type nis_result:

struct nis_result {
    nis_error status;
    struct {
        u_int objects_len;
        nis_object * objects_val;
    } objects;
    netobj cookie;
    u_long zticks;
}
The `status` member contains the error status of the operation. A text message that describes the error can be obtained by calling the function `nis_sperrno()`.

The `objects` structure contains two members: `objects_val` is an array of `nis_object` structures; `objects_len` is the number of cells in the array. These objects will be freed by a call to `nis_freeresult()`. If you need to keep a copy of one or more objects, they can be copied with the function `nis_clone_object()` and freed with the function `nis_destroy_object()`.

The various ticks contain details of where the time (in microseconds) was taken during a request. They can be used to tune one’s data organization for faster access and to compare different database implementations.

- `zticks` The time spent in the NIS+ service itself, this count starts when the server receives the request and stops when it sends the reply.
- `dticks` The time spent in the database backend, this time is measured from the time a database call starts, until a result is returned. If the request results in multiple calls to the database, this is the sum of all the time spent in those calls.
- `aticks` The time spent in any accelerators or caches. This includes the time required to locate the server needed to resolve the request.
- `cticks` The total time spent in the request, this clock starts when you enter the client library and stops when a result is returned. By subtracting the sum of the other ticks values from this value you can obtain the local overhead of generating an NIS+ request.

Subtracting the value in `dticks` from the value in `zticks` will yield the time spent in the service code itself. Subtracting the sum of the values in `zticks` and `aticks` from the value in `cticks` will yield the time spent in the client library itself.

**Note:** All of the tick times are measured in microseconds.

**Errors**
The client library can return a variety of error returns and diagnostics. Following are some of the more pertinent ones:

- **NIS_BADATTRIBUTE**
  The name of an attribute did not match up with a named column in the table, or the attribute did not have an associated value.

- **NIS_BADNAME**
  The name passed to the function is not a legal NIS+ name.

- **NIS_BADREQUEST**
  A problem was detected in the request structure passed to the client library.

- **NIS_CACHEEXPIRED**
  The entry returned came from an object cache that has expired. This means that the time to live value has gone to zero and the entry may have changed. If the flag `NO_CACHE` was passed to the lookup function, the lookup function will retry the operation to get an unexpired copy of the object.

- **NIS_CBERROR**
  An RPC error occurred on the server while it was calling back to the client. The transaction was aborted at that time and any unsent data was discarded.
NIS_CBRESULTS
   Even though the request was successful, all of the entries have been sent to your callback function and are thus not included in this result.

NIS_FOREIGNNS
   The name could not be completely resolved. When the name passed to the function would resolve in a namespace that is outside the NIS+ name tree, this error is returned with a NIS+ object of type DIRECTORY. The returned object contains the type of namespace and contact information for a server within that namespace.

NIS_INVALIDOBJ
   The object pointed to by object is not a valid NIS+ entry object for the given table. This could occur if it had a mismatched number of columns, or a different data type (for example, binary or text) than the associated column in the table.

NIS_LINKNAMEERROR
   The name passed resolved to a LINK type object and the contents of the object pointed to an invalid name.

NIS_MODFAIL
   The attempted modification failed.

NIS_NAMEEXISTS
   An attempt was made to add a name that already exists. To add the name, first remove the existing name and then add the new name or modify the existing named object.

NIS_NAMEUNREACHABLE
   This soft error indicates that a server for the desired directory of the named table object could not be reached. This can occur when there is a network partition or the server has crashed. Attempting the operation again may succeed. See the HARD_LOOKUP flag.

NIS_NOCALLBACK
   The server was unable to contact the callback service on your machine. This results in no data being returned.

NIS_NOMEMORY
   Generally a fatal result. It means that the service ran out of heap space.

NIS_NOSUCHNAME
   This hard error indicates that the named directory of the table object does not exist. This occurs when the server that should be the parent of the server that serves the table does not know about the directory in which the table resides.

NIS_NOSUCHTABLE
   The named table does not exist.

NIS_NOT_ME
   A request was made to a server that does not serve the given name. Normally, this will not occur; however, if you are not using the built in location mechanism for servers, you may see this if your mechanism is broken.

NIS_NOTFOUND
   No entries in the table matched the search criteria. If the search criteria was null (return all entries), then this result means that the table is empty and may safely be removed by calling the nis_remove( ). If the FOLLOW_PATH flag was set, this error indicates that none of the tables in the path contain entries that match the search criteria.

NIS_NOTMASTER
   A change request was made to a server that serves the name, but it is not the master server. This can occur when a directory object changes and it specifies a new master server. Clients that have cached copies of the directory object in the /var/nis/NIS_SHARED_DIRCACHE file will need to have their cache managers restarted (use nis_cachemgr -i to flush this cache).
NIS_NOTSAMEOBJ
An attempt to remove an object from the namespace was aborted because the object that would
have been removed was not the same object that was passed in the request.

NIS_NOTSEARCHABLE
The table name resolved to a NIS+ object that was not searchable.

NIS_PARTIAL
This result is similar to NIS_NOTFOUND except that it means the request succeeded but resolved
to zero entries. When this occurs, the server returns a copy of the table object instead of an entry
so that the client may then process the path or implement some other local policy.

NIS_RPCERROR
This fatal error indicates the RPC subsystem failed in some way. Generally there will be a
syslog(3) message indicating why the RPC request failed.

NIS_S_NOTFOUND
The named entry does not exist in the table; however, not all tables in the path could be searched,
so the entry may exist in one of those tables.

NIS_S_SUCCESS
Even though the request was successful, a table in the search path was not able to be searched,
so the result may not be the same as the one you would have received if that table had been
accessible.

NIS_SUCCESS
The request was successful.

NIS_SYSTEMERROR
Some form of generic system error occurred while attempting the request. Check the syslog(3)
record for error messages from the server.

NIS_TOOMANYATTRS
The search criteria passed to the server had more attributes than the table had searchable
columns.

NIS_TRYAGAIN
The server connected to was too busy to handle your request. add_entry( ), remove_entry( ),
and modify_entry( ) return this error when the master server is currently updating its internal
state. It can be returned to nis_list( ) when the function specifies a callback and the server does
not have the resources to handle callbacks.

NIS_TYPEMISMATCH
An attempt was made to add or modify an entry in a table, and the entry passed was of a different
type than the table.

Summary of Trusted
To succeed, nis_modify_entry( ) must inherit the PAF_TRUSTED_PATH attribute.

Related Information
nis_add_entry, nis_first_entry, nis_list, nis_local_directory, nis_lookup, nis_next_entry, nis_perror,
nis_remove_entry, and nis_sperror.

[Network Information Services+] and [NIS+ Namespace and Structure] in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Network
Information Services (NIS and NIS+) Guide.

TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS and NIS+ Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for
Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
nis_next_entry (NIS+ API)

Purpose
Used to fetch entries from a table one at a time.

Syntax
cc [ flag ... ] file ... -lnsl [ library ... ]
#include <rpcsvc/nis.h>
nis_result * nis_next_entry(nis_name table_name, netobj cookie)

Description
One of a group of NIS+ APIs that is used to search and modify NIS+ tables, nis_next_entry() is used to retrieve the "next" entry from a table specified by table_name.

Entries within a table are named by NIS+ indexed names. An indexed name is a compound name that is composed of a search criteria and a simple NIS+ name that identifies a table object. A search criteria is a series of column names and their associated values enclosed in bracket [ ] characters. Indexed names have the following form:
[ colname=value,...], tablename

nis_next_entry() retrieves the "next" entry from a table specified by table_name. The order in which entries are returned is not guaranteed. Further, should an update occur in the table between client calls to nis_next_entry(), there is no guarantee that an entry that is added or modified will be seen by the client. Should an entry be removed from the table that would have been the "next" entry returned, the error NIS_CHAINBROKEN is returned instead.

Return Values
These functions return a pointer to a structure of type nis_result:

```c
struct nis_result {
    nis_error status;
    struct {
        u_int objects_len;
        nis_object * objects_val;
    } objects;
    netobj cookie;
    u_long zticks;
    u_long dticks;
    u_long aticks;
    u_long cticks;
};
```

The status member contains the error status of the the operation. A text message that describes the error can be obtained by calling the function nis_sperrno().

The objects structure contains two members: objects_val is an array of nis_object structures; objects_len is the number of cells in the array. These objects will be freed by a call to nis_freeresult(). If you need to keep a copy of one or more objects, they can be copied with the function nis_clone_object() and freed with the function nis_destroy_object().

The various ticks contain details of where the time (in microseconds) was taken during a request. They can be used to tune one’s data organization for faster access and to compare different database implementations.
**ztick**s  The time spent in the NIS+ service itself, this count starts when the server receives the request and stops when it sends the reply.

**dticks**  The time spent in the database backend, this time is measured from the time a database call starts, until a result is returned. If the request results in multiple calls to the database, this is the sum of all the time spent in those calls.

**aticks**  The time spent in any *accelerators or caches*. This includes the time required to locate the server needed to resolve the request.

**cticks**  The total time spent in the request, this clock starts when you enter the client library and stops when a result is returned. By subtracting the sum of the other ticks values from this value you can obtain the local overhead of generating an NIS+ request.

Subtracting the value in **dticks** from the value in **zticks** will yield the time spent in the service code itself. Subtracting the sum of the values in **zticks** and **aticks** from the value in **cticks** will yield the time spent in the client library itself.

**Note:** All of the tick times are measured in microseconds.

**Errors**
The client library can return a variety of error returns and diagnostics. Following are some of the more pertinent ones:

**NIS_BADATTRIBUTE**
   The name of an attribute did not match up with a named column in the table, or the attribute did not have an associated value.

**NIS_BADNAME**
   The name passed to the function is not a legal NIS+ name.

**NIS_BADREQUEST**
   A problem was detected in the request structure passed to the client library.

**NIS_CACHEEXPIRED**
   The entry returned came from an object cache that has *expired*. This means that the time to live value has gone to zero and the entry may have changed. If the flag **NO_CACHE** was passed to the lookup function, the lookup function will retry the operation to get an unexpired copy of the object.

**NIS_CBERROR**
   An RPC error occurred on the server while it was calling back to the client. The transaction was aborted at that time and any unsent data was discarded.

**NIS_CBRESULTS**
   Even though the request was successful, all of the entries have been sent to your callback function and are thus not included in this result.

**NIS_FOREIGNNS**
   The name could not be completely resolved. When the name passed to the function would resolve in a namespace that is outside the NIS+ name tree, this error is returned with a NIS+ object of type **DIRECTORY**. The returned object contains the type of namespace and contact information for a server within that namespace.

**NIS_INVALIDOBJ**
   The object pointed to by **object** is not a valid NIS+ entry object for the given table. This could occur if it had a mismatched number of columns, or a different data type (for example, binary or text) than the associated column in the table.
NIS_LINKNAMEERROR
The name passed resolved to a LINK type object and the contents of the object pointed to an invalid name.

NIS_MODFAIL
The attempted modification failed.

NIS_NAMEEXISTS
An attempt was made to add a name that already exists. To add the name, first remove the existing name and then add the new name or modify the existing named object.

NIS_NAMEUNREACHABLE
This soft error indicates that a server for the desired directory of the named table object could not be reached. This can occur when there is a network partition or the server has crashed. Attempting the operation again may succeed. See the HARD_LOOKUP flag.

NIS_NOCALLBACK
The server was unable to contact the callback service on your machine. This results in no data being returned.

NIS_NOMEMORY
Generally a fatal result. It means that the service ran out of heap space.

NIS_NOSUCHNAME
This hard error indicates that the named directory of the table object does not exist. This occurs when the server that should be the parent of the server that serves the table does not know about the directory in which the table resides.

NIS_NOSUCHTABLE
The named table does not exist.

NIS_NOT_ME
A request was made to a server that does not serve the given name. Normally, this will not occur; however, if you are not using the built in location mechanism for servers, you may see this if your mechanism is broken.

NIS_NOTFOUND
No entries in the table matched the search criteria. If the search criteria was null (return all entries), then this result means that the table is empty and may safely be removed by calling the nis_remove(). If the FOLLOW_PATH flag was set, this error indicates that none of the tables in the path contain entries that match the search criteria.

NIS_NOTMASTER
A change request was made to a server that serves the name, but it is not the master server. This can occur when a directory object changes and it specifies a new master server. Clients that have cached copies of the directory object in the /var/nis/NIS_SHARED_DIRCACHE file will need to have their cache managers restarted (use nis_cachemgr -i to flush this cache).

NIS_NOTSAMEOBJ
An attempt to remove an object from the namespace was aborted because the object that would have been removed was not the same object that was passed in the request.

NIS_NOTSEARCHABLE
The table name resolved to a NIS+ object that was not searchable.

NIS_PARTIAL
This result is similar to NIS_NOTFOUND, except that it means the request succeeded but resolved to zero entries. When this occurs, the server returns a copy of the table object instead of an entry so that the client may then process the path or implement some other local policy.

NIS_RPCERROR
This fatal error indicates the RPC subsystem failed in some way. Generally there will be a syslog(3) message indicating why the RPC request failed.
NIS_S_NOTFOUND
The named entry does not exist in the table; however, not all tables in the path could be searched, so the entry may exist in one of those tables.

NIS_S_SUCCESS
Even though the request was successful, a table in the search path was not able to be searched, so the result may not be the same as the one you would have received if that table had been accessible.

NIS_SUCCESS
The request was successful.

NIS_SYSTTEMERROR
Some form of generic system error occurred while attempting the request. Check the syslog(3) record for error messages from the server.

NIS_TOOMANYATTRS
The search criteria passed to the server had more attributes than the table had searchable columns.

NIS_TRYAGAIN
The server connected to was too busy to handle your request. add_entry( ), remove_entry( ), and modify_entry( ) return this error when the master server is currently updating its internal state. It can be returned to nis_list( ) when the function specifies a callback and the server does not have the resources to handle callbacks.

NIS_TYPEMISMATCH
An attempt was made to add or modify an entry in a table, and the entry passed was of a different type than the table.

Related Information
nis_add_entry, nis_first_entry, nis_list, nis_local_directory, nis_lookup, nis_modify_entry, nis_perror, nis_remove_entry, and nis_sperror.

Network Information Services+ and NIS+ Namespace and Structure in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Network Information Services (NIS and NIS+) Guide.

TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS and NIS+ Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

nis_perror (NIS+ API)
Purpose
Prints the error message corresponding to status as "label: error message" on standard error.

Syntax
cc
[ flag ... ]
file ...
-1ns1
library
...
#include <rpcsvc/nis.h>
char * nis_sperrno(nis_error status);
void nis_perror(nis_error status, char * label);
void nis_lerror(nis_error status, char * label);
char * nis_sperror_r(nis_error status, char * label, char * buf, int length);
char * nis_sperror(nis_error status, char * label);

Description
One of a group of NIS+ APIs that convert NIS+ status values into strings, nis_perror
prints the error messages corresponding to status as "label: error messages" on standard error.

Related Information
nis_add_entry, nis_first_entry, nis_list, nis_local_directory, nis_lookup, nis_modify_entry, nis_next_entry,
nis_remove_entry, nis_sperror.

Network Information Services+ and NIS+ Namespace and Structure in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Network
Information Services (NIS and NIS+) Guide.

TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS and NIS+ Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for
Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

nis_remove_entry (NIS+ API)

Purpose
Used to remove an NIS+ object from the NIS+ table_name.

Syntax
cc [ flag ...] file ... -lnsl [ library ...]
#include <rpcsvc/nis.h>
nis_result * nis_remove_entry(nis_name name, nis_object, * object, u_long flags);

Description
One of a group of NIS+ APIs that is used to search and modify NIS+ tables, nis_remove_entry( ) is used
to remove the identified entry from the table or a set of entries identified by table_name.

Entries within a table are named by NIS+ indexed names. An indexed name is a compound name that is
composed of a search criteria and a simple NIS+ name that identifies a table object. A search criteria is a
series of column names and their associated values enclosed in bracket [ ] characters. Indexed names
have the following form:
[ colname=value,...], tablename

nis_remove_entry( ) removes the identified entry from the table or a set of entries identified by
table_name. If the parameter object is non-null, it is presumed to point to a cached copy of the entry.
When the removal is attempted, and the object that would be removed is not the same as the cached
object pointed to by object, then the operation will fail with an NIS_NOTSAMEOBJ error. If an object is
passed with this function, the search criteria in name is optional as it can be constructed from the values
within the entry. However, if no object is present, the search criteria must be included in the name
parameter. If the flags variable is null, and the search criteria does not uniquely identify an entry, the
**NIS_NOTUNIQUE** error is returned and the operation is aborted. If the flag parameter **REM_MULTIPLE** is passed, and if remove permission is allowed for each of these objects, then all objects that match the search criteria will be removed. Note that a null search criteria and the **REM_MULTIPLE** flag will remove all entries in a table.

To succeed, **nis_remove_entry()** must inherit the **PAF_TRUSTED_PATH** attribute.

## Return Values

These functions return a pointer to a structure of type **nis_result**:  

```c
struct nis_result {
    nis_error status;
    struct {
        u_int              objects_len;
        nis_object *       objects_val;
    } objects;
    netobj              cookie;
    u_long              zticks;
    u_long              dticks;
    u_long              aticks;
    u_long              cticks;
};
```

The **status** member contains the error status of the the operation. A text message that describes the error can be obtained by calling the function **nis_sperrno()**.

The **objects** structure contains two members: **objects_val** is an array of **nis_object** structures; **objects_len** is the number of cells in the array. These objects will be freed by a call to **nis_freeresult()**. If you need to keep a copy of one or more objects, they can be copied with the function **nis_clone_object()** and freed with the function **nis_destroy_object()**.

The various ticks contain details of where the time (in microseconds) was taken during a request. They can be used to tune one's data organization for faster access and to compare different database implementations.

- **zticks** The time spent in the NIS+ service itself, this count starts when the server receives the request and stops when it sends the reply.
- **dticks** The time spent in the database backend, this time is measured from the time a database call starts until a result is returned. If the request results in multiple calls to the database, this is the sum of all the time spent in those calls.
- **aticks** The time spent in any accelerators or caches. This includes the time required to locate the server needed to resolve the request.
- **cticks** The total time spent in the request, this clock starts when you enter the client library and stops when a result is returned. By subtracting the sum of the other ticks values from this value you can obtain the local overhead of generating an NIS+ request.

Subtracting the value in **dticks** from the value in **zticks** will yield the time spent in the service code itself. Subtracting the sum of the values in **zticks** and **aticks** from the value in **cticks** will yield the time spent in the client library itself.

**Note:** All of the tick times are measured in microseconds.

## Errors

The client library can return a variety of error returns and diagnostics. Following are some of the most pertinent ones:
NIS_BADATTRIBUTE
The name of an attribute did not match up with a named column in the table, or the attribute did not have an associated value.

NIS_BADNAME
The name passed to the function is not a legal NIS+ name.

NIS_BADREQUEST
A problem was detected in the request structure passed to the client library.

NIS_CACHEEXPIRED
The entry returned came from an object cache that has expired. This means that the time to live value has gone to zero and the entry may have changed. If the flag NO_CACHE was passed to the lookup function, the lookup function will retry the operation to get an unexpired copy of the object.

NIS_CBERROR
An RPC error occurred on the server while it was calling back to the client. The transaction was aborted at that time and any unsent data was discarded.

NIS_CBRESULTS
Even though the request was successful, all of the entries have been sent to your callback function and are thus not included in this result.

NIS_FOREIGNNS
The name could not be completely resolved. When the name passed to the function would resolve in a namespace that is outside the NIS+ name tree, this error is returned with a NIS+ object of type DIRECTORY. The returned object contains the type of namespace and contact information for a server within that namespace.

NIS_INVALIDOBJ
The object pointed to by object is not a valid NIS+ entry object for the given table. This could occur if it had a mismatched number of columns, or a different data type (for example, binary or text) than the associated column in the table.

NIS_LINKNAMEERROR
The name passed resolved to a LINK type object and the contents of the object pointed to an invalid name.

NIS_MODFAIL
The attempted modification failed.

NIS_NAMEEXISTS
An attempt was made to add a name that already exists. To add the name, first remove the existing name and then add the new name or modify the existing named object.

NIS_NAMEUNREACHABLE
This soft error indicates that a server for the desired directory of the named table object could not be reached. This can occur when there is a network partition or the server has crashed. Attempting the operation again may succeed. See the HARD_LOOKUP flag.

NIS_NOCALLBACK
The server was unable to contact the callback service on your machine. This results in no data being returned.

NIS_NOMEMORY
Generally a fatal result. It means that the service ran out of heap space.

NIS_NOSUCHNAME
This hard error indicates that the named directory of the table object does not exist. This occurs when the server that should be the parent of the server that serves the table does not know about the directory in which the table resides.
NIS_NOSUCHTABLE
The named table does not exist.

NIS_NOT_ME
A request was made to a server that does not serve the given name. Normally, this will not occur; however, if you are not using the built in location mechanism for servers, you may see this if your mechanism is broken.

NIS_NOTFOUND
No entries in the table matched the search criteria. If the search criteria was null (return all entries), then this result means that the table is empty and may safely be removed by calling the nis_remove(). If the FOLLOW_PATH flag was set, this error indicates that none of the tables in the path contain entries that match the search criteria.

NIS_NOTMASTER
A change request was made to a server that serves the name, but it is not the master server. This can occur when a directory object changes and it specifies a new master server. Clients that have cached copies of the directory object in the /var/nis/NIS_SHARED_DIRCACHE file will need to have their cache managers restarted (use nis_cachemgr -i to flush this cache).

NIS_NOTSAMEOBJ
An attempt to remove an object from the namespace was aborted because the object that would have been removed was not the same object that was passed in the request.

NIS_NOTSEARCHABLE
The table name resolved to a NIS+ object that was not searchable.

NIS_PARTIAL
This result is similar to NIS_NOTFOUND except that it means the request succeeded but resolved to zero entries. When this occurs, the server returns a copy of the table object instead of an entry so that the client may then process the path or implement some other local policy.

NIS_RPCERROR
This fatal error indicates the RPC subsystem failed in some way. Generally there will be a syslog(3) message indicating why the RPC request failed.

NIS_S_NOTFOUND
The named entry does not exist in the table; however, not all tables in the path could be searched, so the entry may exist in one of those tables.

NIS_S_SUCCESS
Even though the request was successful, a table in the search path was not able to be searched, so the result may not be the same as the one you would have received if that table had been accessible.

NIS_SUCCESS
The request was successful.

NIS_SYSTEMERROR
Some form of generic system error occurred while attempting the request. Check the syslog(3) record for error messages from the server.

NIS_TOOMANYATTRS
The search criteria passed to the server had more attributes than the table had searchable columns.

NIS_TRYAGAIN
The server connected to was too busy to handle your request. add_entry(), remove_entry(), and modify_entry() return this error when the master server is currently updating its internal state. It can be returned to nis_list() when the function specifies a callback and the server does not have the resources to handle callbacks.
NIS_TYPEMISMATCH
An attempt was made to add or modify an entry in a table, and the entry passed was of a different type than the table.

Summary of Trusted
To succeed, nis_remove_entry( ) must inherit the PAF_TRUSTED_PATH attribute.

Related Information
nis_add_entry, nis_first_entry, nis_list, nis_local_directory, nis_lookup, nis_modify_entry, nis_next_entry, nis_perror, and nis_sperror.

Network Information Services+ and NIS+ Namespace and Structure in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Network Information Services (NIS and NIS+) Guide.

TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS and NIS+ Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

nis_sperror (NIS+ API)

Purpose
Returns a pointer to a string that can be used or copied using the strdup function.

Syntax
cc
flag
... ]
file
... 
-lnsl
[ 
library
... ]
#include <rpcsvc/nis.h>
char * nis_sperror(nis_error status, char * label);

Description
One of a group of NIS+ APIs that convert NIS+ status values into strings, nis_sperror returns a pointer to a string that can be used or copied using the strdup function. The caller must supply a string buffer, buf, large enough to hold the error string (a buffer size of 128 bytes is guaranteed to be sufficiently large). status and label are the same as for nis_perror. The pointer returned by the function is a pointer to buf. length specifies the number of characters to copy from the error string to buf. The string is returned as a pointer to a buffer that is reused on each call.

Note: When compiling multithreaded applications, see Writing Reentrant and Thread-Safe Code for information about the use of the _REENTRANT flag.

Related Information
nis_add_entry, nis_first_entry, nis_list, nis_local_directory, nis_lookup, nis_modify_entry, nis_next_entry, nis_perror, and nis_remove_entry.
yp_all Subroutine

Purpose
Transfers all of the key-value pairs from the Network Information Services (NIS) server to the client as the entire map.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax

```c
#include <rpcsvc/ypclnt.h>
#include <rpcsvc/yp_prot.h>

yp_all (indomain, inmap, incallback)
char *indomain;
char *inmap;
struct ypall_CallBack *incallback {
  int (*foreach)();
  char *data;
};

foreach (instatus, inkey, inkeylen, inval, invallen, indata)
int instatus;
char *inkey;
int inkeylen;
char *inval;
int invallen;
char *indata;
```

Description
The yp_all subroutine provides a way to transfer an entire map from the server to the client in a single request. The routine uses Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) rather than User Datagram Protocol (UDP) used by other NIS subroutines. This entire transaction takes place as a single Remote Procedure Call (RPC) request and response. The yp_all subroutine is used like any other NIS procedure, identifying a subroutine and map in the normal manner, and supplying a subroutine to process each key-value pair within the map.

The memory pointed to by the inkey and inval parameters is private to the yp_all subroutine. This memory is overwritten with each new key-value pair processed. The foreach function uses the contents of the memory but does not own the memory itself. Key and value objects presented to the foreach function look exactly as they do in the server’s map. Objects not terminated by a new-line or null character in the server’s map are not terminated by a new-line or null character in the client’s map.
Note: The remote procedure call is returned to the `yp_all` subroutine only after the transaction is completed (successfully or unsuccessfully) or after the `foreach` function rejects any more key-value pairs.

Parameters

data
Specifies state information between the `foreach` function and the mainline code (see also the `indata` parameter).

indomain
Points to the name of the domain used as input to the subroutine.

inmap
Points to the name of the map used as input to the subroutine.

incallback
Specifies the structure containing the user-defined `foreach` function, which is called for each key-value pair transferred.

instatus
Specifies either a return status value of the form `NIS_TRUE` or an error code. The error codes are defined in the `rpcsvc/yp_prot.h` file.

inkey
Points to the current key of the key-value pair as returned from the server’s database.

inkeylen
Returns the length, in bytes, of the `inkey` parameter.

inval
Points to the current value of the key-value pair as returned from the server’s database.

invallen
Specifies the size of the value in bytes.

indata
Specifies the contents of the `incallback->data` element passed to the `yp_all` subroutine. The `data` element shares state information between the `foreach` function and the mainline code. The `indata` parameter is optional because no part of the NIS client package inspects its contents.

Return Values

The `foreach` subroutine returns a value of 0 when it is ready to be called again for additional received key-value pairs. It returns a nonzero value to stop the flow of key-value pairs. If the `foreach` function returns a nonzero value, it is not called again, and the `yp_all` subroutine returns a value of 0.

Related Information

Network Information Service (NIS) Overview for System Management and TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

yp_bind Subroutine

Purpose

Used in programs to call the `ypbind` daemon directly for processes that use backup strategies when Network Information Services (NIS) is not available.

Library

C Library (`libc.a`)

Syntax

```c
#include <rpcsvc/ypclnt.h>
#include <rpcsvc/yp_prot.h>

yp_bind (indomain)
char *indomain;
```
Description
In order to use NIS, the client process must be bound to an NIS server that serves the appropriate domain. That is, the client must be associated with a specific NIS server that services the client’s requests for NIS information. The NIS lookup processes automatically use the ypbind daemon to bind the client, but the yp_bind subroutine can be used in programs to call the daemon directly for processes that use backup strategies (for example, a local file) when NIS is not available.

Each NIS binding allocates, or uses up, one client process socket descriptor, and each bound domain uses one socket descriptor. Multiple requests to the same domain use the same descriptor.

Note: If a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) failure status returns from the use of the yp_bind subroutine, the domain is unbound automatically. When this occurs, the NIS client tries to complete the operation if the ypbind daemon is running and either of the following is true:

- The client process cannot bind a server for the proper domain.
- RPCs to the server fail.

Parameters

`indomain` Points to the name of the domain for which to attempt the bind.

Return Values
The NIS client returns control to the user with either an error or a success code if any of the following occurs:

- The error is not related to RPC.
- The ypbind daemon is not running.
- The ypser v daemon returns the answer.

Related Information
The ypbind daemon, ypser v daemon.

Network Information Service (NIS) Overview for System Management in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

yp_first Subroutine

Purpose
Returns the first key-value pair from the named Network Information Services (NIS) map in the named domain.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
```c
#include <rpcsvc/ypclnt.h>
#include <rpcsvc/yp_prot.h>
```
**Description**

The `yp_first` routine returns the first key-value pair from the named NIS map in the named domain.

**Parameters**

- **indomain**: Points to the name of the domain used as input to the subroutine.
- **inmap**: Points to the name of the map used as input to the subroutine.
- **outkey**: Specifies the address of the uninitialized string pointer where the first key is returned. Memory is allocated by the NIS client using the `malloc` subroutine, and may be freed by the application.
- **outkeylen**: Returns the length, in bytes, of the `outkey` parameter.
- **outval**: Specifies the address of the uninitialized string pointer where the value associated with the key is returned. Memory is allocated by the NIS client using the `malloc` subroutine, and may be freed by the application.
- **outvallen**: Returns the length, in bytes, of the `outval` parameter.

**Return Values**

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, it returns an error as described in the `rpcsvc/yp_prot.h` file.

**Related Information**

The `malloc` subroutine.

Network Information Service (NIS) Overview for System Management in Networks and communication management.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming and List of NIS Programming References in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

**yp_get_default_domain Subroutine**

**Purpose**

Gets the default domain of the node.

**Library**

C Library (`libc.a`)

**Syntax**

```c
#include <rpcsvc/ypclnt.h>
#include <rpcsvc/yp_prot.h>

yp_get_default_domain (outdomain)
char **outdomain;
```
Description

Network Information Services (NIS) lookup calls require both a map name and a domain name. Client processes can get the default domain of the node by calling the `yp_get_default_domain` routine and using the value returned in the `outdomain` parameter as the input domain (`indomain`) parameter for NIS remote procedure calls.

Parameters

`outdomain` Specifies the address of the uninitialized string pointer where the default domain is returned. Memory is allocated by the NIS client using the `malloc` subroutine and should not be freed by the application.

Return Values

Upon successful completion, this routine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, it returns an error as described in the `rpcsvc/ypclnt.h` file.

Related Information

The `malloc` subroutine.

Network Information Service (NIS) Overview for System Management in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

yp_master Subroutine

Purpose

Returns the machine name of the Network Information Services (NIS) master server for a map.

Library

C Library (`libc.a`)

Syntax

```c
#include <rpcsvc/ypclnt.h>
#include <rpcsvc/yp_prot.h>

yp_master (indomain, inmap, outname)
char *indomain;
char *inmap;
char **outname;
```

Description

The `yp_master` subroutine returns the machine name of the NIS master server for a map.

Parameters

`indomain` Points to the name of the domain used as input to the subroutine.
`inmap` Points to the name of the map used as input to the subroutine.
Specifies the address of the uninitialized string pointer where the name of the domain’s yp_master server is returned. Memory is allocated by the NIS client using the malloc subroutine, and may be freed by the application.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, it returns one of the error codes described in the rpcsvc/yp_prot.h file.

Related Information
The malloc subroutine.

Network Information Service (NIS) Overview for System Management in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

yp_match Subroutine

Purpose
Searches for the value associated with a key.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpcsvc/ypclnt.h>
#include <rpcsvc/yp_prot.h>

yp_match (indomain, inmap, inkey, inkeylen, outval, outvallen)
char * indomain;
char * inmap;
char * inkey;
int inkeylen;
char ** outval;
int * outvallen;

Description
The yp_match subroutine searches for the value associated with a key. The input character string entered as the key must match a key in the Network Information Services (NIS) map exactly because pattern matching is not available in NIS.

Parameters

indomain Points to the name of the domain used as input to the subroutine.
inmap Points to the name of the map used as input to the subroutine.
inkey Points to the name of the key used as input to the subroutine.
inkeylen Specifies the length, in bytes, of the key.
outval Specifies the address of the uninitialized string pointer where the values associated with the key are returned. Memory is allocated by the NIS client using the malloc subroutine, and may be freed by the application.
Returns the length, in bytes, of the `outval` parameter.

### Return Values

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, it returns one of the error codes described in the `rpcsvc/yp_prot.h` file.

### Related Information

The `malloc` subroutine.

Network Information Service (NIS) Overview for System Management in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

### yp_next Subroutine

#### Purpose

Returns each subsequent value it finds in the named Network Information Services (NIS) map until it reaches the end of the list.

#### Library

C Library (`libc.a`)

#### Syntax

```c
#include <rpcsvc/ypclnt.h>
#include <rpcsvc/yp_prot.h>

yp_next (indomain, inmap, inkey, inkeylen, outkey, outkeylen, outval, outvallen)
char *indomain;
char *inmap;
char *inkey;
int inkeylen;
char **outkey;
int *outkeylen;
char **outval;
int *outvallen;
```

#### Description

The `yp_next` subroutine returns each subsequent value it finds in the named NIS map until it reaches the end of the list.

The `yp_next` subroutine must be preceded by an initial `yp_first` subroutine. Use the `outkey` parameter value returned from the initial `yp_first` subroutine as the value of the `inkey` parameter for the `yp_next` subroutine. This will return the second key-value pair associated with the map. To show every entry in the NIS map, the `yp_first` subroutine is called with the `yp_next` subroutine called repeatedly. Each time the `yp_next` subroutine returns a key-value, use it as the `inkey` parameter for the next call.

The concepts of `first` and `next` depend on the structure of the NIS map being processed. The routines do not retrieve the information in a specific order, such as the lexical order from the original, non-NIS database information files or the numerical sorting order of the keys, values, or key-value pairs. If the
yp_first subroutine is called on a specific map with the yp_next subroutine called repeatedly until the process returns a YPERR_NOMORE message, every entry in the NIS map is seen once. If the same sequence of operations is performed on the same map at the same server, the entries are seen in the same order.

Note: If a server operates under a heavy load or fails, the domain can become unbound and then bound again while a client is running. If it binds itself to a different server, entries may be seen twice or not at all. The domain rebinds itself to protect the enumeration process from being interrupted before it completes. Avoid this situation by returning all of the keys and values with the yp_all subroutine.

Parameters

indomain Points to the name of the domain used as input to the subroutine.
inmap Points to the name of the map used as input to the subroutine.
inkey Points to the key that is used as input to the subroutine.
inkeylen Returns the length, in bytes, of the inkey parameter.
outkey Specifies the address of the uninitialized string pointer where the first key is returned. Memory is allocated by the NIS client using the malloc subroutine, and may be freed by the application.
outkeylen Returns the length, in bytes, of the outkey parameter.
outval Specifies the address of the uninitialized string pointer where the values associated with the key are returned. Memory is allocated by the NIS client using the malloc subroutine, and may be freed by the application.
outvallen Returns the length, in bytes, of the outval parameter.

Return Values

Upon successful completion, this routine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, it returns one of the error codes described in the rpcsvc/yp_prot.h file.

Related Information

The malloc subroutine, yp_all subroutine, yp_first subroutine.

Network Information Service (NIS) Overview for System Management in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

yp_order Subroutine

Purpose

Returns the order number for an Network Information Services (NIS) map that identifies when the map was built.

Library

C Library (libc.a)

Syntax

#include <rpcsvc/ypclnt.h>
#include <rpcsvc/yp_prot.h>
yp_order (indomain, inmap, outorder)
char * indomain;
char * inmap;
int * outorder;

Description
The yp_order subroutine returns the order number for a NIS map that identifies when the map was built. The number determines whether the local NIS map is more current than the master NIS database.

Parameters
- indomain Points to the name of the domain used as input to the subroutine.
- inmap Points to the name of the map used as input to the subroutine.
- outorder Points to the returned order number, which is a 10-digit ASCII integer that represents the operating system time, in seconds, when the map was built.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this routine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, it returns one of the error codes described in the rpcsvc/yp_prot.h file.

Related Information
Network Information Service (NIS) Overview for System Management in Networks and communication management.
List of NIS Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

yp_unbind Subroutine

Purpose
Manages socket descriptors for processes that access multiple domains.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpcsvc/ypclnt.h>
#include <rpcsvc/yp_prot.h>

void yp_unbind (indomain)
char *indomain;

Description
The yp_unbind subroutine is available to manage socket descriptors for processes that access multiple domains. When the yp_unbind subroutine is used to free a domain, all per-process and per-node resources that were used to bind the domain are also freed.

Parameters
- indomain Points to the name of the domain used as input to the subroutine.
Return Values
Upon successful completion, this routine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, it returns one of the error codes described in the `rpcsvc/yp_prot.h` file.

Related Information
The `yp_bind` subroutine.
The `ypbind` daemon.

Network Information Service (NIS) Overview for System Management in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS Programming References Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming and Sockets Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

yp_update Subroutine

Purpose
Makes changes to an Network Information Services (NIS) map.

Library
C Library (`libc.a`)

Syntax
```c
#include <rpcsvc/ypclnt.h>
#include <rpcsvc/yp_prot.h>

yp_update (indomain, inmap, ypop, inkey, inkeylen, indata, indatalen)
char * indomain;
char * inmap;
unsigned ypop;
char * inkey;
int inkeylen;
char * indata;
int indatalen;
```

Description

Note: This routine depends upon the secure Remote Procedure Call (RPC) protocol, and will not work unless the network is running it.

The `yp_update` subroutine is used to make changes to a NIS map. The syntax is the same as that of the `yp_match` subroutine except for the additional `ypop` parameter, which may take on one of the following four values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ypop_INSERT</code></td>
<td>Inserts the key-value pair into the map. If the key already exists in the map, the <code>yp_update</code> subroutine returns a value of <code>YPERR_KEY</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ypop_CHANGE</code></td>
<td>Changes the data associated with the key to the new value. If the key is not found in the map, the <code>yp_update</code> subroutine returns a value of <code>YPERR_KEY</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ypop_STORE</code></td>
<td>Stores an item in the map regardless of whether the item already exists. No error is returned in either case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ypop_DELETE</code></td>
<td>Deletes an entry from the map.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

262 Technical Reference: Communications, Volume 1
Parameters

indomain
Points to the name of the domain used as input to the subroutine.

inmap
Points to the name of the map used as input to the subroutine.

ypop
Specifies the update operation to be used as input to the subroutine.

inkey
Points to the input key to be used as input to the subroutine.

inkeylen
Specifies the length, in bytes, of the inkey parameter.

indata
Points to the data used as input to the subroutine.

indatalen
Specifies the length, in bytes, of the data used as input to the subroutine.

Return Values

Upon successful completion, this routine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, it returns one of the error codes described in the rpcsvc/yp_prot.h file.

Files

/var/yp/updaters
A makefile for updating NIS maps.

Related Information

The yp_match subroutine.

Network Information Service (NIS) Overview for System Management in Networks and communication management.

List of NIS Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

yperr_string Subroutine

Purpose

Returns a pointer to an error message string.

Library

C Library (libc.a)

Syntax

#include <rpcsvc/ypclnt.h>
#include <rpcsvc/yp_prot.h>

char *yperr_string (intcode)
int incode;

Description

The yperr_string routine returns a pointer to an error message string. The error message string is null-terminated but contains no period or new-line escape characters.
Parameters

\textit{incode} \hspace{1em} Contains Network Information Services (NIS) error codes as described in the \texttt{rpcsvc/yp_prot.h} file.

Return Values

This subroutine returns a pointer to an error message string corresponding to the \textit{incode} parameter.

Related Information

Network Information Service (NIS) Overview for System Management in \textit{Networks and communication management}.

List of NIS Programming References in \textit{AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts}.

\textbf{ypprot_err Subroutine}

\textbf{Purpose}

Takes an Network Information Services NIS protocol error code as input and returns an error code to be used as input to a \texttt{yperr_string} subroutine.

\textbf{Library}

C Library (\texttt{libc.a})

\textbf{Syntax}

\begin{verbatim}
#include <rpcsvc/ypclnt.h>
#include <rpcsvc/yp_prot.h>

ypprot_err (incode);

u_int incode;
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Description}

The \texttt{ypprot_err} subroutine takes a NIS protocol error code as input and returns an error code to be used as input to a \texttt{yperr_string} subroutine.

\textbf{Parameters}

\textit{incode} \hspace{1em} Specifies the NIS protocol error code used as input to the subroutine.

\textbf{Return Values}

This subroutine returns a corresponding error code to be passed to the \texttt{yperr_string} subroutine.

\textbf{Related Information}

The \texttt{yperr_string} subroutine.

Network Information Service (NIS) Overview for System Management in \textit{Networks and communication management}.

List of NIS Programming References and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in \textit{AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts}.
Chapter 7. New Database Manager (NDBM)

dbm_close Subroutine

Purpose
Closes a database.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <ndbm.h>

void dbm_close (db)
  DBM *db;

Description
The dbm_close subroutine closes a database.

Parameters

db Specifies the database to close.

Related Information
The dbmclose subroutine.

List of NDBM and DBM Programming References and NDBM Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3
Communications Programming Concepts.

dbm_delete Subroutine

Purpose
Deletes a key and its associated contents.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <ndbm.h>

int dbm_delete (db, key)
  DBM *db;
  datum key;

Description
The dbm_delete subroutine deletes a key and its associated contents.
Parameters

*db*  Specifies a database.
*key*  Specifies the key to delete.

Return Values

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, the subroutine returns a negative value.

Related Information

The [delete subroutine](#).

List of NDBM and DBM Programming References and [NDBM Overview](#) in *AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts*.

---

dbm_fetch Subroutine

Purpose

Accesses data stored under a key.

Library

C Library (libc.a)

Syntax

```c
#include <ndbm.h>

datum dbm_fetch (db, key)

DBM *db;
datum key;
```

Description

The `dbm_fetch` subroutine accesses data stored under a key.

Parameters

*db*  Specifies the database to access.
*key*  Specifies the input key.

Return Values

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a `datum` structure containing the value returned for the specified key. If the subroutine is unsuccessful, a null value is indicated in the `dptr` field of the `datum` structure.

Related Information

The `fetch` subroutine.

List of NDBM and DBM Programming References and [NDBM Overview](#) in *AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts*.
dbm_firstkey Subroutine

Purpose
Returns the first key in a database.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <ndbm.h>
datum dbm_firstkey (db)
DBM *db;

Description
The dbm_firstkey subroutine returns the first key in a database.

Parameters
db Specifies the database to access.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a datum structure containing the value returned for the specified key. If the subroutine is unsuccessful, a null value is indicated in the dptr field of the datum structure.

Related Information
The firstkey subroutine.

List of NDBM and DBM Programming References and NDBM Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

dbm_nextkey Subroutine

Purpose
Returns the next key in a database.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <ndbm.h>
datum dbm_nextkey (db)
DBM *db;

Description
The dbm_nextkey subroutine returns the next key in a database.
Parameters

$db$ Specifies the database to access.

Return Values

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a datum structure containing the value returned for the specified key. If the subroutine is unsuccessful, a null value is indicated in the dptr field of the datum structure.

Related Information

The nextkey subroutine.

List of NDBM and DBM Programming References and NDBM Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3
Communications Programming Concepts.

dbm_open Subroutine

Purpose

Opens a database for access.

Library

C Library (libc.a)

Syntax

```c
#include <ndbm.h>

DBM *dbm_open (file, flags, mode)
char *file;
int flags, mode;
```

Description

The dbm_open subroutine opens a database for access. The subroutine opens or creates the file.dir and file.pag files, depending on the flags parameter. The returned DBM structure is used as input to other NDBM routines.

Parameters

- $file$ Specifies the path to open a database.
- $flags$ Specifies the flags required to open a subroutine.
- $mode$ Specifies the mode required to open a subroutine.

For more information about the flags and mode parameters, see the open, openx, or creat subroutine.

Return Values

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a pointer to the DBM structure. If unsuccessful, it returns a null value.

Related Information

The dbminit subroutine, open, openx, or creat subroutine.
**dbm_store Subroutine**

**Purpose**
Places data under a key.

**Library**
C Library (libc.a)

**Syntax**
```
#include <ndbm.h>

int dbm_store (db, key, content, flags)

DBM * db;
datum key, content;
int flags;
```

**Description**
The `dbm_store` subroutine places data under a key.

**Parameters**
- `db` Specifies the database to store.
- `key` Specifies the input key.
- `content` Specifies the value associated with the key to store.
- `flags` Contains either the DBM_INSERT or DBM_REPLACE flag.

**Return Values**
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, the subroutine returns a negative value. When the `dbm_store` subroutine is called with the `flags` parameter set to the DBM_INSERT flag and an existing entry is found, it returns a value of 1. If the `flags` parameter is set to the DBM_REPLACE flag, the entry will be replaced, even if it already exists.

**Related Information**
The `store` subroutine.

---

**dbmclose Subroutine**

**Purpose**
Closes a database.

**Library**
DBM Library (libdbm.a)
Syntax
#include <dbm.h>

void dbmclose (db)
DBM *db;

Description
The dbmclose subroutine closes a database.

Parameters
  db     Specifies the database to close.

Related Information
The dbm_close subroutine.

List of NDBM and DBM Programming References and NDBM Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3
Communications Programming Concepts.

dbminit Subroutine

Purpose
Opens a database for access.

Library
DBM Library (libdbm.a)

Syntax
#include <dbm.h>

dbminit (file)
char *file;

Description
The dbminit subroutine opens a database for access. At the time of the call, the file.dir and file.pag files must exist.

Note: To build an empty database, create zero-length .dir and .pag files.

Parameters
  file     Specifies the path name of the database to open.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, the subroutine returns a negative value.

Related Information
The dbm_open subroutine.
delete Subroutine

Purpose
Deletes a key and its associated contents.

Library
DBM Library (libdbm.a)

Syntax
```
#include <dbm.h>

delete (key)
datum key;
```

Description
The `delete` subroutine deletes a key and its associated contents.

Parameters
- `key` Specifies the key to delete.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, the subroutine returns a negative value.

Related Information
The `dbm_delete` subroutine.

fetch Subroutine

Purpose
Accesses data stored under a key.

Library
DBM Library (libdbm.a)

Syntax
```
#include <dbm.h>

datum fetch (key)
datum key;
```

Description
The `fetch` subroutine retrieves the data associated with a key.

Parameters
- `key` Specifies the key to fetch.

Chapter 7. New Database Manager (NDBM)
The `fetch` subroutine accesses data stored under a key.

**Parameters**

- **key**: Specifies the input key.

**Return Values**

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns data corresponding to the specified key. If the subroutine is unsuccessful, a null value is indicated in the `dptr` field of the returned `datum` structure.

**Related Information**

The `dbm_fetch` subroutine. List of NDBM and DBM Programming References and NDBM Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

**firstkey Subroutine**

**Purpose**

Returns the first key in the database.

**Library**

DBM Library (`libdbm.a`)

**Syntax**

```c
#include <dbm.h>
datum firstkey()
```

**Description**

The `firstkey` subroutine returns the first key in the database.

**Return Values**

Returns a `datum` structure containing the first key value pair.

**Related Information**

The `dbm_firstkey` subroutine. List of NDBM and DBM Programming References and NDBM Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

**nextkey Subroutine**

**Purpose**

Returns the next key in a database.

**Library**

DBM Library (`libdbm.a`)
Syntax
#include <dbm.h>

datum nextkey (key)
datum key;

Description
The nextkey subroutine returns the next key in a database.

Parameters
key Specifies the input key. This value has no effect on the return value, but must be present.

Return Values
Returns a datum structure containing the next key-value pair.

Related Information
The [dbm_nextkey] subroutine.

store Subroutine

Purpose
Places data under a key.

Library
DBM Library (libdbm.a)

Syntax
#include <dbm.h>

int store (key, content)
datum key, content;

Description
The store subroutine places data under a key.

Parameters
key Specifies the input key.
content Specifies the value associated with the key to store.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, the subroutine returns a negative value.
Related Information

The **dbm_store** subroutine.

[List of NDBM and DBM Programming References](#) and **NDBM Overview** in *AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.*
Chapter 8. Remote Procedure Calls (RPC)

auth_destroy Macro

Purpose
Destroys authentication information.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
```
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void auth_destroy (auth)
auth *auth;
```

Description
The auth_destroy macro destroys the authentication information structure pointed to by the auth parameter. Destroying the structure deallocates private data structures. The use of the auth parameter is undefined after calling this macro.

Parameters
auth Points to the authentication information structure to be destroyed.

Related Information
List of RPC Programming References
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

authdes_create Subroutine

Purpose
Enables the use of Data Encryption Standard (DES) from the client side.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
```
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

AUTH *authdes_create (name, window, syncaddr, ckey)
char *name;
unsigned int window;
struct sockaddr *syncaddr;
des_block *ckey;
```
Description
The `authdes_create` subroutine interfaces to the secure authentication system, known as DES. This subroutine, used from the client side, returns the authentication handle that allows use of the secure authentication system.

**Note:** The `keyserv` daemon must be running for the DES authentication system to work.

**Parameters**

- **name** Specifies the network name (or netname) of the server process owner. The `name` parameter can be either the host name derived from the `host2netname` subroutine or the user name derived from the `user2netname` subroutine.

- **window** Specifies the confirmation of the client credentials, given in seconds. A small value for the `window` parameter is more secure than a large one. However, choosing too small a value for the `window` parameter increases the frequency of resynchronizations due to clock drift.

- **syncaddr** Identifies clock synchronization. If the `syncaddr` parameter has a null value, then the authentication system assumes that the local clock is always in sync with the server's clock. The authentication system will not attempt resynchronizations. However, if an address is supplied, the system uses the address for consulting the remote time service whenever resynchronization is required. This parameter usually contains the address of the RPC server itself.

- **ckey** Specifies the DES key. If the value of the `ckey` parameter is null, the authentication system generates a random DES key to be used for the encryption of credentials. However, if a DES key is supplied, the supplied key is used.

**Return Values**
This subroutine returns a pointer to a DES authentication object.

**Related Information**
- List of RPC Programming References

**authdes_getucred Subroutine**

**Purpose**
Maps a Data Encryption Standard (DES) credential into a UNIX credential.

**Library**
C Library (`libc.a`)

**Syntax**
```
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

authdes_getucred (adc, uid, gid, grouplen, groups)
struct authdes_cred *adc;
short *uid;
short *gid;
short *grouplen;
int *groups;
```
Description

The authdes_getucred subroutine interfaces to the secure authentication system known as DES. The server uses this subroutine to convert a DES credential, which is the independent operating system, into a UNIX credential. The authdes_getucred subroutine retrieves necessary information from a cache instead of using the network information service (NIS).

Note: The keyserv daemon must be running for the DES authentication system to work.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adc</td>
<td>Points to the DES credential structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uid</td>
<td>Specifies the caller’s effective user ID (UID).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gid</td>
<td>Specifies the caller’s effective group ID (GID).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grouplen</td>
<td>Specifies the group’s length.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>groups</td>
<td>Points to the group’s array.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Return Values

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information

The keyserv daemon.

List of RPC Programming References

Network Information Service (NIS) Overview for System Management in Networks and communication management.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

authnone_create Subroutine

Purpose

Creates null authentication.

Library

C Library (libc.a)

Syntax

```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>
AUTH *authnone_create ( )
```

Description

The authnone_create subroutine creates and returns a default Remote Procedure Call (RPC) authentication handle that passes null authentication information with each remote procedure call.

Return Values

This subroutine returns a pointer to an RPC authentication handle.
Related Information
The authunix_create subroutine, authunix_create_default subroutine, svcerr_auth subroutine.

The auth_destroy macro.

List of RPC Programming References

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

authunix_create Subroutine

Purpose
Creates an authentication handle with operating system permissions.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

AUTH *authunix_create (host, uid, gid, len, aupgids)
char *host;
int uid, gid;
int len, *aupgids;

Description
The authunix_create subroutine creates and returns a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) authentication handle with operating system permissions.

Parameters
host Points to the name of the machine on which the permissions were created.
uid Specifies the caller’s effective user ID (UID).
gid Specifies the caller’s effective group ID (GID).
len Specifies the length of the groups array.
aupgids Points to the counted array of groups to which the user belongs.

Return Values
This subroutine returns an RPC authentication handle.

Related Information
The authnone_create subroutine, authunix_create_default subroutine, svcerr_auth subroutine.

The auth_destroy macro.

List of RPC Programming References

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
authunix_create_default Subroutine

Purpose
Sets the authentication to default.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>
AUTH *authunix_create_default() 

Description
The authunix_create_default subroutine calls the authunix_create subroutine to create and return the default operating system authentication handle.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns an authentication handle.

Related Information
The authnone_create subroutine, authunix_create subroutine, svcerr_auth subroutine.

The auth_destroy macro.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

callrpc Subroutine

Purpose
Calls the remote procedure on the machine specified by the host parameter.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>
callrpc (host, prognum, versnum, procnum, inproc, in, outproc, out)

char *host;
ulong prognum, versnum, procnum;
xdrproc_t inproc;
char *in;
xdrproc_t outproc;
char *out;

Description
The callrpc subroutine calls a remote procedure identified by the prognum parameter, the versnum parameter, and the procnum parameter on the machine pointed to by the host parameter.
This subroutine uses User Datagram Protocol/Internet Protocol (UDP/IP) as a transport to call a remote procedure. No connection will be made if the server is supported by Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP). This subroutine does not control time outs or authentication.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>Points to the program name of the remote machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prognum</td>
<td>Specifies the number of the remote program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>versnum</td>
<td>Specifies the version number of the remote program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>procnum</td>
<td>Specifies the number of the procedure associated with the remote program being called.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inproc</td>
<td>Specifies the name of the XDR procedure that encodes the procedure parameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>Specifies the address of the procedure arguments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outproc</td>
<td>Specifies the name of the XDR procedure that decodes the procedure results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out</td>
<td>Specifies the address where results are placed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Return Values

This subroutine returns a value of `enum clnt_stat`. Use the `clnt_perrno` subroutine to translate this failure status into a displayed message.

Related information

The `clnt_call` macro.

TCP/IP protocols in *Networks and communication management*.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in *AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts*.

---

**cbc_crypt, des_setparity, or ecb_crypt Subroutine**

**Purpose**

Implements Data Encryption Standard (DES) encryption routines.

**Library**

DES library (`libdes.a`)

**Syntax**

```C
#include <des_crypt.h>

int ecb_crypt (key, data, datalen, mode)

char *key;
char *data;
unsigned datalen;
unsigned mode;

int cbc_crypt(key, data, datalen, mode, ivec)

char *key;
char *data;
```
unsigned datalen;
unsigned mode;
char ivec;
void des_setparity(key)
char *key;

Description
The **ecb_crypt** and **cbc_crypt** subroutines implement DES encryption routines, set by the National Bureau of Standards.

- The **ecb_crypt** subroutine encrypts in ECB (Electronic Code Book) mode, which encrypts blocks of data independently.
- The **cbc_crypt** subroutine encrypts in CBC (Cipher Block Chaining) mode, which chains together successive blocks. CBC mode protects against insertions, deletions, and substitutions of blocks. Also, regularities in the clear text will not appear in the cipher text.

These subroutines are not available for export outside the United States.

**Note:** The DES library must be installed to use these subroutines.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>data</td>
<td>Specifies that the data is to be either encrypted or decrypted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datalen</td>
<td>Specifies the length in bytes of data. The length must be a multiple of 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key</td>
<td>Specifies the 8-byte encryption key with parity. To set the parity for the key, which for DES is in the low bit of each byte, use the <strong>des_setparity</strong> subroutine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ivec</td>
<td>Initializes the vector for the chaining in 8-byte. This is updated to the next initialization vector upon return.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mode</td>
<td>Specifies whether data is to be encrypted or decrypted. This parameter is formed by logically ORing the <strong>DES_ENCRYPT</strong> or <strong>DES_DECRYPT</strong> symbols. For software versus hardware encryption, logically OR the <strong>DES_HW</strong> or <strong>DES_SW</strong> symbols. These four symbols are defined in the <em>/usr/include/des_crypt.h</em> file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Return Values

- **DESERR_BADPARAM** Specifies that a bad parameter was passed to routine.
- **DESERR_HWERR** Specifies that an error occurred in the hardware or driver.
- **DESERR_NOHWDEVICE** Specifies that encryption succeeded, but was done in software instead of the requested hardware.
- **DESERR_NONE** Specifies no error.

**Note:** Given the **stat** variable, for example, which contains the return value for either the **ecb_crypt** or **cbc_crypt** subroutine, the **DES_FAILED(stat)** macro is false only for the **DESERR_NONE** and **DESERR_NOHWDEVICE** return values.

Files

*/usr/include/des_crypt.h* Defines macros and needed symbols for the **mode** parameter.

Related Information

- [Secure NFS](in *Security*).
- [Example Using DES Authentication](in *AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts*).
clnt_broadcast Subroutine

Purpose
Broadcasts a remote procedure call to all locally connected networks.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>
enum clnt_stat clnt_broadcast (prognum, versnum, procnum, inproc)
estat = clnt_broadcast (in, outproc, out, eachresult);

Parameters
prognum Specifies the number of the remote program.
versnum Specifies the version number of the remote program.
procnum Identifies the procedure to be called.
inproc Specifies the procedure that encodes the procedure’s parameters.
in Specifies the address of the procedure’s arguments.
outproc Specifies the procedure that decodes the procedure results.
out Specifies the address where results are placed.
eachresult Specifies the procedure to call when clients respond.
addr Specifies the address of the workstation that sent the results.

cDescription
The clnt_broadcast subroutine broadcasts a remote procedure call to all locally connected networks. The remote procedure is identified by the prognum, versnum, and procnum parameters on the workstation identified by the host parameter.

Broadcast sockets are limited in size to the maximum transfer unit of the data link. For Ethernet, this value is 1500 bytes.

When a client broadcasts a remote procedure call over the network, a number of server processes respond. Each time the client receives a response, the clnt_broadcast subroutine calls the eachresult routine. The eachresult routine takes the following form:
eachresult (out, *addr)
char *out;
struct sockaddr_in *addr;

Return Values
If the eachresult subroutine returns a value of 0, the clnt_broadcast subroutine waits for more replies. Otherwise, the clnt_broadcast subroutine returns with the appropriate results.
Related Information

The `callrpc` subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming and Sockets Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

clnt_call Macro

Purpose

Calls the remote procedure associated with the `clnt` parameter.

Library

C Library (`libc.a`)

Syntax

```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

enum clnt_stat clnt_call (clnt, procnum, inproc, in, outproc, out, tout)

CLIENT * clnt;
unsigned long procnum;
xdrproc_t inproc;
char * in;
xdrproc_t outproc;
char * out;
struct timeval tout;
```

Description

The `clnt_call` macro calls the remote procedure associated with the client handle pointed to by the `clnt` parameter.

Parameters

- `clnt` Points to the structure of the client handle that results from a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) client creation subroutine, such as the `clntudp_create` subroutine that opens a User Datagram Protocol/Internet Protocol (UDP/IP) socket.
- `procnum` Identifies the remote procedure on the host machine.
- `inproc` Specifies the procedure that encodes the procedure’s parameters.
- `in` Specifies the address of the procedure’s arguments.
- `outproc` Specifies the procedure that decodes the procedure’s results.
- `out` Specifies the address where results are placed.
- `tout` Sets the time allowed for results to return.

Related Information

The `callrpc` subroutine, `clnt_perro` subroutine, `clnttcp_create` subroutine, `clntudp_create` subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming and Sockets Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
clnt_control Macro

Purpose
Changes or retrieves various information about a client object.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

bool_t clnt_control (cli, req, info)
CLIENT *cli;
int req;
char *info;

Description
The clnt_control macro is used to change or retrieve various information about a client object.

User Datagram Protocol (UDP) and Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) have the following supported values for the req parameter’s argument types and functions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Values for the req Parameter</th>
<th>Argument Type</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLSET_TIMEOUT</td>
<td>struct timeval</td>
<td>Sets total time out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLGET_TIMEOUT</td>
<td>struct timeval</td>
<td>Gets total time out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLGET_SERVER_ADDR</td>
<td>struct sockaddr</td>
<td>Gets server’s address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following operations are valid for UDP only:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Values for the req Parameter</th>
<th>Argument Type</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLSET_RETRY_TIMEOUT</td>
<td>struct timeval</td>
<td>Sets the retry time out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLGET_RETRY_TIMEOUT</td>
<td>struct timeval</td>
<td>Gets the retry time out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. If the time out is set using the clnt_control subroutine, the time-out parameter passed to the clnt_call subroutine will be ignored in all future calls.
2. The retry time out is the time that User Datagram Protocol/Remote Procedure Call (UDP/RPC) waits for the server to reply before retransmitting the request.

Parameters
cli Points to the structure of the client handle.
req Indicates the type of operation.
info Points to the information for request type.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.
Related Information
The `clnttcp_create` subroutine, `clntudp_create` subroutine.
The `clnt_call` macro.
TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

clnt_create Subroutine

Purpose
Creates and returns a generic client handle.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

CLIENT *clnt_create (host, prognum, versnum, protocol)
char *host;
unsigned prognum, versnum;
char *protocol;

Description
Creates and returns a generic client handle.

Remote Procedure Calls (RPC) messages transported by User Datagram Protocol/Internet Protocol (UDP/IP) can hold up to 8KB of encoded data. Use this transport for procedures that take arguments or return results of less than 8KB.

Note: When the clnt_create subroutine is used to create a RPC client handle, the timeout value provided on subsequent calls to clnttcp_call are ignored. Using the clnt_create subroutine has the same effect as using clnttcp_create followed by a call to clnt_control to set the timeout value for the RPC client handle. If the timeout parameter is used on the clnttcp_call interface, use the clnttcp_create interface to create the client handle.

Parameters

- host Identifies the name of the remote host where the server is located.
- prognum Specifies the program number of the remote program.
- versnum Specifies the version number of the remote program.
- protocol Identifies which data transport protocol the program is using, either UDP or Transmission Control Protocol (TCP).

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a client handle.
Related Information
The `clnttcp_create` subroutine, `clntudp_create` subroutine.

The `clnt_control` macro, `clnt_destroy` macro.

TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

clnt_destroy Macro

Purpose
Destroys the client’s Remote Procedure Call (RPC) handle.

Library
C Library (`libc.a`)

Syntax
```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void clnt_destroy (clnt)
    CLIENT *clnt;
```

Description
The `clnt_destroy` macro destroys the client’s RPC handle. Destroying the client’s RPC handle deallocates private data structures, including the `clnt` parameter itself. The use of the `clnt` parameter becomes undefined upon calling the `clnt_destroy` macro.

Parameters
`clnt` Points to the structure of the client handle.

Related Information
The `clntudp_create` subroutine, `clnt_create` subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming and Sockets Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

clint_freeres Macro

Purpose
Frees data that was allocated by the Remote Procedure Call/eXternal Data Representation (RPC/XDR) system.

Library
C Library (`libc.a`)
Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

clnt_freeres (clnt, outproc, out)
CLIENT *clnt;
xdrproc_t outproc;
char *out;

Description
The `clnt_freeres` macro frees data allocated by the RPC/XDR system. This data was allocated when the RPC/XDR system decoded the results of an RPC call.

Parameters
- `clnt`: Points to the structure of the client handle.
- `outproc`: Specifies the XDR subroutine that describes the results in simple decoding primitives.
- `out`: Specifies the address where the results are placed.

Related Information
- External Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming
- Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

clnt_geterr Macro

Purpose
Copies error information from a client handle.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void clnt_geterr (clnt, errp)
CLIENT *clnt;
struct rpc_err *errp;

Description
The `clnt_geterr` macro copies error information from a client handle to an error structure.

Parameters
- `clnt`: Points to the structure of the client handle.
- `errp`: Specifies the address of the error structure.

clnt_pcreateerror Subroutine

Purpose
Indicates why a client Remote Procedure Call (RPC) handle was not created.
Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void clnt_pcreateerror ( char *s);

Description
The clnt_pcreateerror subroutine writes a message to standard error output, indicating why a client RPC handle could not be created. The message is preceded by the string pointed to by the s parameter and a colon.

Use this subroutine if one of the following calls fails: the clntraw_create subroutine, clnttcp_create subroutine, or clntudp_create subroutine.

Parameters
s Points to a character string that represents the error text.

Related Information
The clnt_create subroutine, clnt_spcreateerror subroutine, clntraw_create subroutine, clnttcp_create subroutine, clntudp_create subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

cInt_perror Subroutine

Purpose
Specifies the condition of the stat parameter.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void clnt_perror ( enum clnt_stat stat);

Description
The clnt_perror subroutine writes a message to standard error output, corresponding to the condition specified by the stat parameter.

This subroutine is used after a callrpc subroutine fails. The clnt_perror subroutine translates the failure status (the enum clnt_stat subroutine) into a message.
If the program does not have a standard error output, or the programmer does not want the message to be output with the `printf` subroutine, or the message format used is different from that supported by the `clnt_perrno` subroutine, then the `clnt_sperrno` subroutine is used instead of the `clnt_perrno` subroutine.

### Parameters

`stat` Specifies the client error status of the remote procedure call.

### Return Values

The `clnt_perrno` subroutine translates and displays the following `enum clnt_stat` error status codes:

- `RPC_SUCCESS = 0` Call succeeded.
- `RPC_CANTENCODERARGS = 1` Cannot encode arguments.
- `RPC_CANTDECODERES = 2` Cannot decode results.
- `RPC_CANTSEND = 3` Failure in sending call.
- `RPC_CANTRECV = 4` Failure in receiving result.
- `RPC_TIMEDOUT = 5` Call timed out.

### Related Information

The `callrpc` subroutine, `clnt_sperrno` subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

### `clnt_perror` Subroutine

#### Purpose

Indicates why a remote procedure call failed.

#### Library

C Library (`libc.a`)

#### Syntax

```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

clnt_perror (clnt, s)
CLIENT *clnt;
char *s;
```

#### Description

The `clnt_perror` subroutine writes a message to standard error output indicating why a remote procedure call failed. The message is preceded by the string pointed to by the `s` parameter and a colon.

This subroutine is used after the `clnt_call` macro.

#### Parameters

- `clnt` Points to the structure of the client handle.
- `s` Points to a character string that represents the error text.
Return Values
This subroutine returns an error string to standard error output.

Related Information
The `clnt_sperror` subroutine.

The `clnt_call` macro.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

clnt_spcreateerror Subroutine

**Purpose**
Indicates why a client Remote Procedure Call (RPC) handle was not created.

**Library**
C Library (`libc.a`)

**Syntax**
```
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

char *clnt_spcreateerror ( s )
char *s;
```

**Description**
The `clnt_spcreateerror` subroutine returns a string indicating why a client RPC handle was not created.

**Note:** This subroutine returns the pointer to static data that is overwritten on each call.

**Parameters**
- `s` Points to a character string that represents the error text.

**Related Information**
The `clnt_pcreateerror` subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

clnt_sperrno Subroutine

**Purpose**
Specifies the condition of the `stat` parameter by returning a pointer to a string containing a status message.

**Library**
C Library (`libc.a`)
Syntax

```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

char *clnt_sperrno (enum clnt_stat stat);
```

Description

The `clnt_sperrno` subroutine specifies the condition of the `stat` parameter by returning a pointer to a string containing a status message. The string ends with a new-line character.

Whenever one of the following conditions exists, the `clnt_sperrno` subroutine is used instead of the `clnt_perrno` subroutine when a `callrpc` routine fails:

- The program does not have a standard error output. This is common for programs running as servers.
- The programmer does not want the message to be output with the `printf` subroutine.
- A message format differing from that supported by the `clnt_perrno` subroutine is being used.

**Note:** The `clnt_sperrno` subroutine does not return the pointer to static data, so the result is not overwritten on each call.

Parameters

- `stat` Specifies the client error status of the remote procedure call.

Return Values

The `clnt_sperrno` subroutine translates and displays the following `enum clnt_stat` error status messages:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RPC_SUCCESS = 0</td>
<td>Call succeeded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPC_CANTENCODEARGS = 1</td>
<td>Cannot encode arguments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPC_CANTDECODERES = 2</td>
<td>Cannot decode results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPC_CANTSEND = 3</td>
<td>Failure in sending call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPC_CANTRECV = 4</td>
<td>Failure in receiving result.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPC_TIMEDOUT = 5</td>
<td>Call timed out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Information

The `clnt_perrno` subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

**clnt_sperror Subroutine**

**Purpose**

Indicates why a remote procedure call failed.

**Library**

C Library (libc.a)

**Syntax**

```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>
```
char *clnt_sperror (clnt_sperror)
CLIENT *cl;
char *s;

Description
The clnt_sperror subroutine returns a string to standard error output indicating why a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) call failed. This subroutine also returns the pointer to static data overwritten on each call.

Parameters
cl Points to the structure of the client handle.
s Points to a character string that represents the error text.

Return Values
This subroutine returns an error string to standard error output.

Related Information
The clnt_perror subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

clntraw_create Subroutine

Purpose
Creates a toy Remote Procedure Call (RPC) client for simulation.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

CLIENT *clntraw_create (prognum, versnum)
u_long prognum, versnum;

Description
The clntraw_create subroutine creates a toy RPC client for simulation of a remote program. This toy client uses a buffer located within the address space of the process for the transport to pass messages to the service. If the corresponding RPC server lives in the same address space, simulation of RPC and acquisition of RPC overheads, such as round-trip times, are done without kernel interference.

Parameters
prognum Specifies the program number of the remote program.
versnum Specifies the version number of the remote program.
Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a pointer to a valid RPC client. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of NULL.

Related Information
The `clnt_pcreateerror` subroutine, `svccmd_create` subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

clnttcp_create Subroutine

Purpose
Creates a Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) client transport handle.

Library
C Library (`libc.a`)

Syntax
```c
CLIENT *clnttcp_create (addr, prognum, versnum, sockp, sendsz, recvsz)
```
```
struct sockaddr_in *addr;
long prognum, versnum;
int *sockp;
unsigned sendsz, recvsz;
```

Description
The `clnttcp_create` subroutine creates a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) client transport handle for a remote program. This client uses TCP/IP as the transport to pass messages to the service.

The TCP/IP remote procedure calls use buffered input/output (I/O). Users can set the size of the send and receive buffers with the `sendsz` and `recvsz` parameters. If the size of either buffer is set to a value of 0, the `svctcp_create` subroutine picks suitable default values.

Parameters
- `addr`: Points to the Internet address of the remote program. If the port number for this Internet address (`addr->sin_port`) is a value of 0, then the `addr` parameter is set to the actual port on which the remote program is listening. The client making the remote procedure call consults the remote `portmap` daemon to obtain the port information.
- `prognum`: Specifies the program number of the remote program.
- `versnum`: Specifies the version number of the remote program.
- `sockp`: Specifies a pointer to a socket. If the value of the `sockp` parameter is `RPC_ANYSOCK`, the `clnttcp_create` subroutine opens a new socket and sets the `sockp` pointer to the new socket.
- `sendsz`: Sets the size of the send buffer.
- `recvsz`: Sets the size of the receive buffer.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this routine returns a valid TCP/IP client handle. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of null.
Related Information

The `callrpc` subroutine, `clnt_pcreateerror` subroutine, `clntudp_create subroutine, `svctcp_create` subroutine.

The `portmap` daemon.

The `clnt_call` macro.

TCP/IP protocols in *Networks and communication management.*

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming and Sockets Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

**clntudp_create Subroutine**

**Purpose**

Creates a User Datagram Protocol/Internet Protocol (UDP/IP) client transport handle.

**Library**

C Library (libc.a)

**Syntax**

```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

CLIENT *clntudp_create (addr, prognum, versnum, wait, sockp)
struct sockaddr_in *addr;
u_long prognum, versnum;
struct timeval wait;
int *sockp;
```

**Description**

The `clntudp_create` subroutine creates a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) client transport handle for a remote program. The client uses UDP as the transport to pass messages to the service.

RPC messages transported by UDP/IP can hold up to 8KB of encoded data. Use this subroutine for procedures that take arguments or return results of less than 8KB.

**Parameters**

- **addr**
  - Points to the Internet address of the remote program. If the port number for this Internet address
    (addr->sin_port) is 0, then the value of the addr parameter is set to the port that the remote program
    is listening on. The `clntudp_create` subroutine consults the remote portmap daemon for this information.

- **prognum**
  - Specifies the program number of the remote program.

- **versnum**
  - Specifies the version number of the remote program.

- **wait**
  - Sets the amount of time that the UDP/IP transport waits to receive a response before the transport
    sends another remote procedure call or the remote procedure call times out. The total time for the call
    to time out is set by the `clnt_call` macro.

- **sockp**
  - Specifies a pointer to a socket. If the value of the sockp parameter is RPC_ANYSOCK, the
    `clntudp_create` subroutine opens a new socket and sets the sockp pointer to that new socket.
Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a valid UDP client handle. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of null.

Related Information
The `callrpc` subroutine, `clnt_pcreateerror` subroutine, `clnttcp_create` subroutine, `svcudp_create` subroutine.

The `portmap` daemon.

The `clnt_call` macro.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming and Sockets Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

get_myaddress Subroutine

Purpose
Gets the user’s Internet Protocol (IP) address.

Library
C Library (`libc.a`)

Syntax
```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void get_myaddress (addr)
    struct sockaddr_in *addr;
```

Description
The `get_myaddress` subroutine gets the machine’s IP address without consulting the library routines that access the `/etc/hosts` file.

Parameters

`addr` Specifies the address where the machine’s IP address is placed. The port number is set to a value of `htons` (PMAPPORT).

Related Information
The `/etc/hosts` file.

Internet Protocol in Networks and communication management.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
getnetname Subroutine

Purpose
Installs the network name of the caller in the array specified by the name parameter.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

getnetname (name
char name [MAXNETNAMELEN];

Description
The getnetname subroutine installs the caller’s unique, operating-system-independent network name in the fixed-length array specified by the name parameter.

Parameters
name Specifies the network name (or netname) of the server process owner. The name parameter can be either the host name derived from the host2netname subroutine or the user name derived from the user2netname subroutine.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
The host2netname subroutine, user2netname subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

host2netname Subroutine

Purpose
Converts a domain-specific host name to an operating-system-independent network name.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

host2netname (name, host, domain
char *name;
char *host;
char *domain;
**Description**

The `host2netname` subroutine converts a domain-specific host name to an operating-system-independent network name.

This subroutine is the inverse of the `netname2host` subroutine.

**Parameters**

- `name`: Points to the network name (or netname) of the server process owner. The `name` parameter can be either the host name derived from the `host2netname` subroutine or the user name derived from the `user2netname` subroutine.
- `host`: Points to the name of the machine on which the permissions were created.
- `domain`: Points to the domain name.

**Return Values**

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

**Related Information**

The `netname2host` subroutine, `user2netname` subroutine.

---

**key_decryptsession Subroutine**

**Purpose**

Decrypts a server network name and a Data Encryption Standard (DES) key.

**Library**

C Library (`libc.a`)

**Syntax**

```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

key_decryptsession (remotename, deskey)
char *remotename;
des_block *deskey;
```

**Description**

The `key_decryptsession` subroutine interfaces to the `keyserv` daemon, which is associated with the secure authentication system known as DES. The subroutine takes a server network name and a DES key and decrypts the DES key by using the public key of the server and the secret key associated with the effective user number (UID) of the calling process. User programs rarely need to call this subroutine. System commands such as `keylogin` and the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) library are the main clients.

This subroutine is the inverse of the `key_encryptsession` subroutine.

**Parameters**

- `remotename`: Points to the remote host name.
- `deskey`: Points to the `des_block` structure.
Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of -1.

Related Information
The `key_encryptsession` subroutine.
The `keylogin` command.
The `keyserv` daemon.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

key_encryptsession Subroutine

Purpose
Encrypts a server network name and a Data Encryption Standard (DES) key.

Library
C Library (`libc.a`)

Syntax
```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

key_encryptsession (remotename, deskey)
char *remotename;
des_block *deskey;
```

Description
The `key_encryptsession` subroutine interfaces to the `keyserv` daemon, which is associated with the secure authentication system known as DES. This subroutine encrypts a server network name and a DES key. To do so, the routine uses the public key of the server and the secret key associated with the effective user number (UID) of the calling process. System commands such as `keylogin` and the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) library are the main clients. User programs rarely need to call this subroutine.

This subroutine is the inverse of the `key_decryptsession` subroutine.

Parameters
- `remotename` Points to the remote host name.
- `deskey` Points to the `des_block` structure.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of -1.
key_gendes Subroutine

Purpose
Asks the keyserv daemon for a secure conversation key.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

key_gendes (deskey)
des_block *deskey;

Description
The key_gendes subroutine interfaces to the keyserv daemon, which is associated with the secure authentication system known as Data Encryption Standard (DES). This subroutine asks the keyserv daemon for a secure conversation key. Choosing a key at random is not recommended because the common ways of choosing random numbers, such as the current time, are easy to guess. User programs rarely need to call this subroutine. System commands such as keylogin and the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) library are the main clients.

Parameters

deskey Points to the des_block structure.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of -1.

Related Information
The key_decryptsession subroutine.
The keylogin command.
The keyserv daemon.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
key_setsecret Subroutine

Purpose
Sets the key for the effective user number (UID) of the calling process.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

key_setsecret (key)
char *key;
```

Description
The key_setsecret subroutine interfaces to the keyserv daemon, which is associated with the secure authentication system known as Data Encryption Standard (DES). This subroutine is used to set the key for the effective UID of the calling process. User programs rarely need to call this subroutine. System commands such as keylogin and the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) library are the main clients.

Parameters
- **key** Points to the key name.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of -1.

Related Information
- The keylogin command.
- The keyserv daemon.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

netname2host Subroutine

Purpose
Converts an operating-system-independent network name to a domain-specific host name.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>
```
netname2host (name, host, hostlen)
char *name;
char *host;
int hostlen;

Description
The netname2host subroutine converts an operating-system-independent network name to a domain-specific host name.

This subroutine is the inverse of the host2netname subroutine.

Parameters

name Specifies the network name (or netname) of the server process owner. The name parameter can be either the host name derived from the host2netname subroutine or the user name derived from the user2netname subroutine.
host Points to the name of the machine on which the permissions were created.
hostlen Specifies the size of the host name.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
The host2netname subroutine, user2netname subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

netname2user Subroutine

Purpose
Converts from an operating-system-independent network name to a domain-specific user number (UID).

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

netname2user (name, uidp, gidp, gidlenp, gidlist)
char * name;
int * uidp;
int * gidp;
int * gidlenp;
int * gidlist;

Description
The netname2user subroutine converts from an operating-system-independent network name to a domain-specific UID. This subroutine is the inverse of the user2netname subroutine.
Parameters

**name**
Points to the network name (or netname) of the server process owner. The name parameter can be either the host name derived from the `host2netname` subroutine or the user name derived from the `user2netname` subroutine.

**uidp**
Points to the user ID.

**gidp**
Points to the group ID.

**gidlenp**
Points to the size of the group ID.

**gidlist**
Points to the group list.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
The `host2netname` subroutine, `user2netname` subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

pmap_getmaps Subroutine

Purpose
Returns a list of the current Remote Procedure Call (RPC) program-to-port mappings on the host.

Library
C Library (`libc.a`)

Syntax
```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

struct pmaplist *pmap_getmaps (addr)
struct sockaddr_in *addr;
```

Description
The `pmap_getmaps` subroutine acts as a user interface to the `portmap` daemon. The subroutine returns a list of the current RPC program-to-port mappings on the host located at the Internet Protocol (IP) address pointed to by the `addr` parameter.

Note: The `rpcinfo -p` command calls this subroutine.

Parameters

**addr**
Specifies the address where the machine's IP address is placed.

Return Values
If there is no list of current RPC programs, this procedure returns a value of null.
Related Information
The `pmap_set` subroutine, `pmap_unset` subroutine, `svc_register` subroutine.

The `rpcinfo` command.

The `portmap` daemon.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

pmap_getport Subroutine

Purpose
Requests the port number on which a service waits.

Library
C Library (`libc.a`)

Syntax
```
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

u_short pmap_getport (addr, prognum, versnum, protocol)
struct sockaddr_in *addr;
long prognum, versnum, protocol;
```

Description
The `pmap_getport` subroutine acts as a user interface to the `portmap` daemon in order to return the port number on which a service waits.

Parameters
- `addr` Points to the Internet Protocol (IP) address of the host where the remote program supporting the waiting service resides.
- `prognum` Specifies the program number of the remote program.
- `versnum` Specifies the version number of the remote program.
- `protocol` Specifies the transport protocol the service recognizes.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, the `pmap_getport` subroutine returns the port number of the requested program; otherwise, if the mapping does not exist or the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) system could not contact the remote `portmap` daemon, this subroutine returns a value of 0. If the remote `portmap` daemon could not be contacted, the `rpc_createerr` subroutine contains the RPC status.

Related Information
The `portmap` daemon.

TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
pmap_rmtcall Subroutine

Purpose
Instructs the portmap daemon to make a remote procedure call.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

enum clnt_stat pmap_rmtcall (addr, prognum, versnum, procnum);
enum clnt_stat pmap_rmtcall (inproc, in, outproc, out, tout, portp);

struct sockaddr_in *addr;
ulong prognum, versnum, procnum;
xdrproc_t inproc;
char *in;
xdrproc_t outproc;
char *out;
struct timeval tout;
ulong *portp;

Description
The pmap_rmtcall subroutine is a user interface to the portmap daemon. The routine instructs the host portmap daemon to make a remote procedure call (RPC). Clients consult the portmap daemon when sending out RPC calls for given program numbers. The portmap daemon tells the client the ports to which to send the calls.

Parameters
addr Points to the Internet Protocol (IP) address of the host where the remote program that supports the waiting service resides.
prognum Specifies the program number of the remote program.
versnum Specifies the version number of the remote program.
procnum Identifies the procedure to be called.
inproc Specifies the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) routine that encodes the remote procedure parameters.
in Points to the address of the procedure arguments.
outproc Specifies the XDR routine that decodes the remote procedure results.
out Points to the address where the results are placed.
tout Sets the time the routine waits for the results to return before sending the call again.
portp Points to the program port number if the procedure succeeds.

Related Information
The clnt_broadcast subroutine.
The portmap daemon.
Internet Protocol in Networks and communication management.
eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
pmap_set Subroutine

Purpose
Maps a remote procedure call to a port.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

pmap_set (prognum, versnum, protocol, port)

u_long prognum, versnum, protocol;

u_short port;

Description
The pmap_set subroutine acts as a user interface to the portmap daemon to map the program number, version number, and protocol of a remote procedure call to a port on the machine portmap daemon.

Note: The pmap_set subroutine is called by the svc_register subroutine.

Parameters
prognum Specifies the program number of the remote program.
versnum Specifies the version number of the remote program.
protocol Specifies the transport protocol that the service recognizes. The values for this parameter can be IPPROTO_UDP or IPPROTO_TCP.
port Specifies the port on the machine's portmap daemon.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this routine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
The portmap daemon.

The pmap_getmaps subroutine, pmap_unset subroutine, svc_register subroutine.

TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

pmap_unset Subroutine

Purpose
Destroys the mappings between a remote procedure call and the port.

Library
C Library (libc.a)
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

```c
pmap_unset (prognum, versnum)
```

### u_long prognum, versnum;

## Description

The `pmap_unset` subroutine destroys mappings between the program number and version number of a remote procedure call and the ports on the host `portmap` daemon.

### Parameters

- **prognum** Specifies the program number of the remote program.
- **versnum** Specifies the version number of the remote program.

## Related Information

The `pmap_getmaps` subroutine, `pmap_set` subroutine, `svc_unregister` subroutine.

The `portmap` daemon.

[Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming](AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts)

---

### registerrpc Subroutine

## Purpose

Registers a procedure with the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) service package.

## Library

C Library (`libc.a`)

## Syntax

```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

registerrpc (prognum, versnum, procnum, procname, inproc, outproc)
```

```c
u_long prognum, versnum, procnum;
char (* procname) () ;
xdrproc_t inproc, outproc;
```

### Description

The `registerrpc` subroutine registers a procedure with the RPC service package.

If a request arrives that matches the values of the `prognum` parameter, the `versnum` parameter, and the `procnum` parameter, then the `procname` parameter is called with a pointer to its parameters, after which it returns a pointer to its static results.

**Note:** Remote procedures registered in this form are accessed using the User Datagram Protocol/Internet Protocol (UDP/IP) transport protocol only.
Parameters

- **progunm**: Specifies the program number of the remote program.
- **versnum**: Specifies the version number of the remote program.
- **procnum**: Identifies the procedure number to be called.
- **procname**: Identifies the procedure name.
- **inproc**: Specifies the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) subroutine that decodes the procedure parameters.
- **outproc**: Specifies the XDR subroutine that encodes the procedure results.

Return Values

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of -1.

Related Information

The `callrpc` subroutine, `svcudp_create` subroutine.

Concurrent Programming (XDR) Overview for Programming and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

rtime Subroutine

Purpose

Gets remote time.

Library

C Library (`libc.a`)

Syntax

```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/time.h>
#include <netinet/in.h>

int rtime (struct sockaddr_in *addrp, struct timeval *timep, struct timeval *timeout);
```

Description

The `rtime` subroutine consults the Internet Time Server (TIME) at the address pointed to by the `addrp` parameter and returns the remote time in the `timeval` structure pointed to by the `timep` parameter. Normally, the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) protocol is used when consulting the time server. If the `timeout` parameter is specified as null, however, the routine instead uses Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and blocks until a reply is received from the time server.

Parameters

- **addrp**: Points to the Internet Time Server.
- **timep**: Points to the `timeval` structure.
- **timeout**: Specifies how long the routine waits for a reply before terminating.
Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 0. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of -1, and the errno global variable is set to reflect the cause of the error.

Related Information
[TCP/IP protocols] in Networks and communication management.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

svc_destroy Macro

Purpose
Destroys a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) service transport handle.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void svc_destroy ( xprt )
SVCXPRTP xprt;

Description
The svc_destroy macro destroys an RPC service transport handle. Destroying the service transport handle deallocates the private data structures, including the handle itself. After the svc_destroy macro is used, the handle pointed to by the xprt parameter is no longer defined.

Parameters
xprt Points to the RPC service transport handle.

Related Information
The cint_destroy macro, svc_freeargs macro.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

svc_exit Subroutine

Purpose
Causes the svc_run service loop to terminate and return.

Library
Network Services Library (libnsl.a)
Syntax

```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void svc_exit (void);
```

Description

The `svc_exit` subroutine causes the `svc_run` loop to terminate and return to the caller. This subroutine can be called by a service procedure. The call causes all service threads to exit and destroys all server services. Callers must reestablish all services if they wish to resume server activity.

Related Information

The "svc_run Subroutine" on page 313.

svc_freeargs Macro

Purpose

Frees data allocated by the Remote Procedure Call/eXternal Data Representation (RPC/XDR) system.

Library

C Library (`libc.a`)

Syntax

```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

svc_freeargs (xprt, inproc, in)
SVCXPRT *xprt;
xdrproc_t inproc;
char *in;
```

Description

The `svc_freeargs` macro frees data allocated by the RPC/XDR system. This data is allocated when the RPC/XDR system decodes the arguments to a service procedure with the `svc_getargs` macro.

Parameters

- `xprt` Points to the RPC service transport handle.
- `inproc` Specifies the XDR routine that decodes the arguments.
- `in` Specifies the address where the procedure arguments are placed.

Related Information

The `svc_getargs`, `svc_destroy` macro.

eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

svc_getargs Macro

Purpose

Decodes the arguments of a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) request.
Library

C Library (libc.a)

Syntax

```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

svc_getargs (xprt, inproc, in)
SVCXPRT *xprt;
xdrproc_t inproc;
char *in;
```

Description

The `svc_getargs` macro decodes the arguments of an RPC request associated with the RPC service transport handle.

Parameters

- `xprt` Points to the RPC service transport handle.
- `inproc` Specifies the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) routine that decodes the arguments.
- `in` Specifies the address where the arguments are placed.

Return Values

Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information

The `svc_freeargs` macro.

The `eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming` and `Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming` in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

---

svc_getcaller Macro

Purpose

Gets the network address of the caller of a procedure.

Library

C Library (libc.a)

Syntax

```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

struct sockaddr_in *
svc_getcaller (xprt)
SVCXPRT *xprt;
```

Description

The `svc_getcaller` macro retrieves the network address of the caller of a procedure associated with the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) service transport handle.
Parameters

`xprt`  Points to the RPC service transport handle.

Related Information

The `svc_register` subroutine, `svc_run` subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

svc_getreqset Subroutine

Purpose

Services a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) request.

Library

C Library (`libc.a`)

Syntax

```c
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/select.h>
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void svc_getreqset ( fd_set *rdfds );
```

Description

The `svc_getreqset` subroutine is only used if a service implementor does not call the `svc_run` subroutine, but instead implements custom asynchronous event processing. The subroutine is called when the `select` subroutine has determined that an RPC request has arrived on any RPC sockets. The `svc_getreqset` subroutine returns when all sockets associated with the value specified by the `rdfds` parameter have been serviced.

Parameters

`rdfds`  Specifies the resultant read-file descriptor bit mask.

Restrictions

In AIX 5.2, the maximum number of open file descriptors that an RPC server can use has been set to 32767 so that compatibility can be maintained with RPC-server applications built on earlier releases of AIX.

The `fd_set` type passed into the `svc_getreqset` subroutine must be compiled with `FD_SETSIZE` set to 32767 or larger. Passing in a smaller `fd_set` argument can cause the `svc_getreqset` subroutine to overrun the passed-in buffer.

Related Information

The `select` subroutine, `svc_run` subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming and Sockets Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
svc_register Subroutine

Purpose
Maps a remote procedure.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

svc_register (xprt, prognum, versnum, dispatch, protocol)
SVCXprt *xprt;
u_long prognum, versnum;
void (* dispatch)();
int protocol;

Description
The svc_register subroutine maps a remote procedure with a service dispatch procedure pointed to by the dispatch parameter. If the protocol parameter has a value of 0, the service is not registered with the portmap daemon. If the protocol parameter does not have a value of 0 (or if it is IPPROTO_UDP or IPPROTO_TCP), the remote procedure triple (prognum, versnum, and protocol parameters) is mapped to the xprt->xp_port port.

The dispatch procedure takes the following form:

dispacth (request, xprt)
struct svc_req *request;
SVCXprt *xprt;

Parameters
xprt Points to a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) service transport handle.
prognum Specifies the program number of the remote program.
versnum Specifies the version number of the remote program.
dispatch Points to the service dispatch procedure.
protocol Specifies the data transport used by the service.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
The pmap_set subroutine, pmap_getmaps subroutine, svc_unregister subroutine.

The portmap daemon.

TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

312  Technical Reference: Communications, Volume 1
svc_run Subroutine

Purpose
Waits for a Remote Procedure Call service request to arrive.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>
void svc_run (void);

Description
The svc_run subroutine waits for a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) service request to arrive. When a request arrives, the svc_run subroutine calls the appropriate service procedure with the svc_getreqset subroutine. This procedure is usually waiting for a select subroutine to return.

Restrictions
In AIX 5.2, the maximum number of open file descriptors that an RPC server can use has been set to 32767 so that compatibility can be maintained with RPC-server applications built on earlier releases of AIX.

Related Information
The callrpc subroutine, registerrpc subroutine, select subroutine, svc_getreqset subroutine, and “svc_exit Subroutine” on page 308.

svc_sendreply Subroutine

Purpose
Sends back the results of a remote procedure call.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>
svc_sendreply ( xprt, outproc, out )
SVCXPRT *xprt;
xdrproc_t outproc;
char *out;

Description
The svc_sendreply subroutine sends back the results of a remote procedure call. This subroutine is called by a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) service dispatch subroutine.
Parameters

xprt
  Points to the RPC service transport handle of the caller.

outproc
  Specifies the eXternal Data Representation (XDR) routine that encodes the results.

out
  Points to the address where results are placed.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
External Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming and Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

svc_unregister Subroutine

Purpose
Removes mappings between procedures and objects.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void svc_unregister (prognum, versnum);

Description
The svc_unregister subroutine removes mappings between dispatch subroutines and the service procedure identified by the prognum parameter and the versnum parameter. It also removes the mapping between the port number and the service procedure which is identified by the prognum parameter and the versnum parameter.

Parameters

prognum
  Specifies the program number of the remote program.

versnum
  Specifies the version number of the remote program.

Related Information
The pmap_unset subroutine, svc_register subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

svcerr_auth Subroutine

Purpose
Indicates that the service dispatch routine cannot complete a remote procedure call due to an authentication error.
Library
RPC Library (libcrpc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void svcerr_auth (xprt, why)
SVCXPRT *xprt;
enum auth_stat why;

Description
The svcerr_auth subroutine is called by a service dispatch subroutine that refuses to perform a remote procedure call (RPC) because of an authentication error. This subroutine sets the status of the RPC reply message to AUTH_ERROR.

Parameters
xprt Points to the RPC service transport handle.
why Specifies the authentication error.

svcerr_decode Subroutine

Purpose
Indicates that the service dispatch routine cannot decode the parameters of a request.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void svcerr_decode (xprt)
SVCXPRT *xprt;

Description
The svcerr_decode subroutine is called by a service dispatch subroutine that cannot decode the parameters specified in a request. This subroutine sets the status of the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) reply message to the GARBAGE_ARGS condition.

Parameters
xprt Points to the RPC service transport handle.

Related Information
The svc_getargs macro.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
svcerr_noproc Subroutine

Purpose
Indicates that the service dispatch routine cannot complete a remote procedure call because the program cannot support the requested procedure.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void svcerr_noproc (xprt)
SVCXPRT *xprt;

Description
The svcerr_noproc subroutine is called by a service dispatch routine that does not implement the procedure number the caller has requested. This subroutine sets the status of the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) reply message to the PROC_UNAVAIL condition, which indicates that the program cannot support the requested procedure.

Note: Service implementors do not usually need this subroutine.

Parameters
xprt Points to the RPC service transport handle.

svcerr_noprog Subroutine

Purpose
Indicates that the service dispatch routine cannot complete a remote procedure call because the requested program is not registered.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void svcerr_noprog (xprt)
SVCXPRT *xprt;

Description
The svcerr_noprog subroutine is called by a service dispatch routine when the requested program is not registered with the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) package. This subroutine sets the status of the RPC reply message to the PROG_UNAVAIL condition, which indicates that the remote server has not exported the program.

Note: Service implementors do not usually need this subroutine.
Parameters

\textit{xprt} \quad Points to the RPC service transport handle.

\vspace{1em}

\textbf{svcerr\_progvers Subroutine}

\textbf{Purpose}
Indicates that the service dispatch routine cannot complete the remote procedure call because the requested program version is not registered.

\textbf{Library}
C Library (\texttt{libc.a})

\textbf{Syntax}
\begin{verbatim}
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void svcerr_progvers (xprt);
SVCXprt \*xprt; u_long
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Description}
The \textit{svcerr\_progvers} subroutine is called by a service dispatch routine when the requested version of a program is not registered with the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) package. This subroutine sets the status of the RPC reply message to the \texttt{PROG\_MISMATCH} condition, which indicates that the remote server cannot support the client's version number.

\textbf{Note:} Service implementors do not usually need this subroutine.

\textbf{Parameters}

\textit{xprt} \quad Points to the RPC service transport handle.

\vspace{1em}

\textbf{svcerr\_systemerr Subroutine}

\textbf{Purpose}
Indicates that the service dispatch routine cannot complete the remote procedure call due to an error that is not covered by a protocol.

\textbf{Library}
C Library (\texttt{libc.a})

\textbf{Syntax}
\begin{verbatim}
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void svcerr_systemerr (xprt);
SVCXprt \*xprt;
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Description}
The \textit{svcerr\_systemerr} subroutine is called by a service dispatch subroutine that detects a system error not covered by a protocol. For example, a service dispatch subroutine calls the \textit{svcerr\_systemerr} subroutine when an error occurs that is not handled by the protocol.
subroutine if the first subroutine can no longer allocate storage. The routine sets the status of the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) reply message to the SYSTEM_ERR condition.

Parameters

xprt  Points to the RPC service transport handle.

---

svcerr_weakauth Subroutine

Purpose
Indicates that the service dispatch routine cannot complete the remote procedure call due to insufficient authentication security parameters.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax

```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

void svcerr_weakauth (xprt);
SVCXPRTR *xprt;
```

Description
The svcerr_weakauth subroutine is called by a service dispatch routine that cannot make the remote procedure call (RPC) because the supplied authentication parameters are insufficient for security reasons.

The svcerr_weakauth subroutine calls the svcerr_auth subroutine with the correct RPC service transport handle (the xprt parameter). The subroutine also sets the status of the RPC reply message to the AUTH_TOOWEAK condition as the authentication error (AUTH_ERR).

Parameters

xprt  Points to the RPC service transport handle.

Related Information
The svcerr_auth subroutine, svcerr_decode subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

svcfd_create Subroutine

Purpose
Creates a service on any open file descriptor.

Library
C Library (libc.a)
Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

SVCXPRT *svcfd_create ( int fd, u_int sendsize, u_int recvsize );

Description
The svcfd_create subroutine creates a service on any open file descriptor. Typically, this descriptor is a connected socket for a stream protocol such as Transmission Control Protocol (TCP).

By default, the RPC server uses nonblocking I/O with TCP. This behavior can be changed by setting the environment variable RPC_TCP_MODE to USEBLOCKING, which causes the TCP RPC server to use blocking I/O.

Note: Using blocking I/O leaves the server vulnerable to disruption by malicious or misconfigured clients.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fd</td>
<td>Identifies the descriptor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sendsize</td>
<td>Specifies the size of the send buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recvsize</td>
<td>Specifies the size of the receive buffer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Restrictions
In AIX 5.2, the maximum number of open file descriptors that an RPC server can use has been set to 32767 so that compatibility can be maintained with RPC-server applications built on earlier releases of AIX.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a TCP-based transport handle. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of null.

Related Information
TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming and Sockets Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

svcfraw_create Subroutine
Purpose
Creates a toy Remote Procedure Call (RPC) service transport handle for simulation.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>
SVCXPRT *svcfraw_create ( )
Description
The svcraw_create subroutine creates a toy RPC service transport handle. The service transport handle is located within the address space of the process. If the corresponding RPC server resides in the same address space, then simulation of RPC and acquisition of RPC overheads, such as round-trip times, are done without kernel interference.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a pointer to a valid RPC transport handle. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of null.

Related Information
The clnraw_create subroutine.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

svctcp_create Subroutine

Purpose
Creates a Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) service transport handle.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

SVCXPRT *svctcp_create (sock, sendsz, recvsz)
int sock;
u_int sendsz, rcvsz;

Description
The svctcp_create subroutine creates a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) service transport handle based on TCP/IP and returns a pointer to it.

Since TCP/IP remote procedure calls use buffered I/O, users can set the size of the send and receive buffers with the sendsz and recvsz parameters, respectively. If the size of either buffer is set to a value of 0, the svctcp_create subroutine picks suitable default values.

By default, the RPC server uses nonblocking I/O with TCP. This behavior can be changed by setting the environment variable RPC_TCP_MODE to USEBLOCKING, which causes the TCP RPC server to use blocking I/O.

Note: Using blocking I/O leaves the server vulnerable to disruption by malicious or misconfigured clients.

Parameters
sock Specifies the socket associated with the transport. If the value of the sock parameter is RPC ANYSOCK, the svctcp_create subroutine creates a new socket. The service transport handle socket number is set to xprt->xp_sock. If the socket is not bound to a local TCP/IP port, then this routine binds the socket to an arbitrary port. Its port number is set to xprt->xp_port.

sendsz Specifies the size of the send buffer.
Specifications the size of the receive buffer.

Restrictions
In AIX 5.2, the maximum number of open file descriptors that an RPC server can use has been set to 32767 so that compatibility can be maintained with RPC-server applications built on earlier releases of AIX.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a valid RPC service transport handle. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of null.

Related Information
The registerfunc subroutine, svcudp_create subroutine.

TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

Sockets Overview in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

svcudp_create Subroutine

Purpose
Creates a User Datagram Protocol/Internet Protocol (UDP/IP) service transport handle.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

SVCXPRT *svcudp_create (sock)
int sock;

Description
The svcudp_create subroutine creates a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) service transport handle based on UDP/IP and returns a pointer to it.

The UDP/IP service transport handle is used only for procedures that take up to 8KB of encoded arguments or results.

Parameters
sock Specifies the socket associated with the service transport handle. If the value specified by the sock parameter is RPC_ANYSOCK, the svcudp_create subroutine creates a new socket and sets the service transport handle socket number to xprt->xp_sock. If the socket is not bound to a local UDP/IP port, then the svcudp_create subroutine binds the socket to an arbitrary port. The port number is set to xprt->xp_port.
Restrictions
In AIX 5.2, the maximum number of open file descriptors that an RPC server can use has been set to 32767 so that compatibility can be maintained with RPC-server applications built on earlier releases of AIX.

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a valid RPC service transport. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of null.

Related Information
The `registerrpc` subroutine, `svctcp_create` subroutine.

TCP/IP protocols in Networks and communication management.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

user2netname Subroutine

Purpose
Converts from a domain-specific user ID to a network name that is independent from the operating system.

Library
C Library (libc.a)

Syntax
```c
#include <rpc/rpc.h>

int user2netname (  name, uid, domain)
char *name;
int uid;
char *domain;
```

Description
The `user2netname` subroutine converts from a domain-specific user ID to a network name that is independent from the operating system.

This subroutine is the inverse of the `netname2user` subroutine.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>name</code></td>
<td>Points to the network name (or netname) of the server process owner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>uid</code></td>
<td>Points to the caller's effective user ID (UID).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>domain</code></td>
<td>Points to the domain name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Return Values
Upon successful completion, this subroutine returns a value of 1. If unsuccessful, it returns a value of 0.

Related Information
The `host2netname` subroutine, `netname2user` subroutine.
Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xpmt_register Subroutine

**Purpose**
Registers a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) service transport handle.

**Library**
C Library (libc.a)

**Syntax**
```c
#include <rpc/svc.h>
void xpmt_register (xpmt)
    SVCXPRT *xpmt;
```

**Description**
The `xpmt_register` subroutine registers an RPC service transport handle with the RPC program after the transport has been created. This subroutine modifies the `svc_fds` global variable.

**Note:** Service implementors do not usually need this subroutine.

**Parameters**

- `xpmt` Points to the newly created RPC service transport handle.

Related Information

eXternal Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

xpmt_unregister Subroutine

**Purpose**
Removes a Remote Procedure Call (RPC) service transport handle.

**Library**
C Library (libc.a)

**Syntax**
```c
void xpmt_unregister (xpmt)
    SVCXPRT *xpmt;
```

**Description**
The `xpmt_unregister` subroutine removes an RPC service transport handle from the RPC service program before the transport handle can be destroyed. This subroutine modifies the `svc_fds` global variable.

Chapter 8. Remote Procedure Calls (RPC) 323
Note: Service implementors do not usually need this subroutine.

Parameters

\(xprt\)      Points to the RPC service transport handle to be destroyed.

Related Information

- External Data Representation (XDR) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.
- Remote Procedure Call (RPC) Overview for Programming in AIX 5L Version 5.3 Communications Programming Concepts.

Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI)

- DL_ATTACH_REQ Primitive
- DL_BIND_ACK Primitive
- DL_BIND_REQ Primitive
- DL_CONNECT_CON Primitive
- DL_CONNECT_IND Primitive
- DL_CONNECT_REQ Primitive
- DL_CONNECT_RES Primitive
- DL_DATA_IND Primitive
- DL_DATA_REQ Primitive
- DL_DETACH_REQ Primitive
- DL_DISABMULTI_REQ Primitive
- DL_DISCONNECT_IND Primitive
- DL_DISCONNECT_REQ Primitive
- DL_ENABMULTI_REQ Primitive
- DL_ERROR_ACK Primitive
- DL_GET_STATISTICS_REQ Primitive
- DL_GET_STATISTICS_ACK Primitive
- DL_INFO_ACK Primitive
- DL_INFO_REQ Primitive
- DL_OK_ACK Primitive
- DL_OK_ACK Primitive
- DL_PHYS_ADDR_REQ Primitive
- DL_PHYS_ADDR_ACK Primitive
- DL_PROMISCOFF_REQ Primitive
- DL_PROMISCON_REQ Primitive
- DL_RESET_CON Primitive
- DL_RESET_IND Primitive
- DL_RESET_REQ Primitive
- DL_RESET_RES Primitive
- DL_SUBS_BIND_ACK Primitive
- DL_SUBS_BIND_REQ Primitive
- DL_SUBS_UNBIND_REQ Primitive
- DL_TEST_CON Primitive
Chapter 8. Remote Procedure Calls (RPC)

- DL_TEST_IND Primitive
- DL_TEST_REQ Primitive
- DL_TEST_RES Primitive
- DL_TOKEN_ACK Primitive
- DL_TOKEN_REQ Primitive
- DL_UDERROR_IND Primitive
- DL_UNBIND_REQ Primitive
- DL_UNITDATA_IND Primitive
- DL_UNITDATA_REQ Primitive
- DL_XID_CON Primitive
- DL_XID_IND Primitive
- DL_XID_REQ Primitive
- DL_XID_RES Primitive
Appendix. Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user’s responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Corporation
Dept. LRAS/Bldg. 003
11400 Burnet Road
Austin, TX 78758-3498
U.S.A.

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this document and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement or any equivalent agreement between us.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:
IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrates programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM for the purposes of developing, using, marketing, or distributing application programs conforming to IBM's application programming interfaces.

**Trademarks**

The following terms are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both:

- AIX
- AIX 5L
- CICS
- IBM
- MVS/SP
- MVS/XA
- VSE/ESA

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Other company, product, or service names may be the trademarks or service marks of others.
Index

A
allocated data
  freeing 286, 309
API applications
  receiving messages from 186
  sending messages to 187
  starting interaction with 184
  terminating interactions 185
arrays
  installing network name 296
  translating into external representations 109, 111, 130
asynchronous faults
  enabling 199
  inhibiting 200
auth_destroy macro 275
authdes_create subroutine 275
authdes_getucred subroutine 276
authentication information
  destroying 275
  authentication messages 119
authnone_create subroutine 277
authunix_create subroutine 278
authunix_create_default subroutine 279

B
Booleans
  translating 110
buffers
  checking for end of file 135

C
C language, translating
  characters 113
  discriminated unions 129
  enumerations 114
  floats 115
  integers 110, 117
  long integers 118
  numbers 132
  short integers 125
  strings 126, 131
  unsigned characters 126
  unsigned integers 127
  unsigned long integers 128
call header messages 112
call messages 112
calling processes
  setting keys 300
callrpc subroutine 279
cbc_crypt subroutine 280
cfxfer function 139
cleanup handlers (continued)
  resetting 202
cleanup handlers
  establishing 198
  releasing 203
closing subroutine interface for DLC devices 11
connection-response token 97
connection-response token assigned 98
cursor position
  setting column components 157
  setting row components 157
databases
  closing 265, 269
  opening for access 268, 270
  returning first key 267, 272
  returning next key 267, 272
data
  marking outgoing as records 135
Data Encryption Standard 280
data link connection 60, 61
Data Link Control 11
Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI) 79
data link service (DLS) 60, 61, 63, 64, 66, 67, 68, 69, 73, 74, 76, 81, 82, 84, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 98, 99, 100, 101, 103, 107
data link service (DLS) user 102, 104
data link service access point (DLSAP) 89, 90, 92, 100
data link service data unit (DLSDU) 66, 93, 94, 95, 96, 101, 102, 103, 104, 107
data notification
  toggling 163
data streams
  getting position of 116
data types
  receiving GDLC 20, 22
datagram data received routine (DLC) 24

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1997, 2006
DBM subroutines
  dbmclose 269
  dbminit 270
  delete 271
  fetch 271
  firstkey 272
  nextkey 272
  store 273

DBM_close subroutine 265
DBM_delete subroutine 265
DBM_fetch subroutine 266
DBM_firstkey subroutine 267
DBM_nextkey subroutine 267
DBM_open subroutine 268
DBM_store subroutine 269
DBM_close subroutine 269
DBMinit subroutine 270
default domains
  getting 256

delete subroutine 271

DES
  enabling use of 275

DES encryption routines
  starting 280

DES keys
  decrypting 297
  encrypting 298
des_setparity subroutine 280
device handlers
  decoding name 4
disconnect an active link 71
discriminated unions
  translating 129

DL_ATTACH_REQ 55
DL_BIND_ACK 56
DL_BIND_REQ 57
DL_CONNECT_CON Primitive 60
DL_CONNECT_IND Primitive 61
DL_CONNECT_REQ Primitive 63
DL_CONNECT_RES Primitive 64
DL_DATA_IND Primitive 66
DL_DATA_REQ Primitive 66
DL_DETACH_REQ Primitive 67
DL_DISABMULTI_REQ Primitive 68
DL_DISCONNECT_IND Primitive 69
DL_DISCONNECT_REQ Primitive 71
DL_ENABMULTI_REQ Primitive 73
DL_ERROR_ACK Primitive 74
DL_ERROR_REQ Primitive 75
DL_Get_STATISTICS_ACK Primitive 75
DL_Get_STATISTICS_REQ Primitive 75
DL_INFO_ACK Primitive 77
DL_INFO_REQ Primitive 77, 79
DL_OK_ACK Primitive 80
DL_OK_REQ Primitive 81
DL_RESET_REQ Primitive 87
DL_RESET_RES Primitive 88

DL_SUBS_BIND_ACK Primitive 89
DL_SUBS_BIND_REQ Primitive 90, 92
DL_SUBS_UNBIND_REQ Primitive 92
DL_TEST_CON Primitive 93
DL_TEST_IND Primitive 94, 96
DL_TEST_REQ Primitive 93, 95
DL_TEST_RES Primitive 96
DL_TOKEN_ACK Primitive 97
DL_TOKEN_REQ Primitive 98
DL_UDERROR_IND Primitive 99
DL_UNBIND_REQ Primitive 100
DL_UNITDATA_REQ Primitive 101
DL_UNITDATA_REQ Primitive 99, 102
DL_XID_CON Primitive 103
DL_XID_IND Primitive 104, 107
DL_XID_REQ 105
DL_XID_REQ Primitive 103
DL_XID_RES Primitive 107

DLC
  asynchronous event notification 25
  asynchronous exception notification 41
  device descriptor structures 53
  extended parameters 19, 20, 22
  functional address masks 30, 35
  ioctl operations 28
  parameter blocks 30
  receive address 31
  receiving data
    data packet 25
    datagram packet 24
    network-specific 26
    XID packet 27

DLC ioctl operations
  DLC_ADD_FUNC_ADDR 30
  DLC_ADD_GRP 31
  DLC.Alter 31
  DLC_CONTACT 35
  DLC_DEL_FUNC_ADDR 35
  DLC_DEL_GRP 36
  DLC_DISABLE_SAP 36
  DLC_ENABLE_SAP 37
  DLC_ENTER_LBUSY 40
  DLC_Enter_SHOLD 40
  DLC_EXIT_LBUSY 40
  DLC_EXIT_SHOLD 41
  DLC_GET_EXCEPTIONS 41
  DLC_HALT_LS 46
  DLC_QUERY_LS 46
  DLC_QUERY_SAP 49
  DLC_STARTS_LS 50
  DLC_TEST 52
  DLC_TRACE 53
  IOCINFO 53

DLC kernel routines
  datagram data received 24
  exception condition 25
  I-frame data received 25
  network data received 26
  XID data received 27

DLC subroutine interfaces
  close 11
DLC subroutine interfaces (continued)
  ioctl 12
  open 13
  readx 15
  select 16
  writex 17
DLC_ADD_FUNC_ADDR ioctl operation 30
DLC_ADD_GRP ioctl operation 31
DLC_ALTER ioctl operation 31
DLC_CONTACT ioctl operation 35
DLC_DEL_FUNC_ADDR ioctl operation 35
DLC_DEL_GRP 36
DLC_DISABLE_SAP ioctl operation 36
DLC_ENABLE_SAP ioctl operation 37
DLC_ENTER_LBUSY ioctl operation 40
DLC_ENTER_SHOLD ioctl operation 40
DLC_EXIT_LBUSY ioctl operation 40
DLC_EXIT_SHOLD ioctl operation 41
DLC_GET_EXCEP ioctl operation 41
DLC_HALT_LS ioctl operation 46
DLC_QUERY_LS ioctl operation 46
DLC_QUERY_SAP ioctl operation 49
DLC_START_LS ioctl operation 50
DLC_TEST ioctl operation 52
DLC_TRACE ioctl operation 53
dlcclose entry point 1
dlcconfig entry point 2
dlcioctl entry point 3
dlcmux entry point 4
dlcopen entry point 5
dlcread entry point 7
dlcselect entry point 8
dlcrewrite entry point 10
DLPI
  DL_ATTACH_REQ 55
DLPI Primitive
  DL_BIND_ACK 56
  DL_BIND_REQ 57
  DL_XID_REQ 105

E
ecb_crypt subroutine 280
error codes
  using as input to NIS subroutines 264
error strings
  returning pointer 263
exception condition routine (DLC) 25
external representations, translating from
  arrays 109, 111, 130
  Booleans 110
  C language characters 113, 126
  C language enumerations 114
  C language floats 115
  C language integers 117
  C language long integers 118
  C language numbers 132
  C language short integers 125
  C language strings 126
  C language unsigned integers 127
  C language unsigned long integers 128
external representations, translating from (continued)
  C language unsigned short integers 128
  discriminated unions 129
  opaque data 119

F
code signals 203
fetch subroutine 271
file descriptors
  creating services 318
file transfers
  initiating 141
  invoking 150
firstkey subroutine 272
functional address masks 30, 35
fxfer function 141

G
g32_alloc function 144
g32_close function 147
g32_dealloc function 148
g32_fxfer function 150
g32_get_cursor function 157
g32_get_data function 159
g32_get_status function 161
g32_notify function 163
g32_open function 166
g32_openux function 169
g32_read function 175
g32_search function 177
g32_send_keys function 180
g32_write function 182
G32ALLOC function 184
G32DLLLOC function 185
G32READ function 186
G32WRITE function 187
GDLC
  asynchronous criteria 8
  descriptor readiness 16
  ioctl operations 28
  providing data link control 22
  providing generic 20
  reading receive application data 15
  reading receive data from 7
  sending application data 17
  transferring commands to 12
  writing transmit data to 10
GDLC channels
  allocating 4
  closing 1
  disabling 11
  opening 5
GDLC device manager
  closing 11
  configuring 2
  issuing commands to 3
  opening 13
GDLC device manager entry points
dlcclose 1
GDLC device manager entry points (continued)
   dlcconfig  2
   dlcioctl  3
   dlcmpx  4
   dlcopen  5
   dlcread  7
   dlcselect  8
   dlcwrite  10
Generic Data Link Control  11
get_myaddress subroutine  295
getnetname subroutine  296
GLB database
   locating information
      on interfaces  189, 193
      on objects  190, 193
      on types  193, 194
   registering objects and interfaces  196
   removing entries  197
Global Location Broker  189

H
HCON functions
   cfxfer  139
   fxfer  141
   g32_alloc  144
   g32_close  147
   g32_dealloc  148
   g32_fxfer  150
   g32_get_cursor  157
   g32_get_data  159
   g32_get_status  161
   g32_notify  163
   g32_open  166
   g32_openx  169
   g32_read  175
   g32_search  177
   g32_send_keys  180
   g32_write  182
   G32ALLOC  184
   G32DLLLOC  185
   G32READ  186
host applications
   ending interaction  148
   initiating interaction  144
   receiving messages  175
   sending messages  182
host names
   converting socket addresses to  215
   converting to network names  296
   converting to socket addresses  212
host parameter
   calling associated remote procedure  279
host2netname subroutine  296

I
I-frame data received routine for DLC  25
input streams
   moving position  136
interfaces
   registering  213
   unregistering  216
invalid request or response  74
IOCINFO operation
   DLC  53
ioctl operations (DLC)  28
ioctl subroutine interface for DLC devices  12
IP addresses
   finding  295
keys
   accessing data stored under  266, 271
   deleting  265, 271
   placing data under  269, 273
   searching for associated values  258
keyserv daemon  299

L
lb_lookup_interface library routine  189
lb_lookup_object library routine  190
lb_lookup_object_local library routine  191
lb_lookup_range library routine  193
lb_lookup_type library routine  194
lb_register library routine  196
lb_unregister library routine  197
link stations  46
LLB database
   locating information
      on interfaces  193
      on objects  191, 193
      on types  193
   registering objects and interfaces  196
   removing entries  197
local busy mode  40
Local Location Broker  189
Location Broker library routines
   lb_lookup_interface  189
   lb_lookup_object  190
   lb_lookup_object_local  191
   lb_lookup_range  193
   lb_lookup_type  194
   lb_register  196
   lb_unregister  197
logical paths
   returning status information  161
LS correlators
   receiving GDLC  20
LSs
   altering configuration parameters  31
   contacting remote station  35
   halting  46
LSs (continued)
  local busy mode 40
  querying statistics 46
  receiving GDLC 22
  result extensions 44, 45, 46
  short hold mode 40, 41
  starting 50
  testing remote link 52
  tracing activity 53

M
mappings
  removing 314
master servers
  returning machine names 257
memory
  freeing 115
message replies 109, 123, 124
multicast addresses 73
  removing 36

N
name parameter
  installing network name 296
NDBM subroutines
  dbm_close 265
  dbm_delete 265
  dbm_fetch 266
  dbm_firstkey 267
  dbm_nextkey 267
  dbm_open 268
  dbm_store 269
netname2host subroutine 300
netname2user subroutine 301
network addresses
  retrieving 310
network data received routine (DLC) 26
Network Information Service 253
network names
  converting to host names 300
  converting to user IDs 301
New Database Manager library 265
nextkey subroutine 272
NIS maps
  changing 262
  returning order number 260
NIS master servers
  returning machine names 257
NIS subroutines
  yp_all 253
  yp_bind 254
  yp_first 255
  yp_get_default_domain 256
  yp_master 257
  yp_match 258
  yp_next 259
  yp_order 260
  yp_unbind 261
  yp_update 262

NIS subroutines (continued)
  yperr_string 263
  ypprot_err 264

O
opaque data
  translating 119
open file descriptors
  creating service 318
open subroutine interface (DLC) 13
open subroutine, parameters (DLC) 19
openx subroutine
  parameters (DLC) 19

P
parameter blocks (DLC) 30
peer DLS provider 95
PFM library routines
  pfm_$cleanup 198
  pfm_$enable 199
  pfm_$enable_faults 199
  pfm_$inhibit 200
  pfm_$inhibit_faults 200
  pfm_$init 201
  pfm_$reset_cleanup 202
  pfm_$rls_cleanup 203
  pfm_$signal 203
PFM package
  initializing 201
  pfm_$cleanup library routine 198
  pfm_$enable library routine 199
  pfm_$enable_faults library routine 199
  pfm_$inhibit library routine 200
  pfm_$inhibit_faults library routine 200
  pfm_$init library routine 201
  pfm_$reset_cleanup library routine 202
  pfm_$rls_cleanup library routine 203
  pfm_$signal library routine 203
physical address 81
physical point of attachment (PPA) 67
pmap_getmaps subroutine 302
pmap_getport subroutine 303
pmap_rmtcall subroutine 304
pmap_set subroutine 305
pmap_unset subroutine 305
port mappings
  describing 121
port numbers
  requesting 303
portmap procedures
  describing parameters 120
presentation space
  obtaining display data 159
  searching for character patterns 177
previously issued primitive 80
processes
  managing socket descriptors 261
program-to-port mappings
  returning list 302

Index 333
programmatic file transfers  
  checking status  139  
  promiscuous mode  82, 84

R
read subroutine parameters (DLC)  20  
readx subroutine interface for devices (DLC)  15  
readx subroutine parameters (DLC)  20
records
  marking outgoing data as  135  
  skipping  136
registerrpc subroutine  306  
remote DLS user  63, 64
remote procedure calls  282  
  broadcasting  282  
  creating with portmap daemon  304  
  error in authenticating  314  
  error unknown to protocol  317  
  failing  289, 291  
  insufficient authentication  318  
  mapping  305  
  sending results  313  
  unmapping  305  
  unregistered program  316  
  unregistered program version  317  
  unsupported procedure  316
remote procedures  
  mapping  312
remote time  
  obtaining  307
RPC authentication handles  
  creating  278  
  creating NULL  277  
  setting to default  279
RPC authentication messages  119
RPC authentication subroutines  
  authdes_create  275  
  authdes_getucred  276  
  authnone_create  277  
  authunix_create  278  
  authunix_create_default  279  
  xdr_authunix_parms  132
RPC call header messages  112  
RPC call messages  112
RPC client handles  
  copying error information  287  
  creating and returning  285  
  destroying  286  
  error in creating  287, 290
RPC client objects  
  changing or retrieving  284
RPC client subroutines  
  clnt_broadcast  282  
  clnt_create  285  
  clnt_pcreateerror  287  
  clnt_permo  288  
  clnt_perror  289  
  clnt_spcreateerror  290  
  clnt_spermo  290  
  clnt_spererror  291
RPC client subroutines (continued)  
  clntraw_create  292  
  clnttcp_create  293  
  clntudp_create  294
RPC client transport handles  
  creating TCP/IP  293  
  creating UDP/IP  294
RPC clients  
  creating toy  292
RPC handles  
  allocating  205  
  associating with servers  214  
  clearing bindings  206, 207  
  copying  208  
  creating  204  
  freeing  209  
  returning object UUID  211  
  returning socket addresses  210
RPC library routines  
  rpc_$alloc_handle  204  
  rpc_$bind  205  
  rpc_$clear_binding  206  
  rpc_$clear_server_binding  207  
  rpc_$dup_handle  208  
  rpc_$free_handle  209  
  rpc_$inq_binding  210  
  rpc_$inq_object  211  
  rpc_$listen  211  
  rpc_$name_to_sockaddr  212  
  rpc_$register  213  
  rpc_$set_binding  214  
  rpc_$sockaddr_to_name  215  
  rpc_$unregister  216  
  rpc_$use_family  217  
  rpc_$use_family_wk  218
RPC macros  
  auth_destroy  275  
  clnt_call  283  
  clnt_control  284  
  clnt_destroy  286  
  clnt_freeargs  286  
  clnt_geterr  287  
  svc_destroy  308  
  svc_freeargs  309  
  svc_getargs  309  
  svc_getcaller  310
RPC message replies  109, 123, 124
RPC packets  
  handling  211
RPC portmap subroutines  
  pmap_getmaps  302  
  pmap_getport  303  
  pmap_rmtcall  304  
  pmap_set  305  
  pmap_unset  305
RPC program-to-port mappings  
  returning list  302
RPC reply messages  
  encoding  109
RPC requests  
  decoding arguments  309
RPC requests (continued)
servicing 311
RPC runtime library
registering interfaces 213
unregistering interfaces 216
RPC security subroutines
cbc_crypt 280
des_setparity 280
ecb_crypt 280
key_decryptsession 297
key_encryptsession 298
key_gendes 299
key_setsecret 300
RPC service packages
registering procedure 306
RPC service requests
waiting for arrival 313
RPC service subroutines
svc_exit 308
csvc_getreqset 311
svc_register 312
svc_run 313
csvc_sendreply 313
csvc_unregister 314
csvc_auth 314
csvc_decode 315
csvc_noproc 316
svccerr_noprog 316
svccerr_systemerr 317
svccerr_weakauth 318
csvcfd_create 318
csvcraw_create 319
csvc_tcp_create 320
csvcudp_create 321
RPC service transport handles
creating TCP/IP 320
creating toy 319
creating UDP/IP 321
destroying 308
registering 323
removing 323
RPC subroutines
callrpc 279
callrpc 279
get_myaddress 295
callrpc 279
callrpc 279
host2netname 296
getnetname 296
netname2host 300
netname2user 301
netname2user 301
receiving XDR subroutines 131
registerrpc 306
rtime 307
receiving XDR subroutines 131
reg_addr 306
reg_addr 306
user2netname 322
user2netname 322
xdr_accepted_reply 109
xdr_accepted_reply 109
xdr_callhdr 112
xdr_callhdr 112
xdr_callmsg 112
xdr_callmsg 112
xdr_opaque_auth 119
xdr_opaque_auth 119
xdr_pmap 120
xdr_pmaplist 121
xdr_pmaplist 121
xdr_rejected_reply 123
xdr_rejected_reply 123
xdr_replymsg 124
xdr_replymsg 124
RPC subroutines (continued)
xprt_register 323
xprt_unregister 323
crt_alloc_handle library routine 204
crt_bind library routine 205
crt_clear_binding library routine 206
crt_clear_server_binding library routine 207
crt_dup_handle library routine 208
crt_free_handle library routine 209
crt_inq_binding library routine 210
crt_inq_object library routine 211
crt_listen library routine 211
crt_name_to_sockaddr library routine 212
crt_register library routine 213
crt_set_binding library routine 214
crt_sockaddr_to_name library routine 215
crt_unregister library routine 216
crt_use_family library routine 217
crt_use_family_wk library routine 218
rtime subroutine 307
S
SAPs
disabling 36
enabling 37
querying statistics 49
receiving GDLC 20, 22
result extensions 44
secure conversation key 299
select subroutine interface (DLC) 16
server network names
decrypting 297
crypting 298
servers
registering interface 213
unregistering interface 216
service access point (SAP) 82, 84
service access points 20
service dispatch routines
error in authenticating 314
error in decoding requests 315
error unknown to protocol 317
insufficient authentication 318
unregistered program 316
unregistered program version 317
unsupported procedure 316
service packages
registering procedure 306
service requests 308, 313
sessions
attaching 166, 169
detaching 147
starting 166, 169
short hold mode 40, 41
socket addresses
converting host names to 212
converting to host names 215
sockets
creating for RPC servers 217, 218
stat parameter specifying condition 288, 290
store subroutine 273
structures
   providing pointer chasing 121, 122
   serializing null pointers 121
svc_destroy macro 308
svc_exit subroutine 308
svc_freeargs macro 309
svc_getargs macro 309
svc_getcaller macro 310
svc_getreqset subroutine 311
svc_register subroutine 312
svc_run subroutine 313
svc_sendreply subroutine 313
svc_unregister subroutine 314
svc_err_auth subroutine 314
svc_err_decode subroutine 315
svc_err_noproc subroutine 316
svc_err_noprogs subroutine 316
svc_err_progvers subroutine 317
svc_err_systemerr subroutine 317
svcfd_create subroutine 318
svctcp_create subroutine 319
svctcp_create subroutine 320
svcudp_create subroutine 321

T
terminal emulators
   sending key strokes 180
toy RPC clients
   creating 292
toy RPC service transport handles
   creating 319
transmission over the data link connection 66

U
unions
   translating 129
Universal Unique Identifiers 220
UNIX credentials
   generating 132
   mapping DES credentials 276
user IDs
   converting to network names 322
user2netname subroutine 322
UUID library routines
   uuid_decode 219
   uuid_encode 220
   uuid_gen 221
uuid_decode library routine 219
uuid_encode library routine 220
uuid_gen library routine 221
UUIDs
   converting 219, 220
   generating 221
write subroutine, parameters (DLC) 22
writex subroutine interface (DLC) 17
writex subroutine, parameters (DLC) 22
X
XDR library filter primitives
   xdr_array 109
   xdr_bool 110
   xdr_bytes 111
   xdr_char 113
   xdr_double 132
   xdr_enum 114
   xdr_float 115
   xdr_int 117
   xdr_long 118
   xdr_opaque 119
   xdr_reference 122
   xdr_short 125
   xdr_string 126
   xdr_u_char 126
   xdr_u_int 127
   xdr_u_long 128
   xdr_u_short 128
   xdr_union 129
   xdr_vector 130
   xdr_void 131
   xdr_wrapstring 131
XDR library non-filter primitives 114, 115, 116, 117,
   121, 124, 133, 134, 135
   xdrrec_endofrecord 135
   xdrrec_skiprecord 136
   xdrstdio_create 137
XDR streams
   changing current position 124
   containing long sequences of records 134
   destroying 114
   initializing 137
   initializing local memory 133
   returning pointer to buffer 117
XDR subroutines
   supplying to RPC system 131
   xdr_accepted_reply subroutine 109
   xdr_array subroutine 109
   xdr_authunix_parms subroutine 132
   xdr_bool subroutine 110
   xdr_bytes subroutine 111
   xdr_callohdr subroutine 112
   xdr_callmsg subroutine 112
   xdr_char subroutine 113
   xdr_destroy macro 114
   xdr_double subroutine 132
   xdr_enum subroutine 114
   xdr_float subroutine 115
   xdr_free subroutine 115
   xdr_getpos macro 116
   xdr_inline macro 117
   xdr_int subroutine 117
   xdr_long subroutine 118
xdr_opaque subroutine 119
xdr_opaque_auth subroutine 119
xdr_pmap subroutine 120
xdr_pmaplist subroutine 121
xdr_pointer subroutine 121
xdr_reference subroutine 122
xdr_rejected_reply subroutine 123
xdr_replymsg subroutine 124
xdr_setpos macro 124
xdr_short subroutine 125
xdr_string subroutine 126, 131
xdr_u_char subroutine 126
xdr_u_int subroutine 127
xdr_u_long subroutine 128
xdr_u_short subroutine 128
xdr_union subroutine 129
xdr_vector subroutine 130
xdr_void subroutine 131
xdr_wrapstring subroutine 131
xdrmem_create subroutine 133
xdrrec_create subroutine 134
xdrrec_endofrecord subroutine 135
xdrrec_eof subroutine 135
xdrrec_skiprecord subroutine 136
xdrstdio_create subroutine 137
XID data received routine for DLC 27
xp prt_register subroutine 323
xp prt_unregister subroutine 323

Y

yp_all subroutine 253
yp_bind subroutine 254
yp_first subroutine 255
yp_get_default_domain subroutine 256
yp_master subroutine 257
yp_match subroutine 258
yp_next subroutine 259
yp_order subroutine 260
yp_unbind subroutine 261
yp_update subroutine 262
ypbind daemon
calling 254
yperr_string subroutine 263
yp prot_err subroutine 264
Readers’ Comments — We’d Like to Hear from You

AIX 5L Version 5.3
Technical Reference: Communications, Volume 1

Publication No. SC23-4915-03

Overall, how satisfied are you with the information in this book?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Overall satisfaction</th>
<th>Very Satisfied</th>
<th>Satisfied</th>
<th>Neutral</th>
<th>Dissatisfied</th>
<th>Very Dissatisfied</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How satisfied are you that the information in this book is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Very Satisfied</th>
<th>Satisfied</th>
<th>Neutral</th>
<th>Dissatisfied</th>
<th>Very Dissatisfied</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accurate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Easy to find</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Easy to understand</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Well organized</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applicable to your tasks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Please tell us how we can improve this book:

Thank you for your responses. May we contact you?  □ Yes  □ No

When you send comments to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute your comments in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you. IBM or any other organizations will only use the personal information that you supply to contact you about the issues that you state on this form.

Name

Company or Organization

Phone No.